



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



Cheap Issue of Established School Books.

The Publishers have been induced to issue the following Works at prices varying from Sixpence to Eighteen-pence, in the hope of securing for them an extensive sale commensurate with their intrinsic value and extreme cheapness.

TABLES OF LOGARITHMS, COMMON, AND TRIGONOMETRICAL, to Five Places. Under the Superintendence of the Society for the Diffusion of Useful Knowledge. 220 pages, fcap. 8vo, cloth limp, 1s. 6d.

A FIRST BOOK OF PLANE TRIGONOMETRY, GEOMETRICAL TRIGONOMETRY, and its application to SURVEYING. By G. W. HEMMING, M.A. 145 pages, 12mo. cloth limp, 1s. 6d.

PRINCIPLES OF GEOMETRY ; familiarly Illustrated, and applied to a variety of useful purposes. By WILLIAM RITCHIE, LL.D. Second Edition. 200 pages, 12mo. cloth limp, 1s. 6d.

THE FOUR GOSPELS IN GREEK. GRIESBACH'S TEXT, with the various readings of MILL and SCHOLZ. 260 pages, foolscap 8vo. cloth limp, 1s. 6d.

THE LONDON GREEK GRAMMAR. Designed to exhibit, in small compass, the Elements of the Greek Language. Edited by a GRADUATE of the University of Oxford. Fifth Edition. 165 pages, 12mo. cloth limp, 1s. 6d.

THE PRINCIPAL ROOTS OF THE LATIN LANGUAGE, simplified by a display of their Incorporation into the English Tongue. By HENRY HALL. Fifth Edition. 140 pages, 12mo. cloth limp, 1s. 6d.

THE LONDON LATIN GRAMMAR ; Including the Eton Syntax and Prosody in English. Edited by a GRADUATE of the University of Oxford. Fifteenth Edition. 130 pages, 12mo. cloth limp, 1s. 6d.

THE FIRST ENGLISH READER. By the Rev. G. D. ABBOTT. With Illustrations. 160 pages, 12mo. cloth limp, 1s.

THE SECOND ENGLISH READER. By the Rev. G. D. ABBOTT. 270 pages, 12mo. cloth limp, 1s. 6d.

A NEW ENGLISH SPELLING BOOK. By the Rev. G. D. ABBOTT. Second Edition, with Reading Lessons. 12mo. sewed, 6d.

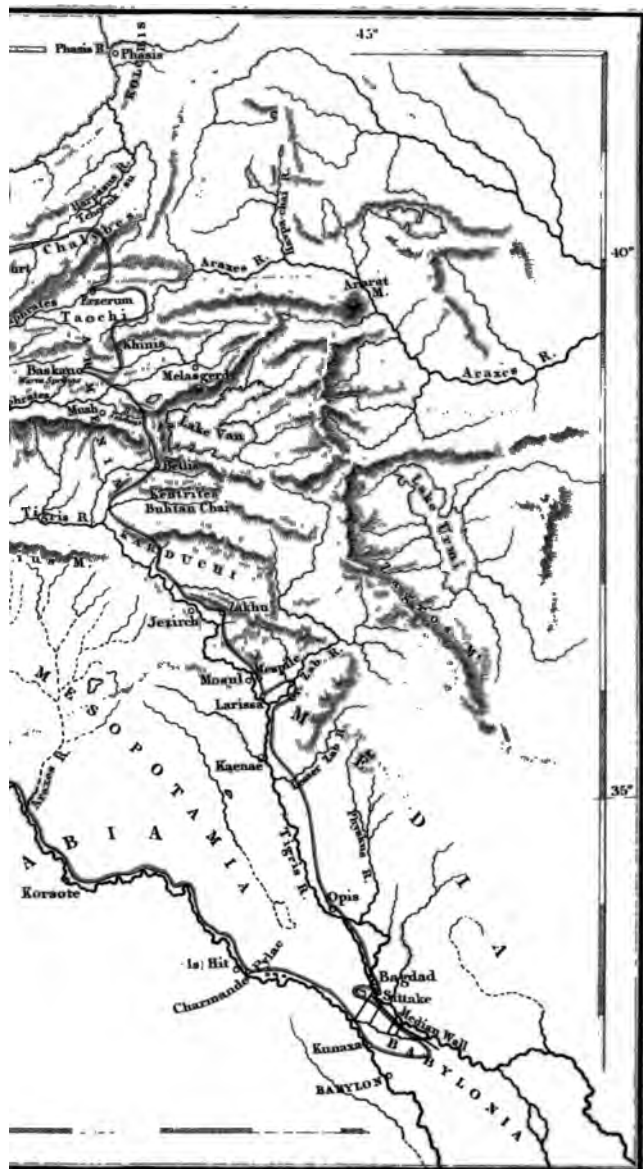
LONDON
28, UPPER GOWER





600084050N





Engraved by J & C Walker

THE
ANABASIS OF XENOPHON,

Expressly for Schools:

WITH

NOTES, INDEX OF NAMES, AND A MAP.

BY

J. T. V. HARDY, B.A. LOND.

PRINCIPAL OF HUDDERSFIELD COLLEGE;

AND

ERNEST ADAMS,

CLASSICAL TUTOR OF UNIVERSITY HALL, LONDON; AND ASSISTANT
MASTER IN UNIVERSITY COLLEGE SCHOOL.

LONDON:

WALTON AND MABERLY, UPPER GOWER STREET,
AND IVY LANE, PATERNOSTER ROW.

1853.

290. K. 40.

LONDON:

**PRINTED BY LEVY, ROBSON, AND FRANKLYN,
Great New Street and Fetter Lane.**

PREFACE.

THIS is peculiarly a *School* edition of the *Anabasis*. In consequence of the length of the entire work, it rarely happens that pupils read more than the first three or four books ; and, as the narrative comprises one of the most interesting episodes in the history of the Hellenic race, the Editors have endeavoured by a simple expedient to enable the young student to follow the resolute band of adventurers from the commencement to the end of their perilous march. By omitting the majority of the speeches (always difficult to beginners), and other passages less directly affecting the principal narrative, the bulk of the Greek text has been so materially diminished, as to leave little more than a twelvemonth's profitable and pleasing study. A brief abstract of each suppressed passage has been supplied, thus preserving the continuity of the narrative unbroken.

The Notes are chiefly of an elementary character ; such, it is hoped, as pupils require to render their work easy without making themselves idle. Hence they are much more frequent in Book I. than elsewhere. They consist of translations of difficult passages, the usages

of prepositions and conjunctions found in the *Anabasis*, the irregular tenses of verbs, and a few short notices of coins, localities, &c. The text, with one or two exceptions, is Long's (considered by the Editors as *facile princeps*); and for the Biographical and Geographical Index free use has been made of Smith's Dictionaries, the Travels of Ainsworth, Chesney, and Layard, and Grote's *History of Greece*. Professor Malden has been consulted on a few difficult points; and the Editors thankfully acknowledge his courteous attention and valuable advice. In the construction of the Map the Editors have availed themselves of the labours of Grote, Ainsworth, and Layard, and of the suggestions of Professor Malden.

ΞΕΝΟΦΩΝΤΟΣ

ΚΥΡΟΥ ΑΝΑΒΑΣΙΣ.

A.

Ι. Δαρείου καὶ Παρυσάτιδος γίνονται παῖδες δύο, πρεσβύτερος μὲν Ἀρταξέρξης, νεώτερος δὲ Κύρος.* ἐπεὶ δὲ ἡσθένει Δαρείος καὶ ὑπώπτευε

Ι. 1. μὲν . . . δέ: two particles used to contrast the phrases in which they stand, and usually rendered by *on the one hand . . . on the other hand*. The phrase contrasted with μὲν is not always joined by δέ, but by some equivalent particle. When μὲν does not contrast its phrase with another, it makes the word preceding it emphatic, as in § 4. Παρύσατις μὲν. δέ when found alone is a copulative conjunction, and rendered by *but* or *and*, as in ἐπεὶ δέ.

ἡσθένει = ἡσθένεις, act. ind. past imperf., see ἀσθενέω.

ὑπώπτευε* see ὑποπτεύω.

* Ochus, an illegitimate son of Artaxerxes I. (Longimanus), became king towards the close of B.C. 424, and assumed the name of Darius, usually distinguished as *Nothus*. He reigned nineteen years, and died at the end of B.C. 405, or early in B.C. 404. By his wife Parysatis he had four sons; two of whom (Artaxerxes and Cyrus) are mentioned in the *Anabasis*. It is expressly stated by Ctesias that Cyrus was born after the accession of his father; and this circumstance is usually assigned as the reason of his claiming the throne in opposition to his elder brother Artaxerxes. It is doubtful whether this statement is correct. Xenophon makes no allusion to it, but explains that the cause of the preference dis-

τελευτήν τοῦ βίου, ἐβούλετο τὼ παιδε ἀμφοτέρω
 παρῆναι. 2. ὁ μὲν οὖν πρεσβύτερος παρὼν ἐτύγ-
 χανε· Κῦρον δὲ μεταπέμπεται ἀπὸ τῆς ἀρχῆς ἧς
 αὐτὸν σατράπην ἐποίησε, καὶ στρατηγὸν δὲ αὐτὸν

τοῦ βίου, of his life. Observe, when a noun refers to the
 subject of the sentence, the Greeks (provided no emphasis be re-
 quired) use the article ὁ, ἡ, τό, where the English use the pos-
 sessive pronoun.

τὼ παιδε ἀμφοτέρω. Observe the dual number.

παρῆναι, inf. imperf. : see πάρεμι.

2. οὖν=igitur, then.

παρὼν ἐτύχανε, *chanced to be present*. τυγχάνω is used with
 a participle instead of an infinitive: root τυχ., aor. 2 ἔτυχον, fut.
 τεύξομαι, pres. perf. τετύχηκα.

ἀπό governs *only* the genitive, *from, off from, away from*.
 Peculiar usage, ἀπὸ τοῦ αὐτομάτου (I. 2. 17), *of one's own accord*.

τῆς ἀρχῆς. Cyrus had been appointed by his father satrap of
 Lydia, Phrygia, and Cappadocia, B.C. 407.

σατράπην. The civil government and the military command
 of the province were originally vested in different officers, each
 responsible to the Persian king. The civil governors were called
 satraps; but in later times the satrap held both offices.

καὶ στρατηγὸν δέ, *and general also*. When καὶ precedes δέ,
 καὶ makes the word or words between them emphatic: δέ is the
 coupling conjunction.

played by Parysatis for Cyrus was, "that she loved him better
 than she did Artaxerxes." Again, Cyrus was appointed gover-
 nor of Lydia, &c. in the spring of B.C. 407. If born after his
 father's accession, he would have been fifteen years of age; and
 no historian has mentioned his extreme youth. The statement in
 II. 4. 8. and III. 4. 13. respecting the married daughter of Arta-
 xerxes would make him at least thirty-two years old at the time
 of Cyrus's death; and if the latter were born at the time usually
 assumed, he would have been twenty-two and a half years of age
 when he died. We can discover no indication of this disparity of

ἀπέδειξε πάντων ὅσοι εἰς Καστωλοῦ πεδίον ἀθροίζονται. ἀναβαίνει οὖν ὁ Κῦρος λαβὼν Τισσαφέρτην ὡς φίλον, καὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων δὲ ἔχων ὀπλίτας

ἀπέδειξε: see ἀποδείκνυμι, fut. ἀποδείξω.

πάντων ὅσοι. These were the troops belonging to the maritime states.

λαβὼν, part. aor. 2: see λαμβάνω, root λαβ., aor. 2 ἔλαβον, fut. λήψομαι, pres. perf. εἴληφα.

ὡς φίλον, as a friend. ὡς frequently occurs, and with different meanings; those found in the *Anabasis* are: 1. as—ὡς φίλον. 2. with subj. *that*—ὡς ἐπιβουλεύει, *that he was plotting against*. 3. with fut. participle, as if, with the intention of, for the purpose of—ὡς ἀποκτενῶν, *with the intention of killing*. 4. with indicative, as, when, since, how—ὡς ἤκουσα, as I heard; ὡς ἀπῆλθε, since he went away; ὡς ἡ τροπὴ ἐγένετο, when the flight took place; ὡς ἠθροίσθη τὸ Ἑλληνικόν, how the Greek force was assembled. 5. with superlative, as possible—ὡς μάλιστα=quam maxime, as greatly as possible. 6. with a numeral,=to the number of, as many as—ὡς πεντακοσίου, to the number of five hundred. 7. with an accusative of a person, to—πορεύεσθαι ὡς βασιλέα, to go to the king.

ὀπλίτας, heavy-armed foot-soldiers, wearing κνημίδες greaves, θώραξ a cuirass, and κρόνος a helmet; and armed with ἀσπίς a shield, δόρυ a spear, and μάχαιρα or ξίφος a sword.

age in the historians. The political intrigues and active services of Cyrus previous to his last fatal expedition imply greater age and experience than are compatible with the received account of his birth. The presumed parallel case of Xerxes and Artabazanes has been misunderstood. Xerxes did not claim precedence because his mother was the reigning queen, and his rival was born previous to the accession of his father, but because he was the lineal representative (grandson) of Cyrus, who procured the independence of the Persians: according to Herodotus (vii. 2), "because he was son of Atossa, the daughter of Cyrus, and because Cyrus was the man who had procured the independence of the Persians."

ἀνέβη τριακοσίους, ἄρχοντα δὲ αὐτῶν Ξενίαν Παρράσιον.

3. Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐτελεύτησε Δαρεῖος καὶ κατέστη εἰς τὴν βασιλείαν Ἀρταξέρξης, Τισσαφέρνης διαβάλλει τὸν Κύρον πρὸς τὸν ἀδελφὸν ὡς ἐπιβουλεύει αὐτῷ. ὁ δὲ πείθεται τε καὶ συλλαμβάνει Κύρον ὡς ἀποκτενῶν ἢ δὲ μήτηρ ἐξαιτησαμένη

ἀνέβη, act. ind. 2 aor. 3 sing., root βα., pres. imp. ἀνα-βαίνω, aor. 2 ἔβην, fut. βήσομαι, pres. perf. βέβηκα.

3. κατέστη, act. ind. aor. 2, root στα., pres. καθίστημι=κατά, ἵστημι, aor. 2 ἕστην (intrans.), fut. στήσω, aor. 1 ἕστησα, pres. perf. ἕστηκα (intrans.), past perf. ἕστηκα, 3 plur. ἕστασαν (intrans.), aor. 1 pass. ἕστώθη.

eis, used with acc.: it has the following meanings in the *Anabasis*: 1. into—εἰσελαύνειν εἰς τὴν πόλιν, to march into the city. 2. to—ἐκ θαλάττης εἰς θάλατταν, from sea to sea. 3. to the number of—εἰς δισχιλίους, to the number of 2000. 4. for—εἰς τὴν τροφήν, for the support. 5. against—εἰς Πισίδας στρατεύεσθαι, to make an expedition against the Pisidae. Peculiar usages: εἰς τὴν ἐπιούσαν ἕω, on the following morning; εἰς δύο (II. 4. 26), two abreast; εἰς οὐκτώ (VII. 1. 23), eight deep.

πρὸς is used with acc., dat., and gen. With acc.: 1. to—ἔρχεσθαι πρὸς τὸν Κύρον, to come to Cyrus; 2. against—πόλεμος ἦν πρὸς τοὺς Ἀθηναίους, there was war against the Athenians; 3. towards, with motion—θέειν πρὸς τὰς πύλας, to run towards the gates; 4. πρὸς ταῦτα, in reply to this, hereupon. With dat.: 1. on the border or bank of, near—πρὸς τῇ Μυσίᾳ χώρᾳ, πρὸς τῷ Εὐφράτῃ ποταμῷ, πρὸς τῷ τείχει; 2. in addition to—πρὸς τούτοις, in addition to these things. With gen.: 1. by, with the passive voice—ἁμολογῆσθαι πρὸς πάντων, to be allowed by all; 2. towards, without motion—καταστήσασθαι πρὸς τοῦ ποταμοῦ, to station themselves on the side towards the river; 3. in accordance with—πρὸς τοῦ Κύρου τρόπου, in accordance with Cyrus's character; 4. in the sight of—καὶ πρὸς θεῶν καὶ πρὸς ἀνθρώπων, in the sight of both gods and men.

αὐτὸν ἀποπέμπει πάλιν ἐπὶ τὴν ἀρχήν. 4. ὁ δ' ὡς ἀπῆλθε κινδυνεύσας καὶ ἀτιμασθεὶς, βουλευέται ὅπως μήποτε ἔτι ἔσται ἐπὶ τῷ ἀδελφῷ, ἀλλ' ἦν δύνηται βασιλεύσει ἀντ' ἐκείνου. Παρύστατις μὲν δὴ ἡ μήτηρ ὑπῆρχε τῷ Κύριῳ, φιλοῦσα αὐτὸν μᾶλλον ἢ τὸν βασιλεύοντα Ἄρταξέρξην. 5. ὅστις δ' ἀφικνεῖτο τῶν παρὰ βασιλέως πρὸς αὐτόν, πάν-

ἐπὶ is used with acc., dat., gen. With acc.: 1. *to—ἀποπέμπειν ἐπὶ τὴν ἀρχήν, to send off to the government*; 2. *against—στρατεύεσθαι ἐπὶ Πισίδας, to make an expedition against the Pisidae*; 3. with numerals, *to the distance of, for—ἐπὶ δύο στάδια, for two stadia*. With dat.: 1. *at, on, in—εἶναι ἐπὶ ταῖς πηγαῖς, to be at the sources*; *ἐπὶ τοῖς τείχεσιν, on the walls*; 2. *dependent on—εἶναι ἐπὶ τῷ ἀδελφῷ, to be dependent on the brother*; 3. *μισθωθῆναι ἐπὶ τούτῳ, to be hired for this*. With gen., *on, in—εἶναι ἐπὶ τῶν ἄκρων, to be on the eminences*; *παρελαύνειν ἐφ' ἄρματος, to ride by in a chariot*. Peculiar usages: *ἐπὶ τεττάρων, four deer*; *ἐφ' ἐνός, one by one*; *ἐπὶ τὸν κύνα καταβῆναι, to go down for the dog*; *οἱ ἐφ' ἡμῶν, the men in our time*.

4. ἀπῆλθε, act. ind. aor. 2, root ἔλθθ. or ἐλθ. (for imperf. tenses ἐρχ.), imp. pres. ἐρχομαι, aor. 2 ἦλθον, fut. ἐλεύσομαι, pres. perf. ἐλήλυθα.

ὅπως is used with both ind. and subjunc. With ind.=*how, that*, signifying the *manner or object*; with subj.=*in order that*, signifying the *purpose*.

ἦν=ἐάν or ἔν (ᾶ).

δύνηται, subj. imp. pres.: see δύναμαι.

δή, a particle, making the word or words preceding strongly emphatic.

5. ἀφικνεῖτο=ἀφικνέετο, ind. imp. past, root ἰκ., imp. pres. ἀφικνέομαι, aor. 2 ἀφικόμην, fut. ἀφίξομαι, pres. perf. ἀφῆγμα.

παρὰ is used with acc., dat., gen. With acc.: 1. *to* (with the notion of *staying*, thus differing from πρὸς)—*ἀναβαίνειν παρὰ τὸν πατέρα, to go up to his father (and stay)*; 2. *along, by the side of—παρὰ τὴν ὁδόν, by the road-side*; 3. *against, contrary to—παρὰ τὰς*

τας οὕτω διατιθεῖς ἀπεπέμπετο ὥστε αὐτῷ μᾶλλον φίλους εἶναι ἢ βασιλεῖ. καὶ τῶν παρ' αὐτῷ δὲ βαρβάρων ἐπεμελείτο ὡς πολεμῆν τε ἱκανοὶ εἴησαν καὶ εὐνοικῶς ἔχοιεν αὐτῷ. 6. τὴν δὲ Ἑλληνικὴν δύναμιν ἠθροίζεν ὡς μάλιστα ἐδύνατο ἐπικρυπτόμενος, ὅπως ὅτι ἀπαρασκευότατον λάβοι βασιλέα. ὧδε οὖν ἐποιεῖτο τὴν συλλογὴν. ὁπόσας εἶχε φυλακὰς ἐν ταῖς πόλεσι παρήγγειλε τοῖς φρουράρχοις ἐκάστοις λαμβάνειν ἄνδρας Πελοποννησίουσιν ὅτι πλεῖστους καὶ βελτίστους, ὡς ἐπισπονδᾶς, *contrary to, in violation of the truce*: peculiar usage, *παρὰ πότον, during drinking*. With dat., *by the side of, with*—στρατοπεδεύεσθαι παρὰ Κλεάρχῳ, *to encamp by Clearchus*. With gen., *from the side of, ἀφικνεῖσθαι παρὰ βασιλέως, to come from the king*.

διατιθεῖς, part. imp. act., root θε., imp. pres. δια-τίθημι, fut. θήσω, aor. 1 ἔθηκα, ἔθηκας, ἔθηκε (for the other terminations and moods the forms of aor. 2 are used), pres. perf. τέθεικα.

ὥστε, when used with inf. = *so as, so that*—ὥστε εἶναι, *so as to be, so that they were*; with other moods, *so that*—ὥστε οὐκ ἦσθάνετο, *so that he was not sensible*.

εὐνοικῶς ἔχειν, *to be well-affected*. ἔχειν when used intrans. = *se habere* = to be; root σεχ. (becoming ἐχ. and σχ.), fut. ἔξω and σχήσω, aor. 2 ἔσχον, pres. perf. ἔσχηκα, past imp. εἴχον.

6. ὡς, ὅτι, ὅσος, ὅπως, ὅλος, ὅψ, with a superlative = *quam maxime*.

Βασιλέα. Observe that Ξενοφῶν very rarely uses the article with βασιλεύς when he refers to the Persian king.

φυλακὰς when accented on the last syllable is acc. plur. of φυλακή = *custodia*, when on the first is acc. plur. of φύλαξ = *custos*.

φρουράρχοις. A distinction existed between the army of the province and the garrison troops of the towns. The latter were called φρουροί (φυλακὰς ἐν ταῖς πόλεσι), and their commanders φρουράρχοι; the former, οἱ κατὰ τὴν χώραν φύλακες, and their commanders χιλιάρχοι.

βουλευόντος Τισσαφέρνους ταῖς πόλεσι. καὶ γὰρ ἦσαν αἱ Ἴωνικαὶ πόλεις Τισσαφέρνους τὸ ἀρχαῖον ἐκ βασιλείως δεδομέναι, τότε δ' ἀφεστήκεσαν πρὸς Κύρον πᾶσαι πλὴν Μιλήτου· ἢ ἐν Μιλήτῳ δὲ Τισσαφέρνης προαισθόμενος τὰ αὐτὰ ταῦτα βουλευομένους, [ἀποστήναι πρὸς Κύρον,] τοὺς μὲν αὐτῶν ἀπέκτεινε, τοὺς δ' ἐξέβαλεν. ὁ δὲ Κύρος ὑπολαβὼν τοὺς φεύγοντας, συλλέξας στράτευμα,

Τισσαφέρνους, genitive absolute.

καὶ γὰρ. When these are found together, γὰρ is the copulative conjunction; καὶ is used for emphasis: compare καὶ δέ, § 2.

ἦσαν Τισσαφέρνους = *belonged to Tissaphernes, used to be Tissaphernes*'.

τὸ ἀρχαῖον, *originally*. The article with a neuter adjective is equivalent to an adverb.

ἐκ, always used with gen.: 1. *out from*—ἐκ τῆς Ἑλλάδος, *from Greece*; 2. with passive voice, *by*, where the subject may be understood as coming from the agent—ἐκ βασιλείως δεδομέναι, *having been given by the king, i.e. as a present from the king*. Peculiar usage, ἐκ τούτου, sometimes *hereupon*, sometimes *in consequence of this*.

δεδομέναι, part. perf. pass., root δο., imp. pres. δίδωμι, fut. δώσω, aor. 1 ἔδωκα, ἔδωκας, ἔδωκε (for the other terminations and moods the forms of aor. 2 are used), pres. perf. δέδωκα, pres. perf. pass. δέδομαι.

ἀφεστήκεσαν, past perf. act., imp. pres. ἀφίστημι; for forms see κατέστη, § 3.

πλὴν is used two ways; sometimes with a gen., when it = *praeter*, 'except'; sometimes without a case, when it = *nisi*, unless, except.

ἢ προαισθόμενος, reflex. part. aor. 2, root αἰσθ., imp. pres. προαισθάνομαι, aor. 2 ἤσθόμην, fut. αἰσθήσομαι, pres. perf. ἤσθημαι.

τὰ αὐτά. αὐτό preceded by the article = *idem*, the same.

οἱ μὲν . . . οἱ δέ = *alii . . . alii*, some . . . others.

ἐπολιόρκει Μίλητον καὶ κατὰ γῆν καὶ κατὰ θάλατταν, καὶ ἐπειρᾶτο κατάγειν τοὺς ἐκπεπτωκότας. καὶ αὕτη αὐτῆ ἄλλη πρόφασις ἦν αὐτῷ τοῦ ἀθροίσειν στρατεύματα. 8. πρὸς δὲ βασιλέα πέμπων ἡξίου ἀδελφὸς ὢν αὐτοῦ δοθῆναι οἱ ταύτας τὰς πόλεις μᾶλλον ἢ Τισσαφέρην ἀρχεῖν αὐτῶν, καὶ ἡ μήτηρ συνέπραττεν αὐτῷ ταῦτα· ὥστε βασιλεὺς τῆς μὲν πρὸς ἑαυτὸν ἐπιβουλής οὐκ ἤσθάνετο, Τισσαφέρνει δὲ ἐνόμιζε πολεμοῦντα αὐτὸν ἀμφὶ τὰ στρατεύματα δαπανᾶν· ὥστε οὐδὲν ἤχθετο αὐτῶν πολε-

κατὰ is used with acc. and gen.: primary signification, *down*. With acc.: 1. *down to* or *against*—ἀγειν κατὰ μέσον, *to lead down to or against the centre*; 2. *opposite*—εἶναι κατὰ τὸ κῆρυ, *to be down against* i. e. *opposite the wing*; 3. *along*—κατὰ τὴν ὁδόν, *along the road*, or as we say, *down the road*. With gen.: 1. *down from*—ἀλλόμενοι κατὰ τῆς πέτρας, *leaping down from the rock*; 2. *down*—ἔντο κατὰ γηλόφου, *they rushed down a hillock*. Peculiar usages: καθ' ἕνα, *one by one*; ἐσκεδασμένοι καθ' ἀρπαγῆν, *scattered for plunder*; στρατηγὸς κατὰ τὸ Χειρισόφου μέρος, *general in place of Chirisophus*.

τοὺς ἐκπεπτωκότας, literally *those who had fallen out*, i. e. *those who had been driven out*, part. perf. act., root περ. or πεσ., imp. pres. ἐκ-πίπτω, aor. 2 ἔπεσον, fut. πεσοῦμαι, prea. perf. πέπτωκα.

τοῦ ἀθροίσειν. The Greeks use all cases of the neuter article sing. with a simple infinitive mood, or an infinitive sentence, with the government of a noun—πρόφασις τοῦ ἀθροίσειν, *a pretext for assembling*.

8. ἡξίου=ἡξίω: see ἀξίω.

οἱ is here the dat. sing. of the reflex. pron., not the nom. plur. of the article.

ἀμφὶ is used with acc., dat., gen. In the *Anabasis* with acc. only, *about*, whether of person, time, place, or number. Observe, the numeral always has the article prefixed.

δαπανᾶν, inf. act.: see δαπανᾶω.

μούντων. καὶ γὰρ ὁ Κῦρος ἀπέπεμπε τοὺς γιγνο-
μένους δασμοὺς βασιλεῖ ἐκ τῶν πόλεων ὧν Τισ-
σαφέρνης ἐτύγχανεν ἔχων.

9. Ἄλλο δὲ στράτευμα αὐτῷ συνελέγετο ἐν
Χερρόνησῳ τῇ καταντιπέρας Ἀβύδου τόνδε τὸν
τρόπον. Κλέαρχος Λακεδαιμόνιος φυγὰς ἦν τού-
τῳ συγγενόμενος ὁ Κῦρος ἠγάσθη τε αὐτὸν καὶ
δίδωσιν αὐτῷ μυρία δαρεικοὺς. ὁ δὲ λαβὼν τὸ
χρυσίον στράτευμα συνέλεξεν ἀπὸ τούτων τῶν
χρημάτων καὶ ἐπολέμει ἐκ Χερρόνησου ὀρμώμενος
τοῖς Θραξὶ τοῖς ὑπὲρ Ἑλλάσποντον οἰκοῦσι καὶ
ὠφέλει τοὺς Ἕλληνας ὥστε καὶ χρήματα συνε-
βάλλοντο αὐτῷ εἰς τὴν τροφήν τῶν στρατιωτῶν

ἀπέπεμπε, he used to send off.

ὧν. Observe that in Greek the relative is often put in the same case as the antecedent.

9. τῇ. The article in this position is used to call especial attention to the word or words qualifying the preceding noun.

τόνδε τὸν τρόπον, in the following manner.

ἠγάσθη, aor. 1: see ἄγαμαι.

δareiós, a Persian gold coin, so named from Δαρείος (but which one uncertain), bearing on one side the figure of a crowned archer kneeling on one knee; on the other side, a figure somewhat resembling a square. There are two in the British Museum. The coin was worth twenty Attic drachmas, i. e. about 16s. 3d.

ὑπὲρ is used with acc. and gen. With acc.: 1. *beyond*—οἰκεῖν ὑπὲρ Ἑλλάσποντον, *to dwell beyond the Hellespont* (this a rare use of the accusative); 2. *above*—more than—ὑπὲρ τετταράκοντα ἔτη, *above forty years*. With gen.: 1. *above, in position*—τὴν κορυφὴν ὑπὲρ τοῦ στρατεύματος, *the summit above the army*; 2. *beyond*—ὑπὲρ τοῦ λόφου, *beyond the hill*; 3. *for, on behalf of*—ὑπὲρ τῶν στρατιωτῶν, *on behalf of the soldiers*; 4. *for, on account of*—ὑπὲρ ἧς, *on account of which*.

ὠφέλει, past imp.: see ὠφελῶ.

αἱ Ἑλλησποντιακαὶ πόλεις ἐκούσαι. τοῦτο δ' αὖ οὕτω τρεφόμενον ἐλάνθανεν αὐτῷ τὸ στράτευμα. 10. Ἀρίστιππος δὲ ὁ Θετταλὸς ξένος ὃν ἐτύγχανεν αὐτῷ, καὶ πιεζόμενος ὑπὸ τῶν οἴκοι ἀντιστασιωτῶν ἔρχεται πρὸς τὸν Κῦρον καὶ αἰτεῖ αὐτὸν εἰς δισχιλίους ξένους καὶ τριῶν μηνῶν μισθόν, ὡς οὕτω περιγεγόμενος ἂν τῶν ἀντιστασιωτῶν. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος δίδωσιν αὐτῷ εἰς τετρακισχιλίους καὶ ἑξ μηνῶν μισθόν, καὶ δεῖται αὐτοῦ μὴ πρόσθεν καταλύσαι πρὸς τοὺς ἀντιστασιώτας πρὶν ἂν αὐτῷ συμβουλεύσῃται. οὕτω δὲ αὖ τὸ ἐν Θετταλίᾳ ἐλάνθανεν αὐτῷ τρεφόμενον στράτευμα. 11. Πρόξενον

τρεφόμενον ἐλάνθανεν, *was secretly supported*. When λαμβάνειν and φθάνειν are used with a participle, translate the part. as a verb, and the verb adverbially.

10. ὑπὸ is used with acc., dat., gen. With acc.: 1. *under*—ἀπελθεῖν ὑπὸ τὰ δένδρα, *to go off under the trees*; 2. *under, subject to*—ὑπὸ βασιλείᾳ, *under the king*. With dat., *under, at the foot of*—ἔστι βασιλεία ὑπὸ τῇ ἀκροπόλει, *there is a palace at the foot of the acropolis*; ὑπὸ Λακεδαιμονίοις, *under the Lacedaemonians*. With gen.: 1. *under*—ὑπὸ μαστίγων, *under the lash*; 2. *from under*—λαβὼν βοῦν ὑπὸ ἀμάξης, *having taken an ox from under a wagon*; 3. *by*—μετάπεμπτος ὑπὸ Κύρου, *sent for by Cyrus*.

περιγεγόμενος ἂν, *he would get the better*. ἂν is used with all parts of the verb except the imperative mood; it introduces a consequence, and is translated by *would* or *should*. The word preceding it is always emphatic.

μὴ. Observe the general difference between οὐ and μὴ. The former is used in direct and independent sentences; the latter in dependent and prohibitive sentences. Apparent exceptions will be noticed when they occur.

πρόσθεν . . . πρὶν=*præterquam*. Observe the general use of πρὶν. It connects an ind. or inf. mood with an affirmative sentence, and a subjunctive mood with a negative one.

δὲ τὸν Βοιωτίον ξένον ὄντα αὐτῷ ἐκέλευσε λαβόντα ἄνδρας ὅτι πλείστους παραγενέσθαι, ὡς εἰς Πισιδας βουλόμενος στρατεύεσθαι, ὡς πράγματα παρεχόντων τῶν Πισιδῶν τῇ ἑαυτοῦ χώρᾳ. Σοφαίνεται δὲ τὸν Στυμφάλιον καὶ Σωκράτην τὸν Ἀχαιοῖον, ξένους ὄντας καὶ τούτους, ἐκέλευσεν ἄνδρας λαβόντας ἐλθεῖν ὅτι πλείστους, ὡς πολεμήσων Τισσαφέρνει σὺν τοῖς φυγάσι τῶν Μιλησίων. καὶ ἐποίουν οὕτως οὗτοι.

II. Ἐπεὶ δ' ἐδόκει ἤδη πορεύεσθαι αὐτῷ ἄνω, τὴν μὲν πρόφασιν ἐποιεῖτο ὡς Πισίδας βουλόμενος ἐκβαλεῖν παντάπασιν ἐκ τῆς χώρας· καὶ ἀθροίζει ὡς ἐπὶ τούτους τό τε βαρβαρικὸν καὶ τὸ Ἑλληνικὸν ἐνταῦθα στράτευμα, καὶ παραγγέλλει τῷ τε Κλεάρχῳ λαβόντι ἤκειν ὅσον ἦν αὐτῷ στράτευμα, καὶ τῷ Ἀριστίπῳ συναλλαγέντι πρὸς τοὺς οἴκοι ἀποπέμψαι πρὸς ἑαυτὸν ὃ εἶχε στράτευμα· καὶ Ξενίᾳ τῷ Ἀρκάδι, ὃς αὐτῷ προεστήκει τοῦ ἐν ταῖς πόλεσι ξενικοῦ, ἤκειν παραγγέλλει λαβόντα τοὺς ἄνδρας, πλὴν ὅποσοι ἱκανοὶ ἦσαν τὰς ἀκροπόλεις φυλάττειν. 2. ἐκάλεσε δὲ καὶ τοὺς Μίλητον πολι-
ορκούντας, καὶ τοὺς φυγάδας ἐκέλευσε σὺν αὐτῷ στρατεύεσθαι, ὑποσχόμενος αὐτοῖς, εἰ καλῶς καταπράξειεν ἐφ' ἃ ἐστρατεύετο, μὴ πρόσθεν παύ-

11. *πράγματα παρέχειν*, literally *to afford business, to cause trouble*.

II. 1. *ἄνω*, upwards, that is, from the coast to the interior.
τε . . . καὶ, both . . . and.

συναλλαγέντι, part. pass. aor. 2: see *συναλλάσσω*.

2. *ὑποσχόμενος*, part. aor. 2: see *ὑπισχνόμαι*.

σασθαι πρὶν αὐτοὺς καταγάγοι οἴκαδε. οἱ δὲ ἠδέως ἐπέειθοντο· ἐπίστευον γὰρ αὐτῷ· καὶ λαβόντες τὰ ὄπλα παρήσαν εἰς Σάρδεις. 3. Ξενίας μὲν δὴ τοὺς ἐκ τῶν πόλεων λαβὼν παρεγένετο εἰς Σάρδεις ὀπλίτας εἰς τετρακισχιλίους, Πρόξενος δὲ παρῆν ἔχων ὀπλίτας μὲν εἰς πεντακοσίους καὶ χιλίους, γυμνήτας δὲ πεντακοσίους, Σοφαίνετος δὲ ὁ Στυμφάλιος ὀπλίτας ἔχων χιλίους, Σωκράτης δὲ ὁ Ἀχαιοὺς ὀπλίτας ἔχων ὡς πεντακοσίους, Πασίων δὲ ὁ Μεγαρεὺς εἰς ἑπτακοσίους ἔχων ἄνδρας παρεγένετο· ἦν δὲ καὶ οὗτος καὶ ὁ Σωκράτης τῶν ἀμφὶ Μίλητον στρατευομένων. 4. οὗτοι μὲν εἰς Σάρδεις αὐτῷ ἀφίκοντο. Τισσαφέρνης δὲ κατανοήσας ταῦτα καὶ μείζονα ἡγησάμενος εἶναι ἢ ὡς ἐπὶ Πισιδας τὴν παρασκευὴν πορεύεται ὡς βασιλέα ἢ ἐδύνατο τάχιστα ἰππέας ἔχων ὡς πεντακοσίους. 5. καὶ βασιλεὺς μὲν δὴ ἐπεὶ ἤκουσε παρὰ Τισσαφέρνους τὸν Κύρου στόλον, ἀντιπαρεσκευάζετο.

Κῦρος δὲ ἔχων οὖς εἶρηκα ὠρμᾶτο ἀπὸ Σάρ-

καταγάγοι, act. subj. aor. 2 past, imp. pres. κατ-άγω, aor. 2 ἤγαγον.

παρήσαν, imp. past : see πάρειμι.

3. γυμνήτες or γυμνήται, ψιλοί, and ἄσπλοι, are three words used for *light-armed soldiers*. They wore a dress of either skins, leather, or cloth ; and they commonly fought with darts, stones, bows and arrows, or slings.

τῶν στρατευομένων, the partitive genitive.

4. μείζονα ἢ ὡς = *too great*.

ἢ τάχιστα. cf. I. 1. 6.

5. εἶρηκα, act. pres. perf. The only tenses of this verb in the *Anabasis* are, fut. ἔρω, pres. perf. εἶρηκα, pres. perf. pass. εἶρηται,

δεων. καὶ ἐξελαύνει διὰ τῆς Λυδίας σταθμούς τρεῖς παρασάγγας εἴκοσι καὶ δύο ἐπὶ τὸν Μαίανδρον ποταμόν. τούτου τὸ εὖρος δύο πλέθρα γέφυρα δὲ ἐπὴν ἐξευγμένη πλοοῖς ἐπτά. 6. τοῦτον διαβὰς ἐξελαύνει διὰ Φρυγίας σταθμόν ἕνα παρα-

past perf. εἶρητο: for the imperfect tenses is used φημί or λέγω; for aor. act. εἶπον and εἶπα, the latter form of which is more frequently used in the jussive mood.

ἐξελαύνει: root ἐλα., imp. pres. ἐξ-ελαίνω, fut. ἐλάσω (most frequently ἐλώ), aor. 1 ἤλασα, pres. perf. ἐλήλακα.

δίᾳ is used with gen. and acc. With gen.: 1. of place, *through*—διὰ τῆς Λυδίας, *through Lydia*; 2. of time, *throughout*—διὰ νυκτός, *throughout the night*. With acc., *through, on account of*—διὰ τοῦτο, *through, on account of, this*.

σταθμός, lit. *a halting-place*. "The great roads constructed by the kings of Persia were provided at intervals corresponding to the length of a day's journey with establishments of the same kind as the khans or caravanseras which are still found in the East."—*Dict. Ant.* Hence comes the common meaning of the word, *a day's march*.

παρασάγγης, a Persian measure of length = thirty stadia. "Modern English travellers estimate it variously from three and a half to four English miles." *Dict. Ant.*—"As a measure of distance, the parasang of Xenophon is evidently untrustworthy. . . . By these early marches Xenophon had the opportunity of forming to himself roughly an idea of time (measured by the course of the sun) which it took for the army to march one, two, or three parasangs; and when he came to the ulterior portions of the road, he called *that length of time* by the name of one, two, or three parasangs. Five parasangs seem to have meant with him a full day's march; three or four, a short day; six, seven, or eight, a long or very long day." *Grote*, vol. ix. p. 21. στάδιον, a Greek measure of length = .1149 of a geographical mile, or about 606 feet 9 inches English. πλέθρον, a sixth part of a στάδιον.

ἐξευγμένη, part. perf. pass.: see ζεύγνυμι. "A style of bridge still common in the same countries."—*Ainsworth*, p. 13.

σάγγας ὀκτὼ εἰς Κολοσσάς, πόλιν οἰκουμένην, εὐδαίμονα καὶ μεγάλην. ἐνταῦθα ἔμεινεν ἡμέρας ἑπτὰ. καὶ ἦκε Μένων ὁ Θετταλὸς ὀπλίτας ἔχων χιλίους καὶ πελταστὰς πεντακοσίους, Δόλοπας καὶ Αἰνιᾶνας καὶ Ὀλυνθίους. 7. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς τρεῖς παρασάγγας εἴκοσιν εἰς Κελαινάς, τῆς Φρυγίας πόλιν οἰκουμένην, μεγάλην καὶ εὐδαίμονα. ἐνταῦθα Κύρῳ βασιλεία ἦν καὶ παράδεισος μέγας ἀγρίων θηρίων πλήρης, ἃ ἐκεῖνος ἐθήρευεν ἀπὸ ἵππου, ὁπότε γυμνάσαι βούλοιο ἐαυτὸν τε καὶ τοὺς ἵππους. διὰ μέσου δὲ τοῦ παραδείσου ρεῖ ὁ Μαίανδρος ποταμός· αἱ δὲ πηγαὶ αὐτοῦ εἰσιν ἐκ τῶν βασιλείων· ρεῖ δὲ καὶ διὰ τῆς Κελαινῶν πόλεως. 8. ἔστι δὲ καὶ μεγάλου βασιλέως βασιλεία ἐν Κελαιναῖς ἐρυμνὰ ἐπὶ ταῖς πηγαῖς τοῦ Μαρσίου ποταμοῦ ὑπὸ τῇ ἀκροπόλει· ρεῖ δὲ καὶ οὗτος διὰ τῆς πόλεως καὶ ἐμβάλλει εἰς τὸν Μαίανδρον· τοῦ δὲ Μαρσίου τὸ εὐρὸς ἔστιν εἴκοσι καὶ πέντε ποδῶν. ἐνταῦθα λέγεται Ἀπόλλων ἐκδεῖραι Μαρσύαν νικήσας ἐρίζοντά οἱ περὶ σοφίας,

6. *πελταστὰς*. "The peltastae, or targeteers, were a class of troops formed at Athens by Iphicrates, after the Peloponnesian war. They were armed nearly in the same manner as the hoplites, but their cuirasses were of linen instead of bronze or iron; their spears were short, and they carried small round bucklers called *πέλται*."—*Dict. Ant.*

7. *ἐντεῦθεν*, from this place, thence. Observe the suffix *θεν* = from.

8. *οἱ*, dat. sing. : see I. 8.

περὶ is used with acc., gen., dat. With acc., *about*, physically—*περὶ αὐτόν*, about him; *about*, morally—*περὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια*, about the necessaries. With gen., *about*, morally—*περὶ σοφίας*, about

καὶ τὸ δέρμα κρεμάσαι ἐν τῷ ἄντρῳ ὅθεν αἰ πηγαί. διὰ δὲ τοῦτο ὁ ποταμὸς καλεῖται Μαρσύας. 9. ἐνταῦθα Ξέρξης, ὅτε ἐκ τῆς Ἑλλάδος ἠττηθεὶς τῇ μάχῃ ἀπεχώρει, λέγεται οἰκοδομῆσαι ταῦτά τε τὰ βασίλεια καὶ τὴν Κελαινῶν ἀκρόπολιν. ἐνταῦθα ἔμεινε Κῦρος ἡμέρας τριάκοντα· καὶ ἦκε Κλέαρχος ὁ Λακεδαιμόνιος φυγὰς ἔχων ὀπλίτας χιλίους καὶ πελταστὰς Θρᾶκας ὀκτακοσίους καὶ τοξότας Κρήτας διακοσίους. ἅμα δὲ καὶ Σωκράτης παρῆν ὁ Συρακόσιος ἔχων ὀπλίτας τριακοσίους, καὶ Σοφαίνετος ὁ Ἀρκὰς ἔχων ὀπλίτας χιλίους. καὶ ἐνταῦθα Κῦρος ἐξέτασιν καὶ ἀριθμὸν τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐποίησεν ἐν τῷ παραδείσῳ, καὶ ἐγένοντο οἱ σύμπαντες ὀπλίται μὲν μύριοι καὶ χίλιοι, πελτασταὶ δὲ ἀμφὶ τοὺς δισχιλίους.

10. Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς δύο παρασάγγας δέκα εἰς Πέλτας, πόλιν οἰκουμένην. ἐνταῦθ' ἔμεινεν ἡμέρας τρεῖς· ἐν αἷς Ξενίας ὁ Ἀρκὰς τὰ Λύκαια ἔθυσσε καὶ ἀγῶνα ἔθηκε· τὰ δὲ ἄθλα ἦσαν στλεγγίδες χρυσαῖ· ἐθεώρει δὲ τὸν ἀγῶνα

skill; *περὶ παντὸς ποιῆσθαι*=*plurimi facere*, to consider above all. With dat., *about*, physically—*περὶ τοῖς στήνεσι*, *about the breast*.

κρεμάσαι, act. inf. aor. 1: see *κρεμάννυμι*.

9. *τῇ μάχῃ*. The battle of Salamis, 480 B.C.

Σοφαίνετος ὁ Ἀρκὰς. There appears to be a corrupt reading here, as *Σοφ.* joined *Κῦρος* at *Σάρδεσι*, see § 3; unless there were two of the same name.

10. *τὰ Λύκαια*, an Arcadian festival in honour of *Zeus Lykaïos*. *Lykaïos* was the name of a mountain in *Ἀρκαδία*, and was one of the chief seats of the worship of *Zeus*, who was hence named *Lykaïos*.

στλεγγίδες, scrapers used to remove the perspiration and oil

καὶ Κῦρος. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμούς δύο παρασάγγας δώδεκα εἰς Κεραμῶν ἀγοράν, πόλιν οἰκουμένην, ἐσχάτην πρὸς τῇ Μυσία χώρᾳ. 11. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμούς τρεῖς παρασάγγας τριάκοντα εἰς Καῦστρου πεδίον, πόλιν οἰκουμένην. ἐνταῦθ' ἔμεινεν ἡμέρας πέντε· καὶ τοῖς στρατιώταις ὠφείλετο μισθὸς πλεόν ἢ τριῶν μηνῶν, καὶ πολλάκις ἰόντες ἐπὶ τὰς θύρας ἀπήτουν. ὁ δὲ ἐλπίδας λέγων διήγγε καὶ δῆλος ἦν ἀνιώμενος· οὐ γὰρ ἦν πρὸς τοῦ Κύρου τρόπου ἔχοντα μὴ ἀποδιδόναι.

12. Ἐνταῦθα ἀφικνεῖται Ἐπύαξα ἡ Συενέσιος γυνὴ τοῦ Κιλικῶν βασιλέως παρὰ Κῦρον· καὶ ἐλέγετο Κύρῳ δοῦναι χρήματα πολλά. τῇ δ' οὖν στρατιᾷ τότε ἀπέδωκε Κῦρος μισθὸν τεττάρων μηνῶν. εἶχε δὲ ἡ Κιλίσσα καὶ φύλακας περὶ αὐτὴν Κίλικας καὶ Ἀσπενδίους· ἐλέγετο δὲ καὶ συγγενέσθαι Κῦρον τῇ Κιλίσσῃ. 13. ἐντεῦθεν δὲ ἐξελαύνει σταθμούς δύο παρασάγγας δέκα εἰς Θύμβριον, πόλιν οἰκουμένην. ἐνταῦθα ἦν παρὰ τὴν ὁδὸν κρήνη ἡ Μίδου καλουμένη τοῦ Φρυγῶν βασιλέως, ἐφ' ἣ λέγεται Μίδας τὸν Σάτυρον θηρεῦ-

from the body at the bath, or after exercise in the palaestra: a natural prize for athletic games. Some suppose it to mean here an ornament for the head, but only from conjecture.

11. ἐπὶ τὰς θύρας, lit. *to the doors*. From the Eastern custom of receiving petitions, &c. "at the gate," αἱ τοῦ βασιλέως θύραι became a phrase (as we now say "the Porte"); hence, *ἔναι ἐπὶ τὰς θύρας*, to go to the Persian court; *ἐπὶ ταῖς θύραις εἶναι*, to wait at the king's door.—Lidd. and Scott.

διήγγε, kept leading them on, i. e. persuaded them to wait.

σαι οἶνω κεράσας αὐτήν. 14. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμούς δύο παρασάγγας δέκα εἰς Τυραῖον, πόλιν οἰκουμένην. ἐνταῦθα ἔμεινεν ἡμέρας τρεῖς. καὶ λέγεται δεηθῆναι ἢ Κίλισσα Κύρου ἐπιδειξαι τὸ στράτευμα αὐτῇ· βουλόμενος οὖν ἐπιδειξαι ἐξέτασιν ποιεῖται ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ τῶν Ἑλλήνων καὶ τῶν βαρβάρων. 15. ἐκέλευσε δὲ τοὺς Ἕλληνας ὡς νόμος αὐτοῖς εἰς μάχην οὕτω ταχθῆναι καὶ στήναι, συντάξαι δὲ ἕκαστον τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ. ἐτάχθησαν οὖν ἐπὶ τεττάρων· εἶχε δὲ τὸ μὲν δεξιὸν Μένων καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ, τὸ δὲ εὐώνυμον Κλέαρχος καὶ οἱ ἐκείνου, τὸ δὲ μέσον οἱ ἄλλοι στρατηγοί. 16. ἐθεώρει οὖν ὁ Κύρος πρῶτον μὲν τοὺς βαρβάρους· οἱ δὲ παρήλανον τεταγμένοι κατὰ ἴλας καὶ κατὰ τάξεις· εἶτα δὲ τοὺς Ἕλληνας παρελαύνων ἐφ' ἄρματος καὶ ἢ Κίλισσα ἐφ' ἄρμαμάξης. εἶχον δὲ πάντες κράνη χαλκᾶ καὶ χιτῶνας φοινικοῦς καὶ κνημίδας καὶ τὰς ἀσπίδας ἐκκεκαλυμμένας. 17. ἐπειδὴ δὲ πάντας

13. κεράσας, part. aor. 1: see κερᾶννυμι.

15. ἐπὶ τεττάρων see ἐπί, § 3.

16. κατὰ ἴλας καὶ κατὰ τάξεις: see κατὰ, I. 1. 7.

ἐκκεκαλυμμένας. cf. Cæsar. B. G. ii. 21. "ad galeas induendas, scutisque tegumenta detrahenda tempus defuit."—"When the hoplite was on march, without expectation of an enemy, the shield seems to have been carried behind him, with his blanket attached to it: it was slung by the strap round his neck and shoulder. Sometimes, indeed, he had an opportunity of relieving himself from the burden by putting the shield in a baggage-wagon (*Anabasis*, I. 7. 20). On occasion of this review, the shields were unpacked, rubbed, and brightened, as before a battle; then fastened round the neck or shoulders, and held out upon the left arm, which was passed through the rings or straps attached to its concave or interior side." *Grote*, vol. iv. p. 25.

παρήλασε, στήσας τὸ ἄρμα πρὸ τῆς φάλαγγος, πέμψας Πύργητα τὸν ἑρμηνέα παρὰ τοὺς στρατηγούς τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐκέλευσε προβαλέσθαι τὰ ὄπλα καὶ ἐπιχωρήσαι ὄλην τὴν φάλαγγα. οἱ δὲ ταῦτα προεῖπον τοῖς στρατιώταις· καὶ ἐπεὶ ἐσάλπιγξε, προβαλλόμενοι τὰ ὄπλα ἐπήεσαν. ἐκ δὲ τούτου θᾶσσον προϊόντων σὺν κραυγῇ ἀπὸ τοῦ αὐτομάτου δρόμος ἐγένετο τοῖς στρατιώταις ἐπὶ τὰς σκηνάς. 18. τῶν δὲ βαρβάρων φόβος πολὺς καὶ ἄλλοις, καὶ ἡ τε Κίλισσα ἔφυγεν ἐκ τῆς ἄρμαμάξης καὶ οἱ ἐκ τῆς ἀγορᾶς καταλιπόντες τὰ ὄνια ἔφυγον· οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες σὺν γέλῳτι ἐπὶ τὰς σκηνάς ἦλθον. ἡ δὲ Κίλισσα ἰδοῦσα τὴν λαμπρότητα καὶ τὴν τάξιν τοῦ στρατεύματος ἐθαύμασε. Κύρος δὲ ἦσθη τὸν ἐκ τῶν Ἑλλήνων εἰς τοὺς βαρβάρους φόβον ἰδών.

19. Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμούς τρεῖς παρασάγγας εἴκοσιν εἰς Ἰκόνιον, τῆς Φρυγίας πόλιν ἐσχάτην. ἐνταῦθα ἔμεινε τρεῖς ἡμέρας. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει διὰ τῆς Λυκαονίας σταθμούς πέντε

17. *πρό*, always used with gen.: 1. *before*, of place—*πρὸ τῆς φάλαγγος*, *before the phalanx*; 2. *before*, of time—*πρὸ τῆς μάχης*, *before the battle*; 3. *for*, *on behalf of*—*πρὸ ὑμῶν*, *for you*.

προβαλέσθαι τὰ ὄπλα, *to advance their arms*.

ἐπήεσαν, ind. past imp. 3 plur.: see *ἔπειμι*, root *ι*, *go*.

προϊόντων, genitive absolute.

18. *τῶν βαρβάρων*, governed by *ἄλλοις*.

ἰδοῦσα, part. aor. 2 act. The roots *δρα* and *δρ* are used to complete this verb: act. pres. imp. *δράω*, past *έώραν*, pres. perf. *έώρακα*, fut. *δύσομαι*, aor. 2 *έιδον*, pass. pres. perf. *έώραμαι* and *δύμαι*, fut. *δφθήσομαι*, aor. 1 *έφθην*.

ἦσθη, aor. 1: see *ἦδομαι*.

παρασάγγας τριάκοντα. ταύτην τὴν χώραν ἐπέ-
 τρεψε διαρπάσαι τοῖς Ἑλλησιν ὡς πολεμίαν
 οὖσαν. 20. ἐντεῦθεν Κύρος τὴν Κίλισσαν εἰς
 τὴν Κιλικίαν ἀποπέμπει τὴν ταχίστην ὁδόν· καὶ
 συνέπεμψεν αὐτῇ στρατιώτας οὓς Μένων εἶχε
 καὶ αὐτόν. Κύρος δὲ μετὰ τῶν ἄλλων ἐξελαύνει
 διὰ Καππαδοκίας σταθμοὺς τέτταρας παρασάγγ-
 ας εἴκοσι καὶ πέντε πρὸς Δάναν, πόλιν οἰκου-
 μένην, μεγάλην καὶ εὐδαίμονα. ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν
 ἡμέρας τρεῖς· ἐν ᾧ Κύρος ἀπέκτεινεν ἄνδρα Πέρ-
 σην Μεγαφέρην, φοινικιστὴν βασιλείου, καὶ ἕτε-
 ρόν τινα τῶν ὑπάρχων δυνάστην, αἰτιασάμενος
 ἐπιβουλεύειν αὐτῷ. 21. ἐντεῦθεν ἐπειρῶντο εἰσ-
 βάλλειν εἰς τὴν Κιλικίαν· ἡ δὲ εἰσβολὴ ἦν ὁδὸς

20. ἀποπέμπει τὴν ταχίστην ὁδόν. "There are only three passes through Taurus in these regions. The first leads directly from Laranda to Múl and Selevké (Seleucia), and is the longest and most devious. The second, and this is the pass in question, leads by Kizil Chésmeh and Mezetli to Soli or Pompeiopolis and to Tarsus. . . . It is the shortest and most direct of the passes, but presents great difficulties to an army, and there are said to be many caves and ruins on its course. The third is the celebrated Cilician Gate; the Tauripyliæ of Cicero, and the Gölek Boghaz of the Turks."—*Ainsworth*, p. 40.

μετά is used with acc. and gen. (with dat. only in poetry). With acc., *after*—*μετὰ τοῦτο, after this*; with gen., *with*—*μετὰ τῶν ἄλλων, with the others*.

ἐν ᾧ, in which (time).

21. ἡ δὲ εἰσβολή. "The Gölek Boghaz is decidedly one of the most remarkable passes of Taurus. The road is carried at first over low undulating grounds, the waters of which flow towards the mountains. It enters them with the rivulets tributary to the Sarus, which have an easterly flow, and follows the waters for some distance, amid precipitous cliffs and wooded abutments,

ἀμαξιτὸς ὀρθία ἰσχυρῶς καὶ ἀμήχανος εἰσελθεῖν στρατεύματι, εἴ τις ἐκώλυεν. ἐλέγετο δὲ καὶ Συέννεσις εἶναι ἐπὶ τῶν ἄκρων φυλάττων τὴν εἰσβολὴν δι' ἃ ἔμεινεν ἡμέραν ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ. τῇ δ' ὑστεραία ἤκεν ἄγγελος λέγων ὅτι λελοιπῶς εἶη Συέννεσις τὰ ἄκρα, ἐπεὶ ἤσθετο ὅτι τὸ Μένωνος στρατεύμα ἤδη ἐν Κιλικίᾳ ἦν εἴσω τῶν ὀρέων, καὶ ὅτι τριήρεις ἤκουε περιπλεύσας ἀπ' Ἰωνίας εἰς Κιλικίαν Ταμὼν ἔχοντα τὰς Λακεδαιμονίων

till they sever the main chain, which is composed of a somewhat narrow and rugged belt of limestone reposing on schists. The scenery at this point is very grand: rocky projections, fallen masses, and steep naked cliffs, rise one above the other, till buried in perpetual snows. The pass is, however, wide, and would permit the passage of three chariots abreast. Beyond this the road turns off to the south, up the course of a tributary to the river previously followed. The pathway, carried over wooded rocks and hills gains the head waters of this second rivulet; an expansive upland here presents itself. Beyond this the waters flow no longer to the Sarus, but to the Cydnus—the river of Tarsus. The pathway follows these, and they soon lead to a deep gorge or fissure in another lofty ridge of limestone rocks. This is the narrowest and most difficult portion of the path. It is the point to which Xenophon's description applies, as just broad enough for a chariot to pass, and that would be with great difficulty. This portion of the rock bears evident traces of ancient chiselling, and must have been widened and repaired by successive invaders; but large masses of rock have fallen down into the stony bed of the waters, and the road is perhaps less feasible in the present day than it was in those of Xenophon or Alexander."—*Ainsworth*, pp. 44, 45. (See *Chesney*, vol. i. pp. 353, 4.)

λελοιπῶς εἶη, act. subj. past perf., present λείτω.

τριήρεις . . . Κύρου: translate, *he heard that Tamos was sailing round from Ionia to Cilicia with triremes, those of the Lacedaemonians and Cyrus's own.*

καὶ αὐτοῦ Κύρου. 22. Κύρος δ' οὖν ἀνέβη ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρη οὐδενὸς κωλύοντος, καὶ εἶδε τὰς σκηναὶς οὐ οἱ Κίλικες ἐφύλαττον. ἐντεύθεν δὲ κατέβαιναν εἰς πεδῖον μέγα καὶ καλόν, ἐπίρρυτον, καὶ δένδρων παντοδαπῶν ἔμπλεων καὶ ἀμπέλων· πολὺ δὲ καὶ σήσαμον καὶ μελίην καὶ κέγγρον καὶ πυροὺς καὶ κριθὰς φέρει. ὄρος δ' αὐτὸ περιέχει ὄχυρόν καὶ ἰψηλὸν πάντη ἐκ θαλάττης εἰς θάλατταν.

23. Καταβάς δὲ διὰ τούτου τοῦ πεδίου ἤλασε σταθμοὺς τέτταρας παρασάγγας πέντε καὶ εἴκοσιν εἰς Ταρσόν, τῆς Κιλικίας πόλιν μεγάλην καὶ εὐδαίμονα. ἐνταῦθα ἦσαν τὰ Συεννέσιος βασιλεία τοῦ Κιλικῶν βασιλέως· διὰ μέσης δὲ τῆς πόλεως ῥεῖ ποταμὸς Κύδνος ὄνομα, εὖρος δύο πλέθρων. 24. ταύτην τὴν πόλιν ἐξέλιπον οἱ ἐνοικοῦντες μετὰ Συεννέσιος εἰς χωρίον ὄχυρόν ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρη, πλὴν οἱ τὰ καπηλεία ἔχοντες· ἔμειναν δὲ καὶ οἱ παρὰ τὴν θάλατταν οἰκοῦντες ἐν Σόλοις καὶ ἐν Ἰσσοῖς. 25. Ἐπύαξα δὲ ἡ Συεννέσιος γυνὴ προτέρα Κύρου

22. οὐ, gen. of ὄς: translate, *where*.

εἰς πεδῖον. "The plain of Cilicia Campestris is indeed almost everywhere remarkable for its fertility and beauty, but especially in the valleys of the rivers Cydnus, Sarus, and Pyramus. In its higher positions it is at present uncultivated and covered with greensward, amid which abound the Christ's thorn, the caper plant, and mimosa agrestis. Every here and there rises a lonely carob-tree, a feature which distinguishes these plains from almost all others in Syria and Asia Minor. On approaching Tarsus vegetation becomes more luxuriant, and cultivation and gardens supersede greensward. Sesame, panic, millet, wheat, and barley, are grown to the present day."—*Ainsworth*, p. 46.

ἔμπλεων, acc. sing., nom. ἔμπλεως, Attic for ἔμπλεος.

πέντε ἡμέρας εἰς Ταρσὸν ἀφίκετο· ἐν δὲ τῇ ὑπερβολῇ τῶν ὄρων τῶν εἰς τὸ πεδίον δύο λόχοι τοῦ Μένωνος στρατεύματος ἀπώλοντο. οἱ μὲν ἔφασαν ἀρπάζοντάς τι κατακοπήναι ὑπὸ τῶν Κιλικῶν, οἱ δὲ ὑπολειφθέντας καὶ οὐ δυναμένους εὐρεῖν τὸ ἄλλο στράτευμα οὐδὲ τὰς ὁδοὺς, εἶτα πλανωμένους ἀπολέσθαι· ἦσαν δ' οὖν οὗτοι ἑκατὸν ὑπλῖται.

26. οἱ δ' ἄλλοι, ἐπεὶ ἤκον, τὴν τε πόλιν τοὺς Ταρσοὺς διήρπασαν, διὰ τὸν ὄλεθρον τῶν συστρατιωτῶν ὀργιζόμενοι, καὶ τὰ βασίλεια τὰ ἐν αὐτῇ. Κύρος δὲ ἐπεὶ εἰσήλασεν εἰς τὴν πόλιν, μετεπέμπετο τὸν Σύννεσιν πρὸς ἑαυτόν· ὁ δ' οὔτε πρότερον οὐδενὶ πω κρείττονι ἑαυτοῦ εἰς χεῖρας ἐλθεῖν ἔφη, οὔτε τότε Κύρω ἰέναι ἠθέλε, πρὶν ἢ γυνῇ αὐτὸν ἔπεισε καὶ πίστεις ἔλαβε. 27. μετὰ

25. ἀπώλοντο, reflex. ind. aor. 2; root *ολ*, act. imp. pres. ἀπώλλυμι, fut. ὀλώ, aor. 1 ὄλεσα, pres. perf. ὀλώλεκα, intrans. perf. ὄλωλα, refl. aor. ὀλόμην.

εὐρεῖν, act. inf. aor. 2; root *εὐρ*, imp. pres. εὐρίσκω, aor. 2 εὔρον, fut. εὐρήσω, pres. perf. εὔρηκα, aor. 1 pass. εὐρέθη.

26. οὔτε . . . οὐδενί. Observe the difference between the Greek and English languages; the former frequently repeats the negative.

27. "It seems evident, though Xenophon does not directly tell us so, that the resistance of Syennesis (this was a standing name or title of the hereditary princes of Kilikia under the Persian crown) was a mere feint; that the visit of Epyaxa with a supply of money to Cyrus, and the admission of Menon and his division over Mount Taurus, were manœuvres in collusion with him; and that, thinking Cyrus would be successful, he was disposed to support his cause, yet careful at the same time to give himself the air of having been overpowered, in case Artaxerxes should prove victorious."—*Grote*, ix. p. 28.

δὲ ταῦτα ἐπεὶ συνεγένοντο ἀλλήλοις, Σύνενσεις μὲν ἔδωκε Κύρῳ χρήματα πολλὰ εἰς τὴν στρατιάν, Κύρος δὲ ἐκείνῳ δῶρα ἃ νομίζεται παρὰ βασιλεῖ τιμία, ἵππον χρυσοχάλινον καὶ στρεπτὸν χρυσοῦν καὶ ψέλλια καὶ ἀκινάκην χρυσοῦν καὶ στολὴν Περσικὴν, καὶ τὴν χώραν μηκέτι ἀφαρπάζεσθαι τὰ δὲ ἠρπασμένα ἀνδράποδα, ἣν που ἐντυγχάνωσιν, ἀπολαμβάνειν.

III. Ἐνταῦθα ἔμεινε Κύρος καὶ ἡ στρατιὰ ἡμέρας εἴκοσιν· οἱ γὰρ στρατιῶται οὐκ ἔφασαν ἰέναι τοῦ πρόσω. ὑπώπτευν γὰρ ἦδη ἐπὶ βασιλέα ἰέναι μισθωθῆναι δὲ οὐκ ἐπὶ τούτῳ ἔφασαν. πρῶτος δὲ Κλέαρχος τοὺς αὐτοῦ στρατιώτας ἐβιάζετο ἰέναι· οἱ δὲ αὐτόν τε ἔβαλλον καὶ τὰ ὑποζύγια τὰ ἐκείνου, ἐπεὶ ἤρξατο προῖέναι. 2. Κλέαρχος δὲ τότε μὲν μικρὸν ἐξέφυγε τὸ μὴ καταπετρωθῆναι, ὕστερον δ' ἐπεὶ ἔγνω ὅτι οὐ δυνήσεται βιάσασθαι, συνήγαγεν ἐκκλησίαν τῶν αὐτοῦ στρατιωτῶν. καὶ πρῶτον μὲν ἐδάκρυε πολὺν χρόνον ἑστώς· οἱ δὲ ὀρώντες ἐθαύμαζον καὶ ἐσιώπων· εἶτα δὲ ἔλεξε τοιαύδε.

Clarchus explains to the soldiers that Cyrus had protected and aided him when an exile; that when invited to join the expedition gratitude had induced him to consent; but that since the troops were disinclined to proceed, he

δῶρα. cf. I. 5. 8. and I. 8. 29.

III. 1. οὐκ ἔφασαν = *negabant*.

τοῦ πρόσω = *longius*, any further.

2. μικρὸν . . . καταπετρωθῆναι, *narrowly escaped being stoned to death*: cf. the Latin phrase, *paulum adfuit quin . . .*

ἔγνω, act. aor. 2; root γνω., imp. pres. γινώσκω, aor. 2 ἔγνω, fut. γνώσμαι, p. perf. ἔγνωκα, perf. pass. ἔγνωσμαι, aor. 1 ἐγνώσθην.

would remain with them, at the risk of incurring the charge of ingratitude. The soldiers applaud his resolution, and more than 2000 men abandoned their leaders, Xenias and Pasion, and placed themselves under the command of Clearchus. Cyrus on hearing this sent for him. He refused to obey the summons, but privately sent word that he would arrange every thing satisfactorily. Having again assembled the soldiers, he pointed out the danger of their position, and urged them at once to consult for their future safety. A speaker, previously instructed by Clearchus, recommends them to return home. Clearchus in reply artfully exposes the dangerous character of the proposition, and suggests that a deputation should be sent to Cyrus to ascertain the nature of the service on which they were to be employed; that if this service were satisfactory, they should proceed cheerfully; if otherwise, part on friendly terms.

20. ἔδοξε ταῦτα, καὶ ἄνδρας ἐλόμενοι σὺν Κλε-
 ἀρχῷ πέμπουσιν, οἱ ἠρώτων Κύρον τὰ δόξαντα τῇ
 στρατιᾷ. ὁ δ' ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι ἀκούει Ἀβροκόμαν
 ἐχθρὸν ἄνδρα ἐπὶ τῷ Εὐφράτῃ ποταμῷ εἶναι,
 ἀπέχοντα δώδεκα σταθμούς· πρὸς τοῦτον οὖν ἔφη
 βούλεσθαι ἐλθεῖν· κἂν μὲν ἦ ἐκεῖ, τὴν δίκην ἔφη
 χρῆζειν ἐπιθεῖναι αὐτῷ, ἣν δὲ φεύγη, ἡμεῖς ἐκεῖ
 πρὸς ταῦτα βουλευσόμεθα. 21. ἀκούσαντες δὲ
 ταῦτα οἱ αἰρετοὶ ἀγγέλλουσι τοῖς στρατιώταις·
 τοῖς δὲ ὑποψία μὲν ἦν ὅτι ἄγει πρὸς βασιλέα,
 ὁμως δὲ ἐδόκει ἔπεισθαι. προσαιτοῦσι δὲ μισθόν·

20. ἐλόμενοι, part. reflex. aor. 2; root ἔλ., used only in aor. 2;
 the other tenses are supplied from root αἶρε.

τὴν δίκην ἐπιθεῖναι, to punish.

21. ἔπεισθαι, root ἐπ. or σεπ., imp. pres. ἔπομαι, past εἰπόμην,
 fut. ἔψομαι, aor. 2 ἐσπόμην.

ὁ δὲ Κύρος ὑπισχνεῖται ἡμιόλιον πᾶσι δώσειν οὐ πρότερον ἔφερον, ἀντὶ δαρεικοῦ τρία ἡμιδραρικὰ τοῦ μηνὸς τῷ στρατιώτῃ· ὅτι δὲ ἐπὶ βασιλέα ἄγοι οὐδὲ ἐνταῦθα ἤκουσεν οὐδεὶς ἔν γε τῷ φανερωῷ.

IV. Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς δύο παρασάγγας δέκα ἐπὶ τὸν Ψάρον ποταμόν, οὗ ἦν τὸ εὖρος τρία πλέθρα. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμὸν ἕνα παρασάγγας πέντε ἐπὶ τὸν Πύραμον ποταμόν, οὗ τὸ εὖρος στάδιον. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς δύο παρασάγγας πεντεκαίδεκα εἰς Ἰσσοὺς, τῆς Κιλικίας ἐσχάτην πόλιν ἐπὶ τῇ θαλάττῃ οἰκουμένην, μεγάλην καὶ εὐδαίμονα. 2. ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν ἡμέρας τρεῖς· καὶ Κύρῳ παρήσαν αἱ ἐκ Πελοποννήσου νῆες τριάκοντα καὶ πέντε, καὶ ἐπ' αὐταῖς ναύαρχος Πυθαγόρας Λακεδαιμόνιος. ἠγγέτο δ' αὐτῶν Ταμὸς Αἰγύπτιος ἐξ Ἐφέσου, ἔχων ναῦς ἐτέρας Κύρου πέντε καὶ εἴκοσιν, αἷς ἐπολιόρκει Μίλητον, ὅτε Τισσαφέρνει φίλη ἦν, καὶ συνεπολέμει Κύρῳ πρὸς αὐτόν. 3. παρῆν δὲ καὶ

ἡμιόλιον οὐ, lit. *the whole and half of what, half as much again as.*

τοῦ μηνός, *per month.*

γε, *at least.*

IV. 2. αἱ ἐκ Πελοποννήσου νῆες. Xenophon (Hellen. iii. 1) informs us that Cyrus sent to Sparta request aid in return or the assistance he had given to the Peloponnesians in their war against the Athenians. The Ephori, thinking his request a just one, gave orders to their admiral to assist Cyrus, should he require it. The admiral zealously seconded him, and uniting his naval force with that of Cyrus, sailed to Cilicia, and defeated the efforts of Syennesis to oppose the advance of the army.

Χειρίσοφος ὁ Λακεδαιμόνιος ἐπὶ τῶν νεῶν, μετά-
 πεμπτος ὑπὸ Κύρου, ἑπτακοσίους ἔχων ὀπλίτας
 ὧν ἐστρατήγει παρὰ Κύρῳ. αἱ δὲ νῆες ὥρμον
 παρὰ τὴν Κύρου σκηνήν. ἐνταῦθα καὶ οἱ παρ'
 Ἀβροκόμα μισθοφόροι Ἕλληνες ἀποστάντες ἦλθον
 παρὰ Κύρον τετρακόσιοι ὀπλίται, καὶ συνεστρα-
 τεύοντο ἐπὶ βασιλέα. 4. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθ-
 μὸν ἓνα παρασάγγας πέντε ἐπὶ πύλας τῆς Κιλικίας
 καὶ τῆς Συρίας. ἦσαν δὲ ταῦτα δύο τείχη, καὶ τὸ
 μὲν ἔσωθεν πρὸ τῆς Κιλικίας Συέννεσις εἶχε καὶ
 Κιλικῶν φυλακή, τὸ δὲ ἔξω τὸ πρὸ τῆς Συρίας
 βασιλέως ἐλέγετο φυλακὴ φυλάττειν. διὰ μέσου
 δὲ ῥεῖ τούτων ποταμὸς Κάρσος ὄνομα, εὖρος πλέθ-
 ρου. ἅπαν δὲ τὸ μέσον τῶν τευχῶν ἦσαν στάδιοι
 τρεῖς· καὶ παρελθεῖν οὐκ ἦν βία· ἦν γὰρ ἡ πέρ-
 οδος στενὴ καὶ τὰ τείχη εἰς τὴν θάλατταν καθή-
 κοντα, ὑπερθεῖν δ' ἦσαν πέτραι ἡλίβατοι· ἐπὶ δὲ

3. ὥρμον· see ὄρμη.

4. καὶ τὰ τείχη. "At the point here indicated, the Jávur Tâgh, or Amanus, approaches so closely to the sea as to leave but a narrow space between mountain and water for the passage of an army. The Merkez-sú (Κάρσος) divides into two branches, one of which goes directly to the sea; the other, after losing itself in a small marsh, issues in a goodly stream into the gulf at a distance of about a mile and a half north of the direct branch. This first, or northerly, stream is passed by a bridge, and at a little distance further south are ruins on the shore of the termination of a wall or gate. At a distance of about 600 yards are the more perfect ruins of a wall, which may be traced amid a dense shrubbery, from the mountains down to the sea-shore, where it terminates in a round tower."—*Ainsworth*, pp. 58, 59.

τοῖς τείχεσιν ἀμφοτέροις ἐφειστήκεσαν πύλαι. 5. ταύτης ἕνεκα τῆς παρόδου Κύρος τὰς ναῦς μετεπέμψατο, ὅπως ὀπλίτας ἀποβιβάσειεν εἰσω καὶ ἔξω τῶν πυλῶν, καὶ βιασάμενοι τοὺς πολεμίους παρέλθοιεν, εἰ φυλάττοιεν ἐπὶ ταῖς Συρίαις πύλαις, ὅπερ ᾤετο ποιήσειν ὁ Κύρος τὸν Ἀβροκόμαν ἔχοντα πολὺ στρατεύμα. Ἀβροκόμας δὲ οὐ τοῦτ' ἐποίησεν, ἀλλ' ἐπεὶ ἤκουσε Κύρον ἐν Κιλικίᾳ ὄντα, ἀναστρέψας ἐκ Φοινίκης παρὰ βασιλέα ἀπήλαυεν, ἔχων, ὡς ἐλέγετο, τριάκοντα μυριάδας στρατιᾶς.

6. Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει διὰ Συρίας σταθμὸν ἓνα παρασάγγας πέντε εἰς Μυριάνδρον, πόλιν οἰκουμένην ὑπὸ Φοινίκων ἐπὶ τῇ θαλάττῃ ἐμπόριον δ' ἦν τὸ χωρίον καὶ ὄρμον αὐτόθι ὀλκάδες πολλαί. 7. ἐνταῦθ' ἔμειναν ἡμέρας ἑπτὰ· καὶ Ξενίας ὁ Ἄρκας στρατηγὸς καὶ Πασίων ὁ Μεγαρεὺς ἐμβάντες εἰς πλοῖον, καὶ τὰ πλείστου ἄξια ἐνθήμενοι ἀπέπλευσαν, ὡς μὲν τοῖς πλείστοις ἐδόκουν φιλοτιμηθέντες, ὅτι τοὺς στρατιώτας αὐτῶν τοὺς παρὰ Κλέαρχον ἀπελθόντας, ὡς ἀπρόντας εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα πάλιν καὶ οὐ πρὸς βασιλέα, εἶα Κύρος τὸν Κλέαρχον ἔχειν. ἐπεὶ δ' ἦσαν ἀφανεῖς, διήλθε λόγος ὅτι διώκει αὐτοὺς Κύρος τριήρεσι· καὶ οἱ μὲν εὐχοντο ὡς δολίους ὄντας αὐτοὺς ληφθῆναι,

7. δτι, &c.: see English abstract, I. 3. 3.

εἶα, act. ind. past imp.: see εἶω.

εὐχοντο . . . αὐτοὺς ληφθῆναι, wished they might be caught; ληφθῆναι, aor. 1. In Latin the future would have been used: the futurity is implied in εὐχοντο.

οἱ δ' ὄκτειρον εἰ ἀλώσονται. 8. Κύρος δὲ συγκαλέσας τοὺς στρατηγούς εἶπεν Ἀπολελοίπασιν ἡμᾶς Ξενίας καὶ Πασίων· ἀλλ' εὖ γε μέντοι ἐπιστάσθωσαν ὅτι οὔτε ἀποδεδράκασιν, οἶδα γὰρ ὅπη οἴχονται. οὔτε ἀποπεφεύγασιν, ἔχω γὰρ τριήρεις ὥστε ἐλεῖν τὸ ἐκείνων πλοῖον· ἀλλὰ μὰ τοὺς θεοὺς οὐκ ἔγωγε αὐτοὺς διώξω, οὐδ' ἔρεϊ οὐδεὶς ὡς ἐγὼ ἕως μὲν ἂν παρῆ τις χρώμαι, ἐπειδὴν δὲ ἀπιέναι βούληται, συλλαβὸν καὶ αὐτοὺς κακῶς ποιῶ καὶ τὰ χρήματα ἀποσυλῶ. ἀλλὰ ἰόντων, εἰδότες ὅτι κακίους εἰσὶ περὶ ἡμᾶς ἢ ἡμεῖς περὶ ἐκείνους. καίτοι ἔχω γε αὐτῶν καὶ τέκνα καὶ γυναῖκας ἐν Τράλλεσι φρουρούμενα· ἀλλ' οὐδὲ τούτων στερησονται, ἀλλ' ἀπολήψονται τῆς πρόσθεν ἕνεκα περὶ ἐμὲ ἀρετῆς. 9. καὶ ὁ μὲν ταῦτα εἶπεν· οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες, εἶ τις καὶ ἀθυμότερος ἦν πρὸς τὴν

ἀλώσονται, pass. subj. fut.; root ἄλ., pres. ἀλίσκομαι, aor. 2 ἐάλων and ἤλων, fut. ἀλώσομαι, pres. perf. ἐάλωκα and ἤλωκα. Observe, all the above have a passive meaning; the active forms are supplied from αἶρε.

8. ἀποδεδράκασιν, ἀποπεφεύγασιν. ἀποδιδράσκω, I run away without one's knowledge; ἀποφεύγω, I flee away beyond one's power: imp. pres. ἀποδιδράσκω, fut. ἀποδράσομαι, aor. 2 ἀπέδραν, pres. perf. ἀποδέδρακα.

οἶδα, pres. perf. with imperfect meaning, from root ἰδ. The only tenses used in the *Anabasis* are, pres. perf. οἶδα, (οἶστα, οἶδε, οἶδαμεν and ἴσμεν, ἴσθε, ἴσασι; imper. ἴσθι, subj. εἶδω, past εἶδείην, inf. εἶδέναι, part. εἰδώς,) past perf. ἤδη, fut. εἴσομαι.

μά is used chiefly in negative oaths, ἢ in affirmative: see I. 7. 9. ἐρεῖ: see I. 2. 5.

ἰόντων, imperative 3 plural: see εἶμι.

κακίους = κακίους or κακίους.

ἀνάβασιν, ἀκούοντες τὴν Κύρου ἀρετὴν ἥδιον καὶ προθυμότερον συνεπορεύοντο.

Μετὰ ταῦτα Κύρος ἐξελαύνει σταθμούς τέτταρας παρασάγγας εἴκοσιν ἐπὶ τὸν Χάλον ποταμόν, ὄντα τὸ εὖρος πλέθρου, πλήρη δ' ἰχθύων μεγάλων καὶ πραέων οὓς οἱ Σύροι θεοὺς ἐνόμιζον καὶ ἀδικεῖν οὐκ εἶων, οὐδὲ τὰς περιστεράς. αἱ δὲ κῶμαι ἐν αἷς ἐσκήνουν Παρυσάτιδος ἦσαν εἰς ζώνην δεδομέναι. 10. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμούς πέντε παρασάγγας τριάκοντα ἐπὶ τὰς πηγὰς τοῦ Δάρδητος ποταμοῦ, οὗ τὸ εὖρος πλέθρου. ἐνταῦθα ἦσαν τὰ Βελέσους βασιλεία τοῦ Συρίας ἄρξαντος, καὶ παράδεισος πάνυ μέγας καὶ καλός, ἔχων πάντα ὅσα ὄραι φύουσι. Κύρος δ' αὐτὸν ἐξέκοψε καὶ τὰ βασιλεία κατέκαυσεν.

11. Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμούς τρεῖς παρασάγγας πεντεκαίδεκα ἐπὶ τὸν Εὐφράτην ποταμόν, ὄντα τὸ εὖρος τεττάρων σταδίων· καὶ πόλις αὐτόθι ᾠκεῖτο μεγάλη καὶ εὐδαίμων Θάφρακος ὀνόματι. ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν ἡμέρας πέντε· καὶ Κύρος μεταπεμφάμενος τοὺς στρατηγούς τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἔλεγεν

9. ἰχθύων. "Even in the present day the Chalib abounds in fish. The principal tributary of the Chalib in the mountains is called Balóklú-sú or Fish river. The Syrians and Mesopotamians do not, however, refuse to partake of the same fish when taken from the Chalib in the present day, as I have seen them sold in the markets of Aleppo and Aintáb."—*Ainsworth*, pp. 63-65.

εἰς ζώνην, for a girdle, for girdle-money; equivalent to our English phrase, for pin-money.

10. κατέκαυσεν see κατακαίω.

ὅτι ἡ ὁδὸς ἔσοιτο πρὸς βασιλέα μέγαν εἰς Βαβυλῶνα· καὶ κελεύει αὐτοὺς λέγειν ταῦτα τοῖς στρατιώταις καὶ ἀναπεῖθειν ἔπεσθαι. 12. οἱ δὲ ποιήσαντες ἐκκλησίαν ἀπήγγελλον ταῦτα· οἱ δὲ στρατιώται ἐχαλέπαινον τοῖς στρατηγοῖς, καὶ ἔφασαν αὐτοὺς πάλαι ταῦτ' εἰδότας κρύπτειν, καὶ οὐκ ἔφασαν ἰέναι, ἐὰν μὴ τις αὐτοῖς χρήματα διδῶ, ὥσπερ καὶ τοῖς προτέροις μετὰ Κύρου ἀναβᾶσι παρὰ τὸν πατέρα τοῦ Κύρου, καὶ ταῦτα οὐκ ἐπὶ μάχην ἰόντων, ἀλλὰ καλοῦντος τοῦ πατρὸς Κύρον. 13. ταῦτα οἱ στρατηγοὶ Κύρῳ ἀπήγγελλον· ὁ δ' ὑπέσχετο ἀνδρὶ ἐκάστῳ δώσειν πέντε ἀργυρίου μνᾶς, ἐπὰν εἰς Βαβυλῶνα ἤκωσι, καὶ τὸν μισθὸν ἐντελῆ μέχρι ἂν καταστήσῃ τοὺς Ἕλληνας εἰς Ἴωνίαν πάλιν. τὸ μὲν δὴ πολὺ τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ οὕτως ἐπέισθη.

Μένων δὲ πρὶν δῆλον εἶναι τί ποιήσουσιν οἱ ἄλλοι στρατιῶται, πότερον ἔψονται Κύρῳ ἢ οὐ, συνέλεξε τὸ αὐτοῦ στράτευμα χωρὶς τῶν ἄλλων καὶ ἔλεξε τάδε.

He advises his men to cross the river before the rest of the army announce their determination. If it is decided to advance, they will win the approbation and confidence of Cyrus by their zeal; if to recede, they will all retire together.

12. τοῖς προτέροις· see I. 1. 2.

ἰόντων, part. gen. plur.; not the imperative, as in § 8.

13. μνᾶς. The following are the principal names of Attic money: δβολός=1½·5d.; δραχμή=6 obols=9½d.; μνᾶ=100 drachms=4l. 1s. 3d.; τάλαντον=60 minae=243l. 15s.

τὸ πολὺ, lit. *the much*=*the greater part*.

16. ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα ἐπέιθοντο καὶ διέβησαν πρὶν τοὺς ἄλλους ἀποκρίνασθαι. Κῦρος δ' ἐπεὶ ἤσθητο διαβεβηκότας, ἤσθη τε καὶ τῷ στρατεύματι πέμψας Γλοῦν εἶπεν, Ἐγὼ μὲν, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἤδη ὑμᾶς ἐπαινῶ· ὅπως δὲ καὶ ὑμεῖς ἐμὲ ἐπαινέσετε ἐμοὶ μελήσει, ἢ μηκέτι με Κῦρον νομίζετε. 17. οἱ μὲν δὴ στρατιῶται ἐν ἐλπίσι μεγάλαις ὄντες εὐχοντο αὐτὸν εὐτυχεῖν, Μένωνι δὲ καὶ δῶρα ἐλέγετο πέμψαι μεγαλοπρεπῶς. ταῦτα δὲ ποιήσας διέβαινε· συνείπετο δὲ καὶ τὸ ἄλλο στρατεύμα αὐτῷ ἅπαν. καὶ τῶν διαβαινόντων τὸν ποταμὸν οὐδεὶς ἐβρέχθη ἀνωτέρω τῶν μασθῶν ὑπὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ. 18. οἱ δὲ Θαψακηνοὶ ἔλεγον ὅτι οὐ πάποθ' οὗτος ὁ ποταμὸς διαβατὸς γένοιτο πεζῇ, εἰ μὴ τότε, ἀλλὰ πλοίοις, ἃ τότε Ἄβροκόμας προῖαν κατέκαυσεν, ἵνα μὴ Κῦρος διαβῇ. ἐδόκει δὲ θεῖον εἶναι καὶ σαφῶς ὑποχωρῆσαι τὸν ποταμὸν Κῦρῳ ὡς βασιλεύσονται. 19. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει διὰ τῆς Συρίας σταθμοὺς ἐννέα παρασάγγας πεντήκοντα· καὶ ἀφικνοῦνται πρὸς τὸν Ἀράξην ποταμὸν. ἐνταῦθα ἦσαν κῶμαι πολλαὶ μεσταὶ σίτου καὶ οἴνου. ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν ἡμέρας τρεῖς καὶ ἐπεσιτίσαντο.

V. Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει διὰ τῆς Ἀραβίας τὸν Εὐφράτην ποταμὸν ἐν δεξιᾷ ἔχων σταθμοὺς ἐρή-

17. εὐτυχεῖν. cf. ληθῆναι, § 7.

V. 1. "Having personally examined the country south of the Khábár, I can vouch to the customary accuracy of the historian: only to a person of a hypercritical turn of mind, the expression, 'as level as the sea,' would appear a license; for the country, although very level and monotonous, still undulates consider-

μους πέντε παρασάγγας τριάκοντα καὶ πέντε. ἐν τούτῳ δὲ τῷ τόπῳ ἦν μὲν ἡ γῆ πεδῖον ἅπαν ὁμαλὸν ὥσπερ θάλαττα, ἀψινθίου δὲ πλήρες· εἰ δέ τι καὶ ἄλλο ἐνῆν ὕλης ἢ καλάμου, ἅπαντα ἦσαν εὐώδη ὥσπερ ἀρώματα· δένδρον δ' οὐδὲν ἐνῆν. 2. θηρία δὲ παντοῖα, πλείστοι μὲν ὄνοι ἄγριοι, πολλοὶ δὲ στρουθοὶ οἱ μεγάλοι· ἐνῆσαν δὲ καὶ ὠτίδες καὶ δορκάδες· ταῦτα δὲ τὰ θηρία οἱ ἵππεῖς ἐνίοτε ἐδίωκον. καὶ οἱ μὲν ὄνοι, ἐπεὶ τις διώκοι, προδραμόντες ἔστασαν· πολὺ γὰρ τῶν ἵππων ἔτρεχον θᾶπτον· καὶ πάλιν ἐπεὶ πλησιάζουεν οἱ ἵπποι ταῦτὸν ἐποιοῦν, καὶ οὐκ ἦν λαβεῖν, εἰ μὴ διαστάντες οἱ ἵππεῖς θηρῶεν διαδεχόμενοι τοῖς ἵπποις. τὰ δὲ κρέα τῶν ἀλισκομένων ἦν παραπλήσια τοῖς

ably, and differs in this respect very much from the truly level, alluvial plains of Babylonia."—*Ainsworth*, p. 76.

2. ὄνος ἄγριος, "an animal that is now extremely rare;" *στρουθὸς ὁ μέγας*, "now also become exceedingly rare, and almost entirely driven into the southern parts of Arabia;" *ὠτίς*, "both the large and small species are frequent on the same plains, and also in Asia Minor;" *δορκάς*, "it still abounds on the plains of Mesopotamia."—*Ainsworth*, p. 77.

προδραμόντες, part. aor. 2; aor. 2 *ἔδραμον*, fut. *δραμοῦμαι*, pres. pref. *δεδράμηκα*; the imperfect forms are supplied from *τρεχ.*: see *προτρέχω*.

ἔστασαν, past perf.: see I. 1. 3.

ταῦτόν = τὸ αὐτόν. Observe, when αὐτό is compounded it takes *ν* in the neuter singular.

οὐκ ἦν λαβεῖν, lit. *there was no taking* = *it was not possible to take*; εἶναι with an infinitive = *posse*.

διαδεχόμενοι, *relieving each other*.

κρέα, plural of *κρέας*. Observe that the c.f. of this word is *κρεασ.*, not *κρεατ.*

ἐλαφείοις, ἀπαλώτερα δέ. 3. στρουθὸν δὲ οὐδεὶς ἔλαβεν· οἱ δὲ διώξαντες τῶν ἰππέων ταχὺ ἐπαύοντο· πολὺ γὰρ ἀπέπτα φεύγουσα, τοῖς μὲν ποσὶ δρόμῳ, ταῖς δὲ πτέρυξιν αἴρουσα, ὥσπερ ἰστίῳ χρωμένη. τὰς δὲ ὠτίδας ἂν τις ταχὺ ἀνιστῆ, ἔστι λαμβάνειν· πέτονται γὰρ βραχὺ ὥσπερ πέρδικες καὶ ταχὺ ἀπαγορεύουσι. τὰ δὲ κρέα αὐτῶν ἥδιστα ἦν.

4. Πορευόμενοι δὲ διὰ ταύτης τῆς χώρας ἀφικνοῦνται ἐπὶ τὸν Μάσκαν ποταμὸν, τὸ εὖρος πλεθριαῖον. ἐνταῦθα ἦν πόλις ἐρήμη, μεγάλη, ὄνομα δ' αὐτῇ Κορσωτή· περιεῖρετο δ' αὐτὴ ὑπὸ τοῦ Μάσκα κύκλῳ. ἐνταῦθ' ἔμειναν ἡμέρας τρεῖς καὶ ἐπεσιτίσαντο. 5. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς ἐρήμους τρεῖς καὶ δέκα, παρασάγγας ἐνενήκοντα τὸν Εὐφράτην ποταμὸν ἐν δεξιᾷ ἔχων, καὶ ἀφικνεῖται ἐπὶ Πύλας. ἐν τούτοις τοῖς σταθμοῖς πολλὰ τῶν ὑποζυγίων ἀπώλετο ὑπὸ λιμοῦ· οὐ γὰρ ἦν χόρτος οὐδὲ ἄλλο οὐδὲν δένδρον, ἀλλὰ ψιλὴ ἦν ἅπασα ἡ χώρα· οἱ δὲ ἐνοικούντες ὄνους ἀλέτας παρὰ τὸν ποταμὸν ὀρύττοντες καὶ ποιούντες εἰς Βαβυλώνα ἦγον καὶ ἐπώλουν, καὶ ἀνταγοράζοντες σίτον ἕζων. 6. τὸ δὲ στράτευμα ὁ σίτος ἐπέλιπε,

3. ἀπέπτα, 2 aor. 3 sing.; pres. ἀποπέτομαι, fut. πτήσομαι, aor. ἐπέταμην and ἔπτην. Doric form, ἔπταν.

ποσὶ and πτέρυξιν are both governed by χρωμένη.

4. τοῦ Μάσκα. Observe that the Attics sometimes form the genitive of proper names in α.

5. ὄνος, besides meaning *ass*, means also a machine for turning, as a distaff, windlass, crane; hence ὄνος ἀλέτης, a mill-stone.

καὶ πρίασθαι οὐκ ἦν εἰ μὴ ἐν τῇ Λυδία ἀγορᾷ ἐν τῷ Κύρου βαρβαρικῷ, τὴν καπίθην ἀλεύρων ἢ ἀλφίτων τεττάρων σίγλων. ὁ δὲ σίγλος δύναται ἑπτὰ ὀβολοὺς καὶ ἡμιοβόλιον Ἀττικῶς· ἡ δὲ καπίθη δύο χοίνικας Ἀττικῶς ἐχώρει. κρέα οὖν ἐσθιόντες οἱ στρατιῶται διεγίγνοντο. 7. ἦν δὲ τούτων τῶν σταθμῶν οὗς πάνυ μακροὺς ἤλαυνεν, ὅποτε ἡ πρὸς ὕδωρ βούλοιτο διατελέσαι ἢ πρὸς χιλόν. καὶ δὴ ποτε στενοχωρίας καὶ πηλοῦ φανέντος ταῖς ἀμάξαις δυσπορεύτου, ἐπέστη ὁ Κύρος σὺν τοῖς περὶ αὐτὸν ἀρίστοις καὶ εὐδαιμονεστάτοις, καὶ ἔταξε Γλοῦν καὶ Πίγρητα λαβόντας τοῦ βαρβαρικοῦ στρατοῦ συνεκβιβάζειν τὰς ἀμάξας. 8. ἐπεὶ δ' ἐδόκουν αὐτῷ σχολαίως ποιεῖν, ὥσπερ ὀργῇ ἐκέλευσε τοὺς περὶ αὐτὸν Πέρσας τοὺς κρατίστους συνεπισπεῦσαι τὰς ἀμάξας. ἔνθα δὴ μέρος τι τῆς εὐταξίας ἦν θεάσασθαι. ῥίψαντες γὰρ τοὺς πορφυροῦς κάνδυς ὅπου ἔτυχεν ἕκαστος

6. πρίασθαι: root πρια., used only in the aor.; for other tenses the root ἄνε. is used.

σίγλων. Observe that "price" in Greek is expressed by the genitive.

χοῖνιξ, a measure, said by some authors to contain two pints, by others a pint and a half.

ἐσθιόντες: pra. ἐσθίω, fut. ἔδομαι, perf. ἐδήδοκα, aor. 2 ἔφαγον.

7. ἦν δέ, &c., and there were some of these marches which, &c.; ἔστιν ὅς = est qui = some one; ἔστιν οἱ = sunt qui = some; ἔσθ' ὅτε, there are times when = nonnunquam = sometimes (ἔστιν in this idiom is not always declined). Compare the French idiom, *il y a*.

τοῦ βαρβαρικοῦ = part of the barbarian.

ἔστηκώς, ἴεντο ὥσπερ ἂν δράμοι τις περὶ νίκης καὶ μάλα κατὰ πρανοῦς γηλόφου ἔχοντες τούτους τε τοὺς πολυτελεῖς χιτῶνας καὶ τὰς ποικίλας ἀναξυρίδας, ἔνιοι δὲ καὶ στρεπτοὺς περὶ τοῖς τραχήλοις καὶ ψέλλια περὶ ταῖς χερσίν· εὐθύς δὲ σὺν τούτοις εἰσπηδήσαντες εἰς τὸν πηλὸν θάπτον ἢ ὡς τις ἂν ᾤετο μετεώρους ἐξεκόμισαν τὰς ἀμάξας. 9. τὸ δὲ σύμπαν δῆλος ἦν Κῦρος σπεύδων πᾶσαν τὴν ὁδὸν καὶ οὐ διατρίβων ὅπου μὴ ἐπισιτισμοῦ ἔνεκα ἢ τινος ἄλλου ἀναγκαίου ἐκαθέζετο, νομίζων, ὅσφ μὲν θάπτον ἔλθοι, τοσοῦτφ ἀπαρασκευαστοτέρφ βασιλεῖ μάχεσθαι, ὅσφ δὲ σχολαιότερον, τοσοῦτφ πλέον συναγείρεσθαι βασιλεῖ στρατευμα. καὶ συνιδεῖν δ' ἦν τῷ προσέχοντι τὸν νοῦν ἢ βασιλέως ἀρχὴ πλήθει μὲν χώρας καὶ ἀνθρώπων ἰσχυρὰ οὔσα, τοῖς δὲ μήκεσι τῶν ὁδῶν καὶ τῷ διεσπᾶσθαι τὰς δυνάμεις ἀσθενής, εἴ τις διὰ ταχέων τὸν πόλεμον ἐποιεῖτο.

10. πέραν δὲ τοῦ Εὐφράτου ποταμοῦ κατὰ τοὺς ἐρήμους σταθμοὺς ἦν πόλις εὐδαίμων καὶ μεγάλη, ὄνομα δὲ Χαρμάνδη· ἐκ ταύτης οἱ στρατιῶται

8. ἴεντο, midd. past imp. 3 plur., act. pres. imp. ἴημι, fut. ἴσω, aor. 1 ἴκα.

9. ὅπου μὴ ἐκαθέζετο, lit. (in any place) *where he did not halt* = *except where he halted*; root ἐδ., pres. imp. καθέζομαι, fut. καθέδομαι, pres. perf. κάθημαι.

ἢ βασιλέως ἀρχὴ . . . οὔσα, *that the king's dominions were*: the accusative might have been expected here as the object of *συνιδεῖν*, whereas *συνιδ.* is used intransitively, and the sentence from *ἢ βασιλέως* to *ἐποιεῖτο* is the subject of *ἦν*.

διὰ ταχέων, *by means of quick operations, speedily.*

ἠγόραζον τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, σχεδίαις διαβαίνοντες ὄδε. διφθέρας ἄς εἶχον στεγάσματα ἐπίμπλασαν χόρτου κούφου, εἶτα συνήγον καὶ συνέσπων, ὡς μὴ ἄπτεσθαι τῆς κάρφης τὸ ὕδωρ· ἐπὶ τούτων διέβαινον καὶ ἐλάμβανον τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, οἶνόν τε ἐκ τῆς βαλάνου πεποιημένον τῆς ἀπὸ τοῦ φοίνικος καὶ σῖτον μελίνης· τοῦτο γὰρ ἦν ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ πλεῖστον.

Clearchus having struck one of Menon's soldiers during a quarrel, his comrades resented it, and assaulted the general as he was riding through the camp. Clearchus escaped to his own quarter, ordered his men to arms, and proceeded to Menon's division to revenge the insult. Menon and his troops hastily prepared to receive him. At this juncture Proxenus, who happened to be near, threw himself with a detachment of hoplites between them, and begged Clearchus to desist. The latter, indignant at the treatment he had received, angrily told him to stand aside. Cyrus hearing what had occurred, rode between them with his attendants, and succeeded in pacifying Clearchus.

VI. Ἐντεῦθεν προϊόντων ἐφαίνετο ἵχνια ἵππων καὶ κόπρος· εἰκάζετο δ' εἶναι ὁ στίβος ὡς δισχιδίων ἵππων. οὗτοι προϊόντες ἔκαιον καὶ χιλὸν καὶ εἴ τι ἄλλο χρήσιμον ἦν. Ὀρόντης δὲ Πέρσης ἀνὴρ γένει τε προσήκων βασιλεῖ καὶ τὰ πολέμια λεγόμενος ἐν τοῖς ἀρίστοις Περσῶν ἐπιβουλεύει Κύρῳ καὶ πρόσθεν πολεμήσας, καταλλαγείς δέ.

10. ἐπίμπλασαν, past imp. : see πῖμπλημι.

συνέσπων, past imp. : see συσπάω.

VI. 1. προϊόντων, genitive absolute.

καταλλαγείς see I. 2. 1.

2. οὗτος Κύρῳ εἶπεν, εἰ αὐτῷ δοίῃ ἰππέας χιλίους, ὅτι τοὺς προκατακαίοντας ἰππέας ἢ κατακάνοι ἂν ἐνεδρεύσας ἢ ζῶντας πολλοὺς αὐτῶν ἔλοι καὶ κωλύσειε τοῦ καίειν ἐπιόντας, καὶ ποιήσειεν ὥστε μήποτε δύνασθαι αὐτοὺς ἰδόντας τὸ Κύρου στρατεύμα βασιλεῖ διαγγεῖλαι. τῷ δὲ Κύρῳ ἀκούσαντι ταῦτα ἐδόκει ὠφέλιμα εἶναι, καὶ ἐκέλευσεν αὐτὸν λαμβάνειν μέρος παρ' ἐκάστου τῶν ἡγεμόνων.

3. ὁ δ' Ὀρόντης νομίσας ἐτοιμοὺς εἶναι αὐτῷ τοὺς ἰππέας γράφει ἐπιστολὴν παρὰ βασιλέα ὅτι ἤξει ἔχων ἰππέας ὡς ἂν δύνηται πλείστους· ἀλλὰ φράσαι τοῖς ἑαυτοῦ ἰππεύσιν ἐκέλευεν ὡς φίλιον αὐτὸν ὑποδέχεσθαι. ἐνὴν δὲ ἐν τῇ ἐπιστολῇ καὶ τῆς πρόσθεν φιλίας ὑπομνήματα καὶ πίστewς. ταύτην τὴν ἐπιστολὴν δίδωσι πιστῷ ἀνδρὶ, ὡς φέτο· ὁ δὲ λαβὼν Κύρῳ δίδωσιν.

4. ἀναγνοὺς δὲ αὐτὴν ὁ Κύρος συλλαμβάνει Ὀρόντην, καὶ συγκαλεῖ εἰς τὴν ἑαυτοῦ σκηνὴν Περσῶν τοὺς ἀρίστους τῶν περὶ αὐτὸν ἐπτά, καὶ τοὺς τῶν Ἑλλήνων στρατηγούς ἐκέλευεν ὀπλίτας ἀγαγεῖν, τούτους δὲ θέσθαι τὰ ὄπλα περὶ τὴν αὐτοῦ σκηνὴν. οἱ δὲ ταῦτα ἐποίησαν ἀγαγόντες ὡς τρισχιλίους ὀπλίτας.

5. Κλέαρχον δὲ καὶ εἴσω παρεκάλεσε σύμβουλον, ὅς γε καὶ αὐτῷ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἐδόκει προτιμηθῆναι μάλιστα τῶν Ἑλλήνων. ἐπεὶ δ' ἐξήλθεν, ἐξήγγ-

4. ἀναγνοὺς, part. aor. 2: see ἀναγιγγώσκω. cf. I. 3. 2.

ἀγαγεῖν. see I. 2. 2.

θέσθαι τὰ ὄπλα has three significations in the *Anabasis*, according to the context: 1. to pile arms; 2. to stand to arms; 3. to draw up the hoplites.

γαίλε τοῖς φίλοις τὴν κρίσιν τοῦ Ὀρόντου ὡς ἐγένετο· οὐ γὰρ ἀπόρρητον ἦν.

Cyrus exposes the treacherous conduct of Orontes on several previous occasions, elicits from him an acknowledgment of his guilt, and requests the advice of Clearchus. The general recommends that the traitor should at once be put to death, an opinion unanimously sanctioned by the council. He was forthwith conducted to the tent of Artabates, an attached servant of Cyrus, and was never seen again. How he died, and where he was buried, no one knew.

VII. Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει διὰ τῆς Βαβυλωνίας σταθμούς τρεῖς παρασάγγας δώδεκα. ἐν δὲ τῷ τρίτῳ σταθμῷ Κύρος ἐξέτασιν ποιεῖται τῶν Ἑλλήνων καὶ τῶν βαρβάρων ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ περὶ μέσας νύκτας· ἐδόκει γὰρ εἰς τὴν ἐπιούσαν ἔω ἤξειν βασιλέα σὺν τῷ στρατεύματι μαχομένον· καὶ ἐκέλευε Κλέαρχον μὲν τοῦ δεξιοῦ κέρως ἡγεῖσθαι, Μένωνα δὲ τὸν Θετταλὸν τοῦ εὐωνύμου, αὐτὸς δὲ τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ διέταξε. 2. μετὰ δὲ τὴν ἐξέτασιν ἅμα τῇ ἐπιούσῃ ἡμέρᾳ ἦκοντες αὐτόμολοι παρὰ μεγάλου βασιλέως ἀπήγγελλον Κύρῳ περὶ τῆς βασιλέως στρατιᾶς. Κύρος δὲ συγκαλέσας τοὺς στρατηγούς καὶ λοχαγούς τῶν Ἑλλήνων συνεβουλεύετό τε πῶς ἂν τὴν μάχην ποιοῖτο καὶ αὐτὸς παρήνει θαρρύνων τοιάδε.

Cyrus compliments the Greeks at the expense of his own countrymen, and promises liberal rewards if successful in his enterprise.

9. παρεκελεύοντο δὲ αὐτῷ πάντες ὅσοι περ διε-

λέγοντο μὴ μάχεσθαι, ἀλλ' ὀπισθεν ἑαυτῶν τάττεσθαι. ἐν δὲ τῷ καιρῷ τούτῳ Κλέαρχος ᾧδὲ πῶς ἤρετο τὸν Κύρον Ὁῦει γὰρ σοι μαχεῖσθαι, ᾧ Κύρε, τὸν ἀδελφόν; Νῆ Δί', ἔφη ὁ Κύρος, εἶπερ γε Δαρείου καὶ Παρυσάτιδός ἐστι παῖς, ἐμὸς δὲ ἀδελφός, οὐκ ἀμαχεῖ ταῦτ' ἐγὼ λήψομαι.

10. Ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἐν τῇ ἐξοπλισίᾳ ἀριθμὸς ἐγένετο τῶν μὲν Ἑλλήνων ἀσπίς μυρία καὶ τετρακοσία, πελτασταὶ δὲ δισχίλιοι καὶ πεντακόσιοι, τῶν δὲ μετὰ Κύρου βαρβάρων δέκα μυριάδες, καὶ ἄρματα δρεπανηφόρα ἀμφὶ τὰ εἴκοσι. 11. τῶν δὲ πολεμίων ἐλέγοντο εἶναι ἑκατὸν καὶ εἴκοσι μυριάδες, καὶ ἄρματα δρεπανηφόρα διακόσια. ἄλλοι δὲ ἦσαν ἑξακισχίλιοι ἵππεῖς, ὧν Ἀρταγέρσης ἤρχεν· οὗτοι δ' αὐτὸν πρὸ αὐτοῦ βασιλέως τεταγμένοι ἦσαν. 12. τοῦ δὲ βασιλέως στρατεύματος ἦσαν ἄρχοντες καὶ στρατηγοὶ καὶ ἡγεμόνες τέτταρες, τριάκοντα μυριάδων ἕκαστος, Ἀβροκόμας, Τισσαφέρνης, Γωβρύας, Ἀρβύκης. τούτων δὲ παρεγένοντο ἐν τῇ μάχῃ ἑνενήκοντα μυριάδες, καὶ ἄρματα δρεπανη-

VII. 9. μάχεσθαι, i. e. not in person.

ἤρετο, aor. 2, root ἔρ. The only two tenses from this root are aor. 2 ἤρόμην, fut. ἐρήσομαι: the other tenses are supplied from ἔρωτα.

γάρ is here used to strengthen οἶε, do you really think?

νή. see I. 4. 8.

γε. When the reply to a question is introduced by γε, that reply almost invariably contains an acquiescence in the question with a stronger qualification.

λήψομαι. cf. I. 1. 2.

10. ἀσπίς, lit. a shield: employed here to designate the men who bore the large shield, viz. the hoplites.

φόρα ἑκατὸν καὶ πενήκοντα· Ἀβροκόμας δὲ ὑστέρησε τῆς μάχης ἡμέρας πέντε ἐκ Φοινίκης ἐλαύνων. 13. ταῦτα δὲ ἠγγελλον πρὸς Κῦρον οἱ αὐτομολήσαντες ἐκ τῶν πολεμίων παρὰ μεγάλου βασιλέως πρὸ τῆς μάχης, καὶ μετὰ τὴν μάχην οἱ ὕστερον ἐλήφθησαν τῶν πολεμίων ταῦτα ἠγγελλον.

14. Ἐντεῦθεν δὲ Κῦρος ἐξελαύνει σταθμὸν ἓνα παρασάγγας τρεῖς συντεταγμένῳ τῷ στρατεύματι παντὶ καὶ τῷ Ἑλληνικῷ καὶ τῷ βαρβαρικῷ· ᾠστο γὰρ ταύτῃ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ μαχεῖσθαι βασιλέα· κατὰ γὰρ μέσον τὸν σταθμὸν τοῦτον τάφρος ἦν ὄρυκτὴ βαθεῖα, τὸ μὲν εὖρος ὄργυιαι πέντε, τὸ δὲ βάθος ὄργυιαι τρεῖς. 15. παρετέτατο δὲ ἡ τάφρος ἄνω διὰ τοῦ πεδίου ἐπὶ δώδεκα παρασάγγας μέχρι τοῦ Μηδίας τείχους. ἔνθα δὲ εἰσιν αἱ διώρυχες ἀπὸ τοῦ Τίγρητος ποταμοῦ ῥέουσαι· εἰσὶ δὲ τέτταρες, τὸ μὲν εὖρος πλεθριαῖαι, βαθεῖαι δὲ ἰσχυρῶς, καὶ πλοῖα πλεί ἐν αὐταῖς σιταγωγὰ· εἰσβάλλουσι δὲ εἰς τὸν Εὐφράτην, διαλείπουσι δ' ἐκάστη παρασάγγην, γέφυραι δ' ἐπεισιν. ἦν δὲ παρὰ τὸν Εὐφράτην πάροδος στενὴ μεταξὺ τοῦ ποταμοῦ καὶ τῆς τάφρου ὡς εἴκοσι ποδῶν τὸ εὖρος. 16. ταύτην δὲ τὴν τάφρον βασιλεὺς μέγας ποιεῖ ἀντὶ ἐρύματος, ἐπειδὴ πυνθάνεται Κῦρον προσελαύνοντα. ταύτην δὲ τὴν πάροδον Κῦρός τε καὶ ἡ στρατιὰ παρήλθε καὶ ἐγένοντο εἴσω τῆς τάφρου.

12. ἐκ Φοινίκης. cf. I. 4. 5.

15: τοῦ Μηδίας τείχους. see note II. 4. 12.

αἱ διώρυχες. For a full description of these canals and their modern names, see *Ainsworth*, pp. 89-91.

17. ταύτη μὲν οὖν τῇ ἡμέρᾳ οὐκ ἔμαχέσατο βασιλεύς, ἀλλ' ὑποχωρούντων φανερὰ ἦσαν καὶ ἵππων καὶ ἀνθρώπων ἵχνη πολλά. 18. ἐνταῦθα Κῦρος Σιλανὸν καλέσας τὸν Ἀμβρακιώτην μάντιν ἔδωκεν αὐτῷ δαρεικοὺς τρισχιλίους, ὅτι τῇ ἑνδεκάτῃ ἀπ' ἐκείνης τῆς ἡμέρας πρότερον θυόμενος εἶπεν αὐτῷ ὅτι βασιλεὺς οὐ μαχεῖται δέκα ἡμερῶν, Κῦρος δ' εἶπεν, Οὐκ ἄρα ἔτι μαχεῖται, εἰ ἐν ταύταις οὐ μαχεῖται ταῖς ἡμέραις· ἐὰν δ' ἀληθεύσης, ὑπισχνούμαι σοι δέκα τάλαντα. τοῦτο τὸ χρυσίον τότε ἀπέδωκεν, ἐπεὶ παρῆλθον αἱ δέκα ἡμέραι. 19. ἐπεὶ δ' ἐπὶ τῇ τάφρῳ οὐκ ἐκώλυε βασιλεὺς τὸ Κύρου στράτευμα διαβαίνειν, ἔδοξε καὶ Κύρῳ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἀπεγνώκῃναι τοῦ μάχεσθαι· ὥστε τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ Κῦρος ἐπορεύετο ἡμελημένος μᾶλλον. 20. τῇ δὲ τρίτῃ ἐπὶ τε τοῦ ἄρματος καθήμενος τὴν πορείαν ἐποιεῖτο καὶ ὀλίγους ἐν τάξει ἔχων πρὸ αὐτοῦ, τὸ δὲ πολὺ αὐτῷ ἀνατεταραγμένον ἐπορεύετο, καὶ τῶν ὄπλων τοῖς στρατιώταις πολλὰ ἐπὶ ἀμαξῶν ἤγοντο καὶ ὑποζυγίων.

VIII. Καὶ ἤδη τε ἦν ἀμφὶ ἀγορὰν πλήθουσαν, καὶ πλησίον ἦν ὁ σταθμὸς ἐνθα ἔμελλε καταλύειν,

18. εἰ . . . οὐ. When εἰ is followed by a negative and no kind of doubt is expressed, that negative may be οὐ; but when the least doubt is implied, the negative must be μή.

20. καθήμενος. see I. 5. 9.

VIII. 1. ἀμφὶ ἀγορὰν πλήθουσαν. The Greeks divided the day into five parts: 1st. ὄρθρος, the morning, from sunrise to about nine o'clock; 2d. ἀγορὰ πλήθουσα, the forenoon, from about nine to twelve; 3d. μεσημβρία, mid-day; 4th. ἡμέρα ἀποκλινομένη, the afternoon; 5. ἥλιον δυσμαί, sunset.

σταθμός. see I. 2. 5.

ἠνίκα Πατηγίας ἀνὴρ Πέρσης τῶν ἀμφὶ Κῦρον πιστῶν προφαίνεται ἐλαύνων ἀνὰ κράτος ἰδρουντι τῷ ἵππῳ, καὶ εὐθύς πᾶσιν οἷς ἐνετύγχανεν ἐβόα καὶ βαρβαρικῶς καὶ ἑλληνικῶς ὅτι βασιλεὺς σὺν στρατεύματι πολλῷ προσέρχεται ὡς εἰς μάχην παρεσκευασμένος. 2. ἔνθα δὴ πολὺς τάραχος ἐγένετο· αὐτίκα γὰρ ἐδόκουν οἱ Ἕλληνες καὶ πάντες δὲ ἀτάκτους σφίσι ἐπιπείσεισθαι. 3. Κῦρός τε καταπηδήσας ἀπὸ τοῦ ἄρματος τὸν θώρακα ἐνέδου, καὶ ἀναβὰς ἐπὶ τὸν ἵππον τὰ παλτὰ εἰς τὰς χεῖρας ἔλαβε, τοῖς τε ἄλλοις πᾶσι παρήγγελλεν ἐξοπλίζεσθαι καὶ καθίστασθαι εἰς τὴν ἑαυτοῦ τάξιν ἕκαστον. 4. ἔνθα δὴ σὺν πολλῇ σπουδῇ καθίσταντο, Κλέαρχος μὲν τὰ δεξιὰ τοῦ κέρατος ἔχων πρὸς τῷ Εὐφράτῃ ποταμῷ, Πρόξενος δὲ ἐχόμενος, οἱ δ' ἄλλοι μετὰ τοῦτον, Μένων δὲ καὶ τὸ στράτευμα τὸ εὐώνυμον κέρας ἔσχε τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ. 5. τοῦ δὲ βαρβαρικοῦ ἵππεις μὲν

ἠνίκα=*quo tempore*, at which time, when. Observe, ἠνίκα, πηνίκα, τηνίκα, &c. all mark a *particular* time.

ἀνὰ κράτος and in § 19 κατὰ κράτος, *with all one's might, at full speed*. ἀνά, in prose, governs the accusative only, with the meaning: 1. *up*—ἀνὰ τὸν ποταμόν, *up the river*; 2. *up to*—ἀνὰ κράτος, *up to one's strength*; 3. with words of time, *throughout*—ἀνὰ τὴν ἡμέραν, *throughout the day* (with this meaning the article must be used); 4. distributively—ἀνὰ πέντε παρασάγγας τῆς ἡμέρας, *five parasangs a day*.

2. ἐπιπείσεισθαι. see I. 1. 7.

3. ἐνέδου, aor. 2; root *δν.*, pres. imp. ἐνδύω and ἐνδύω, fut. ἐνδύσω, aor. 1 ἐνέδουσα, aor. 2 (with reflex. meaning) ἐνέδου.

4. ἐχόμενος, (*holding oneself on, clinging to*) next to: "him," if expressed, would be in the genitive.

Παφλαγόνες εἰς χιλίους παρὰ Κλέαρχον ἔστησαν ἐν τῷ δεξιῷ καὶ τὸ Ἑλληνικὸν πελταστικόν, ἐν δὲ τῷ εὐωνύμῳ Ἀριαῖός τε ὁ Κύρου ὑπαρχος καὶ τὸ ἄλλο βαρβαρικόν. 6. Κύρος δὲ καὶ οἱ ἵππεῖς τούτου ὅσον ἑξακόσιοι ὠπλισμένοι θώραξι μὲν αὐτοὶ καὶ παραμηριδίῳ καὶ κράνεσι πάντες πλήν Κύρου· Κύρος δὲ ψιλὴν ἔχων τὴν κεφαλὴν εἰς τὴν μάχην καθίστατο. [λέγεται δὲ καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους Πέρσας ψιλαῖς ταῖς κεφαλαῖς ἐν τῷ πολέμῳ διακινδυνεύειν.] 7. οἱ δ' ἵπποι πάντες οἱ μετὰ Κύρου εἶχον καὶ προμετωπίδια καὶ προστερνίδια· εἶχον δὲ καὶ μαχαίρας οἱ ἵππεῖς Ἑλληνικάς.

8. Καὶ ἤδη τε ἦν μέσον ἡμέρας καὶ οὐπω καταφανεῖς ἦσαν οἱ πολέμιοι· ἠνίκα δὲ δειλὴ ἐγένετο, ἐφάνη κονιορτὸς ὥσπερ νεφέλη λευκή, χρόνῳ δὲ συγχῶ ὕστερον ὥσπερ μελανία τις ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ ἐπὶ πολὺ. ὅτε δὲ ἐγγύτερον ἐγένοντο, τάχα δὴ καὶ χαλκός τις ἤστραπτε καὶ αἱ λόγχοι καὶ αἱ τάξεις καταφανεῖς ἐγένοντο. 9. καὶ ἦσαν ἵππεῖς μὲν λευκοθώρακες ἐπὶ τοῦ εὐωνύμου τῶν πολεμίων· Τισσαφέρνης ἐλέγετο τούτων ἄρχειν· ἐχόμενοι δὲ τούτων γερρόφοροι, ἐχόμενοι δὲ ὀπλίται σὺν ποδήρεσι ξυλίναις ἀσπίσιν· Αἰγύπτιοι δ' οὗτοι ἐλέγοντο εἶναι· ἄλλοι δ' ἵππεῖς, ἄλλοι τοξόται. πάντες δὲ οὗτοι κατὰ ἔθνη ἐν πλαισίῳ πλήρει ἀνθρώπων ἕκαστον τὸ ἔθνος ἐπορεύετο. 10. πρὸ δὲ αὐτῶν ἄρματα διαλείποντα συχρὸν

6. *ψιλὴν*, bare, that is, without a helmet. We learn from Ctesias that Κύρος wore a tiara.

8. *ἐπὶ πολὺ*, to a great extent.

ἀπ' ἀλλήλων τὰ δὴ δρεπανηφόρα καλούμενα· εἶχον δὲ τὰ δρέπανα ἐκ τῶν ἀξόνων εἰς πλάγιον ἀποτεταμένα καὶ ὑπὸ τοῖς δίφοροις εἰς γῆν βλέποντα, ὡς διακόπτειν ὄτω ἐντυγχάνοιεν. ἡ δὲ γνώμη ἦν ὡς εἰς τὰς τάξεις τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐλῶντα καὶ διακόψοντα. 11. ὃ μέντοι Κύρος εἶπεν ὅτε καλέσας παρεκελεύετο τοῖς Ἑλλησι τὴν κραυγὴν τῶν βαρβάρων ἀνέχεσθαι, ἐψεύσθη τοῦτο· οὐ γὰρ κραυγὴ ἀλλὰ συγῆ ὡς ἀνυστὸν καὶ ἡσυχῆ ἐν ἴσφ καὶ βραδέως προσήεσαν. 12. καὶ ἐν τούτῳ Κύρος παρελαύνων αὐτὸς σὺν Πίγρητι τῷ ἑρμηνεῖ καὶ ἄλλοις τρισὶν ἢ τέτταρσι τῷ Κλεάρχῳ ἐβόα ἄγειν τὸ στράτευμα κατὰ μέσον τὸ τῶν πολεμίων, ὅτι ἐκεῖ βασιλεὺς εἶη· κἂν τοῦτ', ἔφη, νικῶμεν, πάνθ' ἡμῖν πεποίηται. 13. ὁρῶν δὲ ὁ Κλεάρχος τὸ μέσον στῖφος καὶ ἀκούων Κύρου ἔξω ὄντα τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ εὐωνύμου βασιλέα· τοσοῦτον γὰρ πλήθει περιῆν βασιλεὺς ὥστε μέσον τὸ ἑαυτοῦ ἔχων τοῦ Κύρου εὐωνύμου ἔξω ἦν· ἀλλ' ὁμως ὁ Κλεάρχος οὐκ ἠθέλεν ἀποσπάσαι ἀπὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ τὸ δεξιὸν κέρασ, φοβούμενος μὴ κυκλωθεῖη ἐκατέρωθεν, τῷ δὲ Κύρῳ ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι αὐτῷ μέλει ὅπως καλῶς ἔχοι.

14. Καὶ ἐν τούτῳ τῷ καιρῷ τὸ μὲν βαρβαρικὸν στράτευμα ὁμαλῶς προῆι, τὸ δὲ Ἑλληνικὸν ἔτι

10. εἰς πλάγιον, *siceways*.

ὄτω, Attic dat., nom. ὄστις.

ἐλῶντα, fut. part. of ἐλαύνειν. see I. 2. 5. For ὡς ἐλῶντα see I. 1. 2.

11. ὡς ἀνυστὸν (root *anv.*, *effect, accomplish*), as *could be accomplished*, i. e. as much as possible.

ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ μένον συνετάττετο ἐκ τῶν ἔτι προσ-
 ιόντων. καὶ ὁ Κῦρος παρελαύνων οὐ πᾶν πρὸς
 αὐτῷ τῷ στρατεύματι κατεθεᾶτο ἐκατέρωσε ἀπο-
 βλέπων εἰς τε τοὺς πολεμίους καὶ τοὺς φίλους.
 15. ἰδὼν δὲ αὐτὸν ἀπὸ τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ Ξενοφῶν
 Ἀθηναῖος, ὑπελάσας ὡς συναντήσαι ἤρετο εἴ τι
 παραγγέλλοι· ὁ δ' ἐπιστήσας εἶπε καὶ λέγειν
 ἐκέλευε πᾶσιν ὅτι καὶ τὰ ἱερά καλὰ καὶ τὰ
 σφάγια καλὰ. 16. ταῦτα δὲ λέγων θορύβου
 ἤκουσε διὰ τῶν τάξεων ἰόντος, καὶ ἤρετο τίς ὁ θό-
 ρυβος εἶη. ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος εἶπεν ὅτι τὸ σύνθημα
 παρέρχεται δεύτερον ἤδη. καὶ ὃς ἐθαύμασε τίς
 παραγγέλλει, καὶ ἤρετο ὅ,τι εἶη τὸ σύνθημα. ὁ δ'
 ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι Ζεὺς σῶτηρ καὶ νίκη. 17. ὁ δὲ
 Κῦρος ἀκούσας Ἀλλὰ δέχομαί τε, ἔφη, καὶ τοῦτο
 ἔστω. ταῦτα δ' εἰπὼν εἰς τὴν ἑαυτοῦ χῶραν ἀπή-
 λαινε· καὶ οὐκέτι τρία ἢ τέτταρα στάδια διειχέτην
 τῷ φάλαγγε ἀπ' ἀλλήλων ἠνίκα ἐπαιάνιζόν τε οἱ
 Ἕλληνες καὶ ἤρχοντο ἀντίοι ἰέναι τοῖς πολεμίοις.
 18. ὡς δὲ πορευομένων ἐξεκύμαινέ τι τῆς φάλαγγος,
 τὸ ἐπιλειπόμενον ἤρξατο δρόμῳ θεῖν· καὶ ἅμα ἐφ-
 θέγαξαντο πάντες οἰονπερ τῷ Ἐνναλίῳ ἐλελίζουσι,
 καὶ πάντες δὲ ἔθειον. λέγουσι δὲ τινες ὡς καὶ ταῖς
 ἀσπίσι πρὸς τὰ δόρατα ἐδούπησαν φόβον ποιούντες
 τοῖς ἵπποις. 19. πρὶν δὲ τόξευμα ἐξικνεῖσθαι ἐκ-
 κλίνουσιν οἱ βάρβαροι καὶ φεύγουσι. καὶ ἐνταῦθα

14. οὐ πᾶν πρὸς, *not very close to*, i. e. a short distance from.

15. ἐπιστήσας, *having pulled up* (his horse).

18. πορευομένων, *gen. absolute*.

δρόμῳ θεῖν, *to run with speed*.

δὴ ἐδίωκον μὲν κατὰ κράτος οἱ Ἕλληνες, ἐβίων δὲ ἀλλήλοις μὴ θείν δρόμῳ, ἀλλ' ἐν τάξει ἐπεσθαι. 20. τὰ δ' ἄρματα ἐφέροντο τὰ μὲν δι' αὐτῶν τῶν πολεμίων, τὰ δὲ καὶ διὰ τῶν Ἑλλήνων κενὰ ἡνιόχων. οἱ δ' ἐπεὶ προῖδοιεν, δίσταντο· ἔστι δ' ὅστις καὶ κατελήφθη ὥσπερ ἐν ἵπποδρόμῳ ἐκπλαγείς· καὶ οὐδὲν μέντοι οὐδὲ τοῦτον παθεῖν ἔφασαν, οὐδ' ἄλλος δὲ τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ μάχῃ ἔπαθεν οὐδεὶς οὐδέν, πλὴν ἐπὶ τῷ εὐωνύμῳ τοξευθῆναι τις ἐλέγετο.

21. Κύρος δ' ὄρων τοὺς Ἕλληνας νικῶντας τὸ καθ' αὐτοὺς καὶ διώκοντας, ἡδόμενος καὶ προσκυνούμενος ἤδη ὡς βασιλεὺς ὑπὸ τῶν ἀμφ' αὐτόν, οὐδ' ὡς ἐξήχθη διώκειν, ἀλλὰ συνεσπειραμένην ἔχων τὴν τῶν σὺν ἑαυτῷ ἐξακοσίων ἱππέων τάξιν ἐπεμελείτο ὅ,τι ποιήσει βασιλεὺς. καὶ γὰρ ἤδει αὐτόν ὅτι μέσον ἔχει τοῦ Περσικοῦ στρατεύματος. 22. καὶ πάντες δ' οἱ τῶν βαρβάρων ἄρχοντες μέσον ἔχοντες τὸ αὐτῶν ἡγοῦντο, νομίζοντες οὕτω καὶ ἐν ἀσφαλεστάτῳ εἶναι, ἣν ἢ ἡ ἰσχύς αὐτῶν ἐκατέρωθεν, καὶ εἴ τι παραγγεῖλαι χρήζοιεν, ἡμίσει ἂν

20. ἐφέροντο. The root φερ. is found only in imp. pres. and past; the root οι. supplies the fut., and the root ενεγκ. the aor. and perf. tenses: thus, imp. pres. φέρω, fut. οἴσω, aor. 1 ἤνεγκα, aor. 2 ἤνεγκον, pres. perf. ἐνήνοχα, pass. ἐνήνεγμαι, aor. 1 pass. ἤνεχθη.

ἔστι δ' ὅστις (see I. 5. 7.), translate *and one man moreover was caught, being terrorstruck, as if in a horse-race.*

παθεῖν, aor. 2 act. inf.; root παθ., imp. pres. πύσχω, fut. πείσομαι, aor. 2 ἔπαθον, pres. perf. πέπονθα.

21. συνεσπειραμένην, part. perf. pass.: see συσπειρώω.

χρόνῳ αἰσθάνεσθαι τὸ στράτευμα. 23. καὶ βασιλεὺς δὴ τότε μέσον ἔχων τῆς αὐτοῦ στρατιᾶς ὄμως ἕξω ἐγένετο τοῦ Κύρου εὐωνύμου κέρατος. ἐπεὶ δὲ οὐδεὶς αὐτῷ ἐμάχετο ἐκ τοῦ ἀντίου οὐδὲ τοῖς αὐτοῦ τεταγμένοις ἔμπροσθεν, ἐπέκαμπτεν ὡς εἰς κύκλωσιν. 24. ἐνθα δὴ Κύρος δείσας μὴ ὀπισθεν γενόμενος κατακόψη τὸ Ἑλληνικὸν ἐλαύνει ἀντίος· καὶ ἐμβαλὼν σὺν τοῖς ἑξακοσίοις νικᾷ τοὺς πρὸ βασιλέως τεταγμένους, καὶ εἰς φυγὴν ἔτρεψε τοὺς ἑξακισχιλίους, καὶ ἀποκτεῖναι λέγεται αὐτὸς τῇ ἑαυτοῦ χειρὶ Ἀρταγέρσην τὸν ἄρχοντα αὐτῶν. 25. ὡς δ' ἡ τροπὴ ἐγένετο διασπείρονται καὶ οἱ Κύρου ἑξακόσιοι εἰς τὸ διώκειν ὀρμήσαντες, πλὴν πάνυ ὀλίγοι ἀμφ' αὐτὸν κατελείφθησαν, σχεδὸν οἱ ὁμοτράπεζοι καλούμενοι. 26. σὺν τούτοις δὲ ὢν καθορᾷ βασιλέα καὶ τὸ ἀμφ' ἐκείνον στῆφος· καὶ εὐθὺς οὐκ ἠνέσχετο, ἀλλ' εἰπὼν Τὸν ἄνδρα ὄρω, ἴετο ἐπ' αὐτὸν, καὶ παίει κατὰ τὸ στέρνον καὶ τιτρώσκει διὰ τοῦ θώρακος, ὡς φησι Κτησίας ὁ ἰατρός, καὶ ἰᾶσθαι αὐτὸς τὸ τραῦμά φησι. 27. παίοντα δ' αὐτὸν ἀκοντίζει τις παλτῷ ὑπὸ τὸν ὀφθαλμὸν βιαίως· καὶ ἐνταῦθα μαχόμενοι καὶ βασιλεὺς καὶ Κύρος καὶ οἱ ἀμφ' αὐτοὺς ὑπὲρ ἑκατέρου, ὅποσοι μὲν τῶν ἀμφὶ βασιλέα ἀπέθνησκον Κτησίας λέγει· παρ' ἐκείνων γὰρ ἦν Κύρος δὲ αὐτὸς τε ἀπέθανε καὶ ὀκτὼ οἱ ἄριστοι τῶν περὶ αὐτὸν ἔκειντο ἐπ' αὐτῷ. 28. Ἀρταπάτης δ' ὁ πιστότατος αὐτῷ τῶν

24. δείσας, part. aor. 1; root δεδ., pres. δειδω, fut. δεισομαι, aor. 1 ἔδεια, pres. perf. δέδοικα and δέδια.

27. ἔκειντο, past imp.: see κείμαι.

καὶ ἀπήγαγεν, ἀναλαβὼν καὶ τοὺς ἐν τῇ μάχῃ κατὰ τοὺς Ἑλληνας αὐτομολήσαντας καὶ Τισσαφέρην, καὶ τοὺς σὺν αὐτῷ. 7. ὁ γὰρ Τισσαφέρης ἐν τῇ πρώτῃ συνόδῳ οὐκ ἔφυγεν, ἀλλὰ διήλασε παρὰ τὸν ποταμὸν κατὰ τοὺς Ἑλληνας πελταστάς· διελαύνων δὲ κατέκαυε μὲν οὐδένα, διαστάντες δ' οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔπαιον καὶ ἠκόντιζον αὐτούς· Ἐπισθένης δὲ Ἀμφιπολίτης ἤρχε τῶν πελταστῶν καὶ ἐλέγετο φρόνιμος γενέσθαι. 8. ὁ δ' οὖν Τισσαφέρης ὡς μείον ἔχων ἀπῆλλάγη, πάλιν μὲν οὐκ ἀναστρέφει, εἰς δὲ τὸ στρατόπεδον ἀφικόμενος τὸ τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐκεῖ συντυγχάνει βασιλεῖ, καὶ ὁμοῦ δὴ πάλιν συνταξάμενοι ἐπορεύοντο. 9. ἐπεὶ δ' ἦσαν κατὰ τὸ εὐώνυμον τῶν Ἑλλήνων κέρας, ἔδεισαν οἱ Ἕλληνες μὴ προσάγοιεν πρὸς τὸ κέρας καὶ περιπτύξαντες ἀμφοτέρωθεν αὐτοὺς κατακόφειαν· καὶ ἐδόκει αὐτοῖς ἀναπτύσσειν τὸ κέρας καὶ ποιήσασθαι ὀπισθεν τὸν ποταμὸν. 10. ἐν ᾧ δὲ ταῦτα ἐβουλεύοντο, καὶ δὴ βασιλεὺς παραμειψάμενος εἰς τὸ αὐτὸ σχῆμα κατέστησεν ἀντίαν τὴν φύλαγγα ὡσπερ τὸ πρῶτον μαχοῦμενος συνηί. ὡς δὲ εἶδον οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐγγύς τε ὄντας καὶ παρατεταγμένους, αὐθις παιανίσαντες ἐπήεσαν πολὺ ἔτι προθυμότερον ἢ τὸ πρόσθεν. 11. οἱ δ' αὖ βάρβαροι οὐκ ἐδέχοντο, ἀλλ' ἐκ πλέονος ἢ τὸ πρόσθεν ἔφευγον. οἱ δ'

8. μείον ἔχων. cf. I. 1. 5.

10. ὡσπερ τὸ πρῶτον μαχοῦμενος συνηί: connect these words in translation with εἰς τὸ αὐτὸ σχῆμα.

11. ἐκ πλέονος φεύγειν = to flee "when at a greater distance:" cf. III. 3. 9. ἐκ πολλοῦ, and IV. 2. 27. ἐγγύθεν.

ἐπεδίωκον μέχρι κώμης τινός· ἐνταῦθα δ' ἔστησαν οἱ Ἕλληνες· 12. ὑπὲρ γὰρ τῆς κώμης γήλαφος ἦν, ἐφ' οὗ ἀνεστράφησαν οἱ ἀμφὶ βασιλέα, πεζοὶ μὲν οὐκέτι, τῶν δὲ ἵππέων ὁ λόφος ἐνεπλήσθη, ὥστε τὸ ποιούμενον μὴ γινγνώσκειν. καὶ τὸ βασιλεῖον σημεῖον ὄραν ἔφασαν ἀετὸν τινα χρυσοῦν ἐπὶ πέλτης ἐπὶ ξύλου ἀνατεταμένον. 13. ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ ἐνταῦθ' ἐχώρουν οἱ Ἕλληνες, λείπουσι δὴ καὶ τὸν λόφον οἱ ἵππεῖς, οὐ μὴν ἔτι ἀθροοί, ἀλλ' ἄλλοι ἄλλοθεν ἐψιλοῦτο δ' ὁ λόφος τῶν ἵππέων τέλος δὲ καὶ πάντες ἀπεχώρησαν. 14. ὁ οὖν Κλέαρχος οὐκ ἀνεβίβαζεν ἐπὶ τὸν λόφον, ἀλλ' ὑπὸ αὐτὸν στήσας τὸ στράτευμα πέμπει Λύκιον τὸν Συρακόσιον καὶ ἄλλον ἐπὶ τὸν λόφον, καὶ κελεύει κατιδόντας τὰ ὑπὲρ τοῦ λόφου τί ἐστὶν ἀπαγγεῖλαι. 15. καὶ ὁ Λύκιος ἤλασέ τε καὶ ἰδὼν ἀπαγγέλλει ὅτι φεύγουσιν ἀνὰ κράτος. σχεδὸν δ' ὅτε ταῦτα ἦν καὶ ἥλιος ἐδύετο. 16. ἐνταῦθα δ' ἔστησαν οἱ Ἕλληνες καὶ θέμενοι τὰ ὄπλα ἀνεπαύοντο· καὶ ἅμα μὲν ἐθαύμαζον ὅτι οὐδαμοῦ Κῦρος φαίνοιτο οὐδ' ἄλλος ἀπ' αὐτοῦ οὐδεὶς παρείη. Οὐ γὰρ ᾔδεσαν αὐτὸν τεθνηκότα, ἀλλ' εἴκαζον ἢ διώκοντα οἴχεσθαι ἢ καταληψόμενόν τι προεληλακένας· 17. καὶ αὐτοὶ ἐβουλεύοντο εἰ αὐτοῦ μείναντες τὰ σκευοφόρα ἐνταῦθα ἄγοντο ἢ ἀπίοιεν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον· ἔδοξεν οὖν αὐτοῖς ἀπιέναι· καὶ ἀφικνοῦνται ἀμφὶ δόρπηστον ἐπὶ τὰς σκηνάς. 18. ταύτης μὲν τῆς ἡμέρας τοῦτο τὸ τέλος ἐγένετο. καταλαμβάνουσι δὲ τῶν τε ἄλλων χρημάτων τὰ πλείστα διηρπασμένα καὶ εἴ τι σιτίον ἢ ποτὸν ἦν

καὶ τὰς ἀμάξας μεστὰς ἀλεύρων καὶ οἴνου, ἃς παρεσκευάσατο Κύρος, ἵνα εἴ ποτε σφόδρα τὸ στράτευμα λάβοι ἔνδεια, διαδοίῃ τοῖς Ἑλλήσιν· ἦσαν δ' αὐταὶ τετρακόσαι ὡς ἐλέγοντο ἄμαξαι· καὶ ταύτας τότε οἱ σὺν βασιλεῖ διήρπασαν. 19. ὥστε ἄδειπνοι ἦσαν οἱ πλείστοι τῶν Ἑλλήνων· ἦσαν δὲ καὶ ἀνάριστοι· πρὶν γὰρ δὴ καταλύσαι τὸ στράτευμα πρὸς ἄριστον βασιλεὺς ἐφάνη. ταύτην μὲν οὖν τὴν νύκτα οὕτω διεγέροντο.

B.

I. Ὡς μὲν οὖν ἠθροίσθη Κύρῳ τὸ Ἑλληνικὸν ὅτε ἐπὶ τὸν ἀδελφὸν Ἀρταξέρξην ἐστρατεύετο, καὶ ὅσα ἐν τῇ ἀνόδῳ ἐπράχθη καὶ ὡς ἡ μάχη ἐγένετο καὶ ὡς Κύρος ἐτελεύτησε καὶ ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον ἐλθόντες οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐκοιμήθησαν οἴομενοι τὰ πάντα νικᾶν καὶ Κύρον ζῆν, ἐν τῷ πρόσθεν λόγῳ δεδήλωται. 2. ἅμα δὲ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ συνελθόντες οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἐθαύμαζον ὅτι Κύρος οὔτε ἄλλον πέμπει σημανοῦντα ὅ,τι χρὴ ποιεῖν οὔτε αὐτὸς φαίνοιτο. ἔδοξεν οὖν αὐτοῖς συσκευασαμένοις ἃ εἶχον καὶ ἐξοπλισαμένοις προῖέναι εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν ἕως Κύρῳ συμμίξειαν. 3. ἤδη δὲ ἐν ὀρμῇ ὄντων ἅμα ἠλίφ ἀνίσχοντι ἦλθε Προκλῆς ὁ Τευθρανίας ἄρχων, γεγονὼς ἀπὸ Δημαράτου τοῦ Λάκωνος, καὶ Γλοῦς

I. 2. συμμίξειαν, imp. pres. συμμίγνυμι.

3. γεγονὼς ἀπό, a descendant of.

ὁ Ταμώ. οὗτοι ἔλεγον ὅτι Κῦρος τέθνηκεν, Ἀριαῖος δὲ πεφευγώς ἐν τῷ σταθμῷ εἶη μετὰ τῶν ἄλλων βαρβάρων ὅθεν τῇ προτεραίᾳ ὠρμῶντο, καὶ λέγοι ὅτι ταύτην μὲν τὴν ἡμέραν περιμένειεν ἂν αὐτούς, εἰ μέλλοιεν ἦκειν, τῇ δὲ ἄλλῃ ἀπιέναι φαίη ἐπὶ Ἰωνίας ὅθενπερ ἦλθε. 4. ταῦτα ἀκούσαντες οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι Ἕλληνες πυνθανόμενοι βαρέως ἔφερον. Κλέαρχος δὲ τάδε εἶπεν. Ἄλλ' ὄφελε μὲν Κῦρος ζῆν' ἐπεὶ δὲ τετελεύτηκεν, ἀπαγγέλλετε Ἀριαίῳ ὅτι ἡμεῖς νικῶμέν τε βασιλέα καὶ ὡς ὄρατε οὐδεὶς ἔτι ἡμῖν μάχεται, καὶ εἰ μὴ ὑμεῖς ἦλθετε, ἐπορευόμεθα ἂν ἐπὶ βασιλέα. ἐπαγγελόμεθα δὲ Ἀριαίῳ, ἐὰν ἐνθάδε ἔλθῃ, εἰς τὸν θρόνον τὸν βασιλείου καθίσειν αὐτόν· τῶν γὰρ μάχῃ νικῶντων καὶ τὸ ἄρχειν ἐστί. 5. ταῦτ' εἰπὼν ἀποστέλλει τοὺς ἀγγέλους καὶ σὺν αὐτοῖς Χειρίσοφον τὸν Δάκωνα καὶ Μένωνα τὸν Θετταλόν· καὶ γὰρ αὐτὸς Μένων ἐβούλετο· ἦν γὰρ φίλος καὶ ξένος Ἀριαίου. οἱ μὲν ᾤχοντο, Κλέαρχος δὲ περιέμενε. 6. τὸ δὲ στράτευμα ἐπορίζετο σῆτον ὅπως ἐδύνατο ἐκ τῶν ὑποζυγίων κόπτοντες τοὺς βούς καὶ ὄνους· ξύλοις δ' ἐχρῶντο μικρὸν προϊόντες ἀπὸ τῆς φάλαγ-

ἐπὶ Ἰωνίας' Ἰωνίας is here governed by an acc. understood, (*the land*) of *Ionia*.

4. βαρέως ἔφερον, *molestie* or *graviter ferébant*, were vexed.

Ἄλλ' couples ὄφελε, &c. to a clause understood.

ὄφελε μὲν Κῦρος ζῆν, lit. *Cyrus ought to have been alive*; hence *would that Cyrus were alive!* ὄφελε, imp. pres. *δφείλω*.

εἰ μὴ ἦλθετε, ἐπορευόμεθα ἂν. In an hypothesis contrary to fact, observe that the Greeks use the indicative mood with *εἰ* in the conditional and *ἂν* in the consequent clause.

γος οὐ ἡ μάχη ἐγένετο τοῖς τε οἰστοῖς πολλοῖς οὖσιν, οὓς ἠνάγκαζον οἱ Ἕλληες ἐκβάλλειν τοὺς αὐτομολοῦντας παρὰ βασιλέως, καὶ τοῖς γέβροις καὶ ταῖς ἀσπίσι ταῖς ξυλίαις ταῖς Αἰγυπτίαις. πολλὰ δὲ καὶ πέλται καὶ ἄμαξαι ἦσαν φέρεσθαι ἔρημοι· οἷς πᾶσι χρώμενοι κρέα ἔψοντες ἦσθιον ἐκείνην τὴν ἡμέραν.

7. Καὶ ἤδη τε ἦν περὶ πλήθουσιν ἀγορὰν καὶ ἔρχονται παρὰ βασιλέως καὶ Τισσαφέρου κήρυκες, οἱ μὲν ἄλλοι βάρβαροι, ἦν δ' αὐτῶν Φαλίνοσ εἰς Ἕλληνα, ὃσ ἐτύγχανε παρὰ Τισσαφέρνει ὄν καὶ ἐντίμως ἔχων· καὶ γὰρ προσποιεῖτο ἐπιστήμων εἶναι τῶν ἀμφὶ τάξεις τε καὶ ὄπλομαχίαν. 8. οὗτοι δὲ προσελθόντες καὶ καλέσαντες τοὺς τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἀρχοντας λέγουσιν ὅτι βασιλεὺσ κελεύει τοὺς Ἕλληνας, ἐπεὶ νικῶν τυγχάνει καὶ Κῦρον ἀπέκτονε, παραδόντας τὰ ὄπλα ἰόντας ἐπὶ τὰσ βασιλέωσ θύρας εὐρίσκεσθαι ἂν τι δύνωνται ἀγαθόν. 9. ταῦτα μὲν εἶπον οἱ βασιλέωσ κήρυκες.

A discussion follows, in which the generals represent to Phalinus the impolicy and absurdity of surrendering their arms. A few were said to have been willing to offer their services to the king. At this juncture Clearchus returns. He appeals to Phalinus as a fellow-countryman to say can-

6. ἐκβάλλειν, to pick up: cf. Caes. iii. 5. " tela missa exciperent."

ἦσαν φέρεσθαι, there were . . . to be carried off: cf. IV. 1. 8. ἦν λαμβάνειν.

7. ἐντίμως ἔχων. cf. I. 1. 5.

8. ἀπέκτονε, pres. perf.; imp. pres. ἀποκτείνω.

ἐπὶ τὰσ θύρας. see I. 2. 11.

didly whether it would be expedient for the Greeks to comply with the king's demand. Phalinus answers evasively; upon which Clearchus directs him to inform the king, that, if they are to be friends, the Greeks can serve him better, and, if enemies, fight him better, with their arms than without them.

21. ὁ δὲ Φαλίνοσ εἶπε, Ταῦτα μὲν δὴ ἀπαγγελοῦμεν· ἀλλὰ καὶ τάδε ὑμῖν εἰπεῖν ἐκέλευσε βασιλεὺς ὅτι μένουσι μὲν αὐτοῦ σπονδαὶ εἴησαν, προῖοῦσι δὲ καὶ ἀπιούσι πόλεμος. εἶπατε οὖν καὶ περὶ τούτου πότερα μενεῖτε καὶ σπονδαὶ εἰσιν, ἢ ὡς πολέμου ὄντος παρ' ὑμῶν ἀπαγγελῶ. 22. Κλέαρχος δ' ἔλεξεν, Ἀπάγγελλε τοίνυν καὶ περὶ τούτου ὅτι καὶ ἡμῖν ταῦτὰ δοκεῖ ἄπερ καὶ βασιλεῖ. Τί οὖν ταῦτα ἐστίν; ἔφη ὁ Φαλίνοσ. ἀπεκρίνατο ὁ Κλέαρχος, Ἦν μὲν μένωμεν, σπονδαί, ἀπιούσι δὲ καὶ προῖοῦσι πόλεμος. 23. ὁ δὲ πάλιν ἠρώτησε, Σπονδὰς ἢ πόλεμον ἀπαγγελῶ; Κλέαρχος δὲ ταῦτὰ πάλιν ἀπεκρίνατο, Σπονδαὶ μὲν μένουσιν, ἀπιούσι δὲ ἢ προῖοῦσι πόλεμος. ὅ,τι δὲ ποιήσοι οὐ διεσήμηνε.

II. Φαλίνοσ μὲν δὴ ἔρχετο καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ. οἱ δὲ παρὰ Ἀριαίου ἤκον Προκλήσ καὶ Χειρίσοφοσ· Μένων δὲ αὐτοῦ ἔμενε παρὰ Ἀριαίῳ· οὗτοι δὲ ἔλεγον ὅτι πολλοὺσ φαίη Ἀριαίῳ εἶναι Πέρσασ ἑαυτοῦ βελτίουσ, οὓσ οὐκ ἂν ἀνασχέσθαι αὐτοῦ βασιλεύοντοσ· ἀλλ' εἰ βούλεσθε συναπιέναι ἡκειν ἤδη κελεύει τῆσ νυκτόσ· εἰ δὲ μῆ, αὐτόσ πρῶτ ἀπιέναι φησίν. 2. ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχοσ εἶπεν, Ἀλλ'

21. εἶπατε. see note on εἶρηκα, I. 2. 5.

οὕτω χρή ποιεῖν· ἐὰν μὲν ἤκωμεν, ὥσπερ λέγετε· εἰ δὲ μή, πράττετε ὅποιον ἂν τι ὑμῖν οἴησθε μάλιστα συμφέρειν. ὅ,τι δὲ ποιήσοι οὐδὲ τούτοις εἶπε. 3. μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα ἤδη ἡλίου δύνοντος συγκαλέσας τοὺς στρατηγούς καὶ λοχαγούς ἔλεξε τοιαύδε. Ἐμοί, ὦ ἄνδρες, θυομένῳ ἰέναι ἐπὶ βασιλέα οὐκ ἐγίγνετο τὰ ἱερά. καὶ εἰκότως ἄρα οὐκ ἐγίγνετο· ὡς γὰρ ἐγὼ νῦν πυνθάνομαι, ἐν μέσῳ ἡμῶν καὶ βασιλέως ὁ Τίγρης ποταμός ἐστι ναυσίπορος, ὃν οὐκ ἂν δυναίμεθα ἄνευ πλοίων διαβῆναι· πλοῖα δὲ ἡμεῖς οὐκ ἔχομεν. οὐ μὲν δὴ αὐτοῦ γε μένειν οἶόν τε· τὰ γὰρ ἐπιτήδεια οὐκ ἔστιν ἔχειν· ἰέναι δὲ παρὰ τοὺς Κύρου φίλους πάνυ καλὰ ἡμῖν τὰ ἱερά ἦν. 4. ὦδε οὖν χρή ποιεῖν, ἀπιόντας δεῖπνεῖν ὅ,τι τις ἔχει. ἐπειδὴν δὲ σημήνην τῷ κέρατι ὡς ἀναπαύεσθαι, συσκευάζεσθε· ἐπειδὴν δὲ τὸ δεύτερον, ἀνατίθεσθε ἐπὶ τὰ ὑποζύγια· ἐπὶ δὲ τῷ τρίτῳ ἔπεσθε τῷ ἡγουμένῳ, τὰ μὲν ὑποζύγια ἔχοντες πρὸς τοῦ ποταμοῦ, τὰ δὲ ὄπλα ἔξω. 5. ταῦτα ἀκούσαντες οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοὶ ἀπήλθον καὶ ἐποίουν οὕτω. καὶ τὸ λοιπὸν ὁ μὲν ἤρχεν, οἱ δὲ ἐπέιθοντο οὐχ ἐλόμενοι, ἀλλὰ ὀρῶντες ὅτι μόνος ἐφρόνει οἷα ἔδει τὸν ἄρχοντα, οἱ δ' ἄλλοι ἄπειροι ἦσαν. 6. ἀριθμὸς δὲ τῆς ὁδοῦ ἦν ἡλθον ἐξ Ἐφέσου τῆς Ἰωνίας μέχρι τῆς μάχης σταθμοὶ

II. 3. οὐκ ἐγίγνετο, *were not (favourable)*.

ὁ Τίγρης ποτ. His information was incorrect. The king had not crossed the Tigris.

οἶόν τε. observe οἶόν τε εἶναι = *to be possible*; οἷός τε εἶναι = *to be able*.

4. τὰ ὄπλα is occasionally used for *the hoplites*.

τρεις καὶ ἐνενήκοντα, παρασάγγαι πέντε καὶ τριακοντα καὶ πεντακόσιοι, στάδιοι πεντήκοντα καὶ ἑξακισχίλιοι καὶ μύριοι· ἀπὸ δὲ τῆς μάχης ἐλέγοντο εἶναι εἰς Βαβυλῶνα στάδιοι ἑξήκοντα καὶ τριακόσιοι.

7. Ἐντεῦθεν ἐπεὶ σκότος ἐγένετο Μιλτοκύθης μὲν ὁ Θραξ ἔχων τοὺς τε ἰππέας τοὺς μεθ' ἑαυτοῦ εἰς τετταράκοντα καὶ τῶν πεζῶν Θρακῶν ὡς τριακοσίων ἤτομόλησε πρὸς βασιλέα. 8. Κλέαρχος δὲ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἠγείτο κατὰ τὰ παρηγγελμένα, οἱ δ' εἶποντο· καὶ ἄφικνούνται εἰς τὸν πρῶτον σταθμὸν παρὰ Ἀριαῖον καὶ τὴν ἐκεῖνου στρατιὰν ἀμφιμέσας νύκτας· καὶ ἐν τάξει θέμενοι τὰ ὄπλα ξυνηλθον οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων παρὰ Ἀριαῖον καὶ ὤμοσαν οἷ τε Ἑλληνες καὶ Ἀριαῖος καὶ τῶν σὺν αὐτῷ οἱ κράτιστοι μήτε προδώσειν ἀλλήλους σύμμαχοί τε ἔσεσθαι· οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι προσώμοσαν καὶ ἠγήσεσθαι ἀδόλως. 9. ταῦτα δ' ὤμοσαν, σφάξαντες ταῦρον καὶ λύκον καὶ κάπρον καὶ κριὸν εἰς ἀσπίδα, οἱ μὲν Ἑλληνες βάπτοντες ξίφος, οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι λόγχην. 10. ἐπεὶ δὲ τὰ πιστὰ ἐγένετο, εἶπεν ὁ Κλέαρχος, Ἄγε δῆ, ὦ Ἀριαῖε, ἐπεὶ περὶ ὁ αὐτὸς ὑμῖν στόλος ἐστὶ καὶ ἡμῖν, εἰπὲ τίνα γνώμην ἔχεις περὶ τῆς πορείας, πότερον ἄπιμεν ἢν περ ἤλθομεν, ἢ ἄλλην τινα ἐν-

8. ὤμοσαν; root ομ., imp. pres. ὀμνυμι, fut. ὀμοῦμαι, pres. perf. ὀμώμοκα, aor. 1 ὤμοσα.

θέμενοι τὰ ὄπλα. cf. I. 6. 4.

9. εἰς ἀσπίδα, (so that the blood fell) into a shield: cf. IV. 3. 18. εἰς τὸν ποταμόν.

νενοημέναι δοκεῖς ὁδὸν κρείττω. 11. ὃ δ' εἶπεν, Ἦν μὲν ἤλθομεν ἀπιόντες παντελῶς ἂν ὑπὸ λιμοῦ ἀπολοιόμεθα· ὑπάρχει γὰρ νῦν ἡμῖν οὐδὲν τῶν ἐπιτηδείων. ἑπτακαίδεκα γὰρ σταθμῶν τῶν ἐγγυτάτω οὐδὲ δεῦρο ἰόντες ἐκ τῆς χώρας οὐδὲν εἴχομεν λαμβάνειν. ἔνθα δ' εἴτι ἦν, ἡμεῖς διαπορευόμενοι κατεδαπανήσαμεν. νῦν δ' ἐπινοοῦμεν πορεύεσθαι μακροτέραν μὲν, τῶν δ' ἐπιτηδείων οὐκ ἀπορήσομεν. 12. πορευτέον δ' ἡμῖν τοὺς πρώτους σταθμοὺς ὡς ἂν δυνώμεθα μακροτάτους, ἵνα ὡς πλείστον ἀποσπασθῶμεν τοῦ βασιλικοῦ στρατεύματος· ἦν γὰρ ἅπαξ δύο ἢ τριῶν ἡμερῶν ὁδὸν ἀπόσχωμεν, οὐκέτι μὴ δύνηται βασιλεὺς ἡμᾶς καταλαβεῖν. ὀλίγῳ μὲν γὰρ στρατεύματι οὐ τολμήσει ἐφέπεσθαι. πολὺν δ' ἔχων στόλον οὐ δύνησεται ταχέως πορεύεσθαι· ἴσως δὲ καὶ τῶν ἐπιτηδείων σπανιεῖ. ταύτην, ἔφη, τὴν γνώμην ἔχω ἔγωγε.

13. Ἦν δὲ αὕτη ἡ στρατηγία οὐδὲν ἄλλο δυναμένη ἢ ἀποδρᾶναι ἢ ἀποφυγεῖν· ἡ δὲ τύχη ἐστρατήγησε κάλλιον. ἐπεὶ γὰρ ἡμέρα ἐγένετο, ἐπορεύοντο ἐν δεξιᾷ ἔχοντες τὸν ἥλιον, λογιζόμενοι ἤξειν ἅμα ἡλίῳ δύνοντι εἰς κώμας τῆς Βαβυλωνίας χώρας· καὶ τοῦτο μὲν οὐκ ἐψεύσθησαν. 14. ἔτι δὲ ἀμφὶ δειλὴν ἔδοξαν πολεμίους ὀρᾶν ἱππέας· καὶ τῶν τε Ἑλλήνων οἱ μὴ ἔτυχον ἐν ταῖς τάξεσιν

12. οὐκέτι μὴ δύνηται βασιλεὺς, *there will no longer (be a fear) that the king will be able.*

13. ἀποδρᾶναι . . . ἀποφυγεῖν. see I. 4. 8.

ἐν δεξιᾷ ἔχ., i. e. they marched in an *easterly* direction, with the sun at noon-day on their right hand. Had they been marching *north*, they would not have encountered the king's army.

ὄντες εἰς τὰς τάξεις ἔθεον, καὶ Ἀριαῖος, ἐτύγχανε γὰρ ἐφ' ἀμάξης πορευόμενος διότι ἐτέτρωτο, καταβάς ἐθωρακίζετο καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ. 15. ἐν ᾧ δὲ ἀπλίζοντο ἦκον λέγοντες οἱ προπεμφθέντες σκοποὶ ὅτι οὐχ ἰππεῖς εἰσιν ἀλλ' ὑποζύγια νέμοιντο. καὶ εὐθὺς ἔγνωσαν πάντες ὅτι ἐγγύς που ἐστρατοπεδεύετο βασιλεύς· καὶ γὰρ καὶ καπνὸς ἐφαίνετο ἐν κώμαις οὐ πρόσω. 16. Κλέαρχος δὲ ἐπὶ μὲν τοὺς πολεμίους οὐκ ἦγεν· ἦδει γὰρ καὶ ἀπειρηκότητας τοὺς στρατιώτας καὶ ἀσίτους ὄντας· ἦδη δὲ καὶ ὄψῃ ἦν οὐ μέντοι οὐδὲ ἀπέκλινε, φυλαττόμενος μὴ δοκοῖη φεύγειν, ἀλλ' εὐθύωρον ἄγων ἅμα τῷ ἡλίῳ δυομένῳ εἰς τὰς ἐγγυτάτω κώμας τοὺς πρώτους ἄγων κατεσκήνωσεν, ἐξ ὧν διήρπαστο ὑπὸ τοῦ βασιλικοῦ στρατεύματος καὶ αὐτὰ τὰ ἀπὸ τῶν οἰκιῶν ξύλα. 17. οἱ μὲν οὖν πῶτοι ὁμῶς τρόπῳ τινὶ ἐστρατοπεδεύσαντο, οἱ δὲ ὕστεροι σκοταῖοι προσιώντες ὡς ἐτύγχανον ἕκαστοι ηὐλίζοντο, καὶ κραυγὴν πολλὴν ἐποίουν καλοῦντες ἀλλήλους, ὥστε καὶ τοὺς πολεμίους ἀκούειν· ὥστε οἱ μὲν ἐγγύτατα τῶν πολεμίῳν καὶ ἔφυγον ἐκ τῶν σκηνομάτων. 18. δῆλον δὲ τοῦτο τῇ ὕστεραία ἐγένετο· οὔτε γὰρ ὑποζύγιον ἔτι οὐδὲν ἐφάνη, οὔτε στρατόπεδον οὔτε καπνὸς οὐδαμοῦ πλησίον. ἐξε-

15. καὶ γὰρ καί. "καὶ γὰρ (=for truly) is used to confirm a proposition which of itself even is tolerably certain. The notion is strengthened in Attic by καὶ γὰρ καί, καὶ γὰρ οὖν, καὶ γὰρ τοι."—*L. and S.*

16. ἀπειρηκότητας. cf. the meaning of ἀπαγορεύουσι in I. 5. 3.

17. ὥστε ἀκούειν, ὥστε ἔφυγον. observe ὥστε with infinitive, so that they might hear; ὥστε with indicative, so that they did see.

πλάγη δέ, ὡς ἔοικε, καὶ βασιλεὺς τῇ ἐφόδῳ τοῦ στρατεύματος. ἐδήλωσε δὲ τοῦτο οἷς τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ἔπραττε. 19. προιούσης μέντοι τῆς νυκτὸς ταύτης καὶ τοῖς Ἑλλησι φόβος ἐμπίπτει, καὶ θόρυβος καὶ δούπος ἦν οἷον εἰκὸς φόβου ἐμπεσόντος γίνεσθαι. 20. Κλέαρχος δὲ Τολμίδην Ἡλεῖον, ὃν ἐτύγγανεν ἔχων παρ' ἑαυτῷ κήρυκα ἄριστον τῶν τότε, τοῦτον ἀνειπεῖν ἐκέλευσε σιγὴν κατακηρύξαντα ὅτι προαγορεύουσιν οἱ ἄρχοντες, ὃς ἂν τὸν ἀφέντα τὸν ὄνον εἰς τὰ ὄπλα μνηύσῃ, ὅτι λήψεται μισθὸν τάλαντον ἀργυρίου. 21. ἐπεὶ δὲ ταῦτα ἐκηρύχθη, ἔγνωσαν οἱ στρατιῶται ὅτι κενὸς ὁ φόβος εἶη καὶ οἱ ἄρχοντες σώοι. ἅμα δὲ ὄρθρῳ παρήγγειλεν ὁ Κλέαρχος εἰς τάξιν τὰ ὄπλα τίθεσθαι τοὺς Ἑλληνας ἧπερ εἶχον ὅτε ἦν ἡ μάχη.

III. Ὁ δὲ δὴ ἔγραψα ὅτι βασιλεὺς ἐξεπλάγη τῇ ἐφόδῳ, τῷδε δῆλον ἦν. τῇ μὲν γὰρ πρόσθεν ἡμέρᾳ πέμπων τὰ ὄπλα παραδιδόναί ἐκέλευε, τότε δὲ ἅμα ἠλίφ' ἀνατέλλοντι κήρυκας ἔπεμψε περὶ σκοπῶν. 2. οἱ δ' ἐπεὶ ἦλθον πρὸς τοὺς προφύλακας, ἐζήτησαν τοὺς ἄρχοντας. ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἀπήγγελλον οἱ προφύλακες, Κλέαρχος τυχῶν τότε τὰς τάξεις ἐπισκοπῶν εἶπε τοῖς προφύλαξι κελεύειν τοὺς κήρυκας περιμένειν ἄχρι ἂν σχολάσῃ. 3. ἐπεὶ δὲ κατέστησε τὸ στράτευμα ὥστε καλῶς ἔχειν ὁρᾶσθαι πάντῃ φάλαγγα πυκνήν, τῶν δὲ ἀόπλων

20. ἀφέντα, part. aor. 2: see ἀφήμι.

εἰς τὰ ὄπλα, into the quarters of the hoplites: cf. II. 4. 15.

III. 1. 3. "This seems to have been a standing military jest to make the soldiers laugh at their past panic."—Grote.

μηδένα καταφανή εἶναι, ἐκάλεσε τοὺς ἀγγέλους, καὶ αὐτὸς τε προῆλθε τοὺς τε εὐοπλοτάτους ἔχων καὶ εὐειδεστάτους τῶν αὐτοῦ στρατιωτῶν, καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις στρατηγοῖς ταῦτα ἔφρασεν. 4. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦν πρὸς τοῖς ἀγγέλοις, ἀνηρώτα τί βούλονται. οἱ δ' ἔλεγον ὅτι περὶ σπονδῶν ἤκοιεν ἄνδρες οἵτινες ἱκανοὶ ἔσονται τά τε παρὰ βασιλέως τοῖς Ἕλλησιν ἀπαγγεῖλαι καὶ τὰ παρὰ τῶν Ἑλλήνων βασιλεῖ. 5. ὁ δὲ ἀπεκρίνατο, Ἀπαγγέλλετε τοῖνυν αὐτῷ ὅτι μάχης δεῖ πρῶτον· ἄριστον γὰρ οὐκ ἔστιν, οὐδὲ ὁ τολμήσων περὶ σπονδῶν λέγειν τοῖς Ἕλλησι μὴ πορίσας ἄριστον. 6. ταῦτα ἀκούσαντες οἱ ἄγγελοι ἀπήλαυνον, καὶ ἤκον ταχύ· ὃ καὶ δῆλον ἦν ὅτι ἐγγὺς που βασιλεὺς ἦν, ἢ ἄλλος τις ὃ ἐπετέτακτο ταῦτα πράττειν· ἔλεγον δὲ ὅτι εἰκότα δοκοῖεν λέγειν βασιλεῖ, καὶ ἤκοιεν ἡγεμόνας ἔχοντες οἱ αὐτοὺς, εἴαν σπονδαὶ γένωνται, ἄξουσιν ἔνθεν ἕξουσι τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. 7. ὁ δὲ ἡρώτα εἰ αὐτοῖς τοῖς ἀνδράσι σπένδοιτο ἰοῦσι καὶ ἀπιούσιν, ἢ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἔσοιτο σπονδαί. οἱ δὲ Ἄπασιν ἔφασαν, μέχρι ἂν βασιλεῖ τὰ παρ' ὑμῶν διαγγελθῆ. 8. ἐπεὶ δὲ ταῦτα εἶπον, μεταστησάμενος αὐτοὺς ὁ Κλέαρχος ἐβουλεύετο. καὶ ἐδόκει τὰς σπονδὰς ποιεῖσθαι ταχύ, καὶ καθ' ἡσυχίαν ἐλθεῖν τε ἐπὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια καὶ λαβεῖν. 9. ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος εἶπε, Δοκεῖ μὲν κάμοι ταῦτα· οὐ μέντοι ταχύ γε ἀπαγγελῶ, ἀλλὰ διατρίψω ἔστ' ἂν ὀκνήσωσιν οἱ ἄγγελοι μὴ ἀποδόξῃ ἡμῖν τὰς σπονδὰς ποιήσασθαι. οἶμαί γε μέντοι, ἔφη, καὶ τοῖς ἡμετέροις στρατιώταις τὸν αὐτὸν φόβον παρέσεισθαι. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐδόκει καιρὸς

εἶναι, ἀπήγγελλεν ὅτι σπένδοιτο, καὶ εὐθύς ἠγγείσθαι ἐκέλευε πρὸς τὰπιτήδεια.

10. Καὶ οἱ μὲν ἠγοῦντο, Κλέαρχος μέντοι ἐπορεύετο τὰς μὲν σπονδὰς ποιησόμενος, τὸ δὲ στρατεύμα ἔχων ἐν τάξει, καὶ αὐτὸς ὠπισθοφυλάκει. καὶ ἐνετίγχανον τάφροις καὶ αὐλώσιν ὕδατος πλήρῃσι ὡς μὴ δύνασθαι διαβαίνειν ἄνευ γεφυρῶν· ἀλλ' ἐποιοῦντο διαβάσεις ἐκ τῶν φοινίκων οἱ ἦσαν ἐκπεπτωκότες, τοὺς δὲ καὶ ἐξέκοπτον. 11. καὶ ἐνταῦθα ἦν Κλέαρχον καταμαθεῖν ὡς ἐπεστάται, ἐν μὲν τῇ ἀριστερᾷ χειρὶ τὸ δόρυ ἔχων, ἐν δὲ τῇ δεξιᾷ βακτηρίαν· καὶ εἴ τις αὐτῷ δοκοίη τῶν πρὸς τοῦτο τεταγμένων βλακεύειν, ἐκλεγόμενος τὸν ἐπιτήδειον ἔπαισεν ἄν, καὶ ἅμα αὐτὸς προσελάμβανεν εἰς τὸν πηλὸν ἐμβαίνων ὥστε πᾶσιν αἰσχύνῃν εἶναι μὴ οὐ συσπουδάζειν. 12. καὶ ἐτάχθησαν μὲν πρὸς αὐτοῦ οἱ τριάκοντα ἔτη γεγονότες· ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ

III. 10. *τάφροις*. "The plain of Babylonia appears to have been in the time of Artaxerxes very much what it is in the present day—intersected by numerous canals of derivation and irrigation—but still only partially peopled and cultivated, and with only a village here and there. In the present day there are several towns, both on the Tigris and Euphrates, in Babylonia, which are surrounded by more or less extensive groves of date-trees; and almost every village, whether on the banks of the river or in the interior, neighbouring some canal of irrigation, has its grove of date-trees."—*Ainsworth*, p. 105.

11. "μὴ οὐ is used in the sense of *quominus, quin*, with infinitive: *a.* after verbs of preventing, denying, distrusting, &c. when a negation is joined with them; *b.* after *δεῖν εἶναι, αἰσχρόν, αἰσχύνῃν εἶναι, αἰσχύνεσθαι*, which imply a negative notion; *c.* after all negative notions where in Latin *quin* with conjunctive would be used."—*Jeif*, 750, obs. 2.

Κλέαρχον ἐώρων σπουδάζοντα, προσελάμβανον καὶ οἱ πρεσβύτεροι. 13. πολὺ δὲ μᾶλλον ὁ Κλέαρχος ἔσπευδεν ὑποπτεύων μὴ αἰεὶ οὕτω πλήρεις εἶναι τὰς τάφρους ὕδατος· οὐ γὰρ ἦν ὥρα οἷα τὸ πεδῖον ἄρδειν· ἀλλ' ἵνα ἤδη πολλὰ προφαίνοιτο τοῖς Ἕλλησι δεινὰ εἰς τὴν πορείαν, τούτου ἕνεκα βασιλέα ὑπώπτευεν ἐπὶ τὸ πεδῖον τὸ ὕδωρ ἀφεικέναι.

14. Πορευόμενοι δὲ ἀφίκοντο εἰς κόμας ὅθεν ἀπέδειξαν οἱ ἡγεμόνες λαμβάνειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. ἐνῆν δὲ σῖτος πολὺς καὶ οἶνος φοινίκων καὶ ὄξος ἐψηγτὸν ἀπὸ τῶν αὐτῶν. 15. αὐταὶ δὲ αἱ βάλανοι τῶν φοινίκων οἷας μὲν ἐν τοῖς Ἕλλησιν ἔστιν ἰδεῖν τοῖς οἰκέταις ἀπέκειντο, αἱ δὲ τοῖς δεσπότης ἀποκείμεναι ἦσαν ἀπόλεκτοι, θαυμάσιαι τὸ κάλλος καὶ τὸ μέγεθος, ἣ δὲ ὄψις ἡλέκτρου οὐδὲν διέφερε. τὰς δὲ τινὰς ξηραίνοντες τραγήματα ἀπετίθεισαν. καὶ ἦν καὶ παρὰ πότον ἡδὺ μὲν, κεφαλαλγὸς δέ. 16.

14. οἶνος. "Wine is not made from the fruit of the date in the same country in the present day, but spirit is distilled from it."—*Ainsworth*, p. 105.

15. "Dates, with the addition of water, afford by distillation a very good ardent spirit, which, as it does not come within the prohibition of the Koran against wine, is much used in some of the Mahomedan countries, and answers the same purpose of false excitement as the brandy or the malt spirits of other nations. Palm-wine is also made from the date: this is also without the statute of the Prophet. It is the sap or juice of the tree, and can only be obtained by its destruction; so that such trees only as are unproductive are selected for obtaining it."—*Vegetable Substances*, p. 357.

τὰς δὲ τινὰς, and some of these.

παρὰ πότον. see note on παρὰ, I. 1. 5.

ἐνταῦθα καὶ τὸν ἐγκέφαλον τοῦ φοίνικος πρῶτον ἔφαγον οἱ στρατιῶται, καὶ οἱ πολλοὶ ἐθαύμασαν τό τε εἶδος καὶ τὴν ιδιότητα τῆς ἡδονῆς. ἦν δὲ σφόδρα καὶ τοῦτο κεφαλαλγές. ὁ δὲ φοῖνιξ ὅθεν ἐξαιρεθείη ὁ ἐγκέφαλος ὅλος αὐαίνεται.

17. Ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν ἡμέρας τρεῖς· καὶ παρὰ μεγάλου βασιλέως ἦκε Τισσαφέρνης, καὶ ὁ τῆς βασιλείως γυναικὸς ἀδελφός, καὶ ἄλλοι Πέρσαι τρεῖς· δούλοι δὲ πολλοὶ εἶποντο. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀπήντησαν αὐτοῖς οἱ τῶν Ἑλλήνων στρατηγοί, ἔλεγε πρῶτος Τισσαφέρνης δι' ἑρμηνέως τοιάδε.

Tissaphernes states that, being a neighbour of the Greeks and willing to oblige them, he had begged the king to allow him to restore them to their native land; that the king had consented, but had directed him first to demand why the Greeks had made war upon him. The Greeks deliberate, and through Clearchus reply, that their original intention was not to make war upon the king, but to aid Cyrus in some secret expedition; that they were ashamed to abandon him in the hour of danger; but now that Cyrus is dead, they have no hostile intentions with regard to the king and his dominions. Tissaphernes states that he will convey their answer to the king, and return. In the meantime the truce shall continue, and a market be supplied.

16. ἐγκέφαλον. "What is called the cabbage of the palm is esculent in many of the species, and in the date among others. The cabbage is a conical tuft in the centre of the crown of leaves, and is formed of the future leaves in their undeveloped state. When the outside is removed, this part of the date-tree tastes very much like a fresh chestnut; but, like the palm-juice, it is costly, being obtained only by the destruction of the tree; and therefore it is not used except in those trees which are cut for the sake of the sap or juice."—*Vegetable Substances*, p. 358.

25. Καὶ εἰς μὲν τὴν ὑστεραίαν οὐχ ἦκεν ὥσθ' οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐφρόντιζον τῇ δὲ τρίτῃ ἡκων ἔλεγον ὅτι διαπεπραγμένος ἦκοι παρὰ βασιλέως δοθῆναι αὐτῷ σώζειν τοὺς Ἕλληνας, καίπερ πάνυ πολλῶν ἀντιλεγόντων ὡς οὐκ ἄξιον εἶη βασιλεῖ ἀφείναι τοὺς ἐφ' ἑαυτὸν στρατευσαμένους. 26. τέλος δὲ εἶπε, Καὶ νῦν ἔξεστιν ὑμῖν πιστὰ λαβεῖν παρ' ἡμῶν, ἢ μὴν φιλίαν παρέξειν ὑμῖν τὴν χώραν καὶ ἀδύλως ἀπάξειν εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα ἀγορὰν παρέχοντας. ὅπου δ' ἂν μὴ ἦ πρίασθαι, λαμβάνειν ὑμᾶς ἐκ τῆς χώρας ἐάσομεν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. 27. ὑμᾶς δ' αὖ ἡμῖν δεήσει ὁμόσαι ἢ μὴν πορεύεσθαι ὡς διὰ φιλίας ἀσυνῶς σῖτα καὶ ποτὰ λαμβάνοντας ὁπότεν μὴ ἀγορὰν παρέχωμεν ἢν δὲ παρέχωμεν ἀγορὰν, ὠνομημένους ἔξειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. 28. ταῦτα ἔδοξε, καὶ ὤμοσαν καὶ δεξιὰς ἔδοσαν Τισσαφέρνης καὶ ὁ τῆς βασιλέως γυναικὸς ἀδελφὸς τοῖς τῶν Ἑλλήνων στρατηγοῖς καὶ λοχαγοῖς, καὶ ἔλαβον παρὰ τῶν Ἑλλήνων. 29. μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα Τισσαφέρνης εἶπε, Νῦν μὲν δὴ ἄπειμι ὡς βασιλέα· ἐπειδὰν δὲ διαπράξωμαι ἢ δέομαι, ἤξω συσκευασάμενος ὡς ἀπάξων ὑμᾶς εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα, καὶ αὐτὸς ἀπιὼν ἐπὶ τὴν ἑμαυτοῦ ἀρχήν.

IV. Μετὰ ταῦτα περιέμενον Τισσαφέρνην οἷ τε Ἕλληνες καὶ Ἀριαῖος ἐγγὺς ἀλλήλων ἐστρατοπεδευμένοι ἡμέρας πλείους ἢ εἴκοσιν. ἐν δὲ ταύταις ἀφικνοῦνται πρὸς Ἀριαῖον καὶ οἱ ἀδελφοὶ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι ἀναγκαῖοι, καὶ πρὸς τοὺς σὺν ἐκείνῳ

26. ἢ μὴν = *revera*, assuredly; used to give emphasis to a solemn declaration.

Περσῶν τινες, παρεθάρσυνόν τε καὶ δεξιὰς ἐνίοις παρὰ βασιλέως ἔφερον μὴ μνησικακήσειν βασιλέα αὐτοῖς τῆς σὺν Κύρῳ ἐπιστρατείας, μηδὲ ἄλλου μηδενὸς τῶν παρῴχθιμων. 2. τούτων δὲ γυγνομένων ἔνδηλοι ἦσαν οἱ περὶ Ἀριαῖον ἦττον προσέχοντες τοῖς Ἑλλήσι τὸν νοῦν ὥστε καὶ διὰ τοῦτο τοῖς μὲν πολλοῖς τῶν Ἑλλήνων οὐκ ἤρεσκον, ἀλλὰ προσιώντες τῷ Κλεάρχῳ ἔλεγον καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις στρατηγοῖς.

They insist that the king is anxiously and secretly plotting their total destruction, and urge an immediate retreat. Clearchus points out the danger attending an open rupture with the king, and endeavours to remove their suspicions of treachery.

8. Ἐν δὲ τούτῳ ἦκε Τισσαφέρνης ἔχων τὴν ἑαυτοῦ δύναμιν ὡς εἰς οἶκον ἀπιών, καὶ Ὀρόντας τὴν ἑαυτοῦ δύναμιν ἦγε δὲ καὶ τὴν θυγατέρα τὴν βασιλέως ἐπὶ γάμφ. 9. ἐντεῦθεν δὲ ἤδη Τισσαφέρνους ἡγουμένου καὶ ἀγορὰν παρέχοντος ἐπορεύοντο· ἐπορεύετο δὲ καὶ Ἀριαῖος τὸ Κύρου βαρβαρικὸν ἔχων στράτευμα ἅμα Τισσαφέρνει καὶ Ὀρόντα, καὶ ξυνεστρατοπεδεύετο σὺν ἐκείνοις. 10. οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες ὑφορῶντες τούτους αὐτοὶ ἐφ' ἑαυτῶν ἐχώρουν ἡγεμόνας ἔχοντες. ἐστρατοπεδεύοντο δὲ ἐκάστοτε ἀπέχοντες ἀλλήλων παρασάγγην καὶ μείον. ἐφυλάττοντο δὲ ἀμφοτέροι ὥσπερ πολεμίους ἀλλήλους, καὶ εὐθύς τοῦτο ὑποψίαν παρέειχεν. 11. ἐνίοτε δὲ καὶ ξυλιζόμενοι ἐκ τοῦ αὐτοῦ, καὶ χόρτον καὶ ἄλλα τοιαῦτα ξυλλέγοντες, πλεγάς ἐνέτεινον ἀλλήλοις ὥστε καὶ τοῦτο ἔχ-

θραν παρείχε. 12. διελθόντες δὲ τρεῖς σταθμούς ἀφίκοντο πρὸς τὸ Μηδίας καλούμενον τεῖχος, καὶ παρήλθον εἰσὼ αὐτοῦ. ἦν δὲ ᾠκοδομημένον πλίνθοις ὀπταῖς ἐν ἀσφάλτῳ κειμέναις, εὖρος εἴκοσι ποδῶν, ὕψος δὲ ἑκατόν· μῆκος δ' ἐλέγετο εἶναι εἴκοσι παρασαγγῶν· ἀπέχει δὲ Βαβυλῶνος οὐ πολὺ. 13. ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν σταθμούς δύο παρασάγγας ὀκτώ, καὶ διέβησαν διώρυχας δύο, τὴν μὲν ἐπὶ γεφύρας, τὴν δ' ἐξευγμένην πλοίοις

IV. 12. τὸ Μηδίας καλούμενον τεῖχος. The Median wall has generally been identified with the Sidd Nimrud, a name given by the present inhabitants of the country to the remains of some extensive works commencing near the river Tigris, in lat. 34° 3' 30", and about 21' 50" W. of Baghdad. It is described as being from thirty to forty feet in height, and running in a straight line N.N.E. and S.S.W. The identification of these remains with the wall of Media renders the narrative of Xenophon confused and unintelligible. Recent researches have shewn that the supposition rests upon a very slight foundation. "Captain Jones, commander of the steamer at Baghdad, undertook, at the request of Colonel Rawlinson, a minute examination of the locality, and ascertained that what had been laid down as the wall of Media was merely a line of mounds; no wall at all, but a mere embankment, extending seven or eight miles from the Tigris, and designed to arrest the winter-torrents and drain off the rain-water of the desert into a large reservoir, which served to irrigate an extensive valley between the rivers."—*Grote*, ix. p. 89. In the map which accompanies this work the wall of Media is supposed to have run in a direction N.W. and S.E., and nearly parallel to the course of the Tigris. An explanation of the reasons which have induced the editors to adopt this position, for which they are indebted to the kindness of Professor Malden, would obviously be unsuited to an elementary work like the present.

13. διώρυχας δύο. These canals were probably the *Saklawegah* and the *Ishaki*, both of considerable size.

ἑπτὰ αὐται δ' ἦσαν ἀπὸ τοῦ Τύγρητος ποταμοῦ κατετέμνητο δὲ ἐξ αὐτῶν καὶ τάφροι ἐπὶ τὴν χώραν, αἱ μὲν πρῶται μεγάλαι, ἔπειτα δ' ἐλάττους, τέλος δὲ καὶ μικροὶ ὄχετοὶ ὥσπερ ἐν τῇ Ἑλλάδι ἐπὶ τὰς μελίνας· καὶ ἀφικνοῦνται ἐπὶ τὸν Τύγρητα ποταμόν, πρὸς ᾧ πόλις ἦν μεγάλη καὶ πολυάνθρωπος ἣ ὄνομα Σιττάκη, ἀπέχουσα τοῦ ποταμοῦ σταδίου πεντεκαίδεκα. 14. οἱ μὲν οὖν Ἕλληνες παρ' αὐτὴν ἐσκήνησαν ἐγγὺς παραδείσου μεγάλου καὶ καλοῦ καὶ δασέος παντοίων δένδρων· οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι διαβεβηκότες τὸν Τύγρητα οὐ μέντοι καταφανεῖς ἦσαν.

15. Μετὰ δὲ τὸ δεῖπνον ἔτυχον ἐν περιπάτῳ ὄντες πρὸ τῶν ὄπλων Πρόξενος καὶ Ξενοφῶν· καὶ προσελθὼν ἄνθρωπός τις ἠρώτησε τοὺς προφύλακας ποῦ ἂν ἴδοι Πρόξενον ἢ Κλέαρχον· Μένωνας δὲ οὐκ ἐξήτει, καὶ ταῦτα παρ' Ἀριαίου ὦν τοῦ Μένωνος ξένου. 16. ἐπεὶ δὲ Πρόξενος εἶπεν ὅτι αὐτός εἰμι ὃν ζητεῖς, εἶπεν ὁ ἄνθρωπος τάδε. Ἐπεμψέ με Ἀριαῖος καὶ Ἀρτάοζος, πιστοὶ ὄντες Κύρῳ καὶ ὑμῖν εὖνοι, καὶ κελεύουσι φυλάττεσθαι μὴ ὑμῖν ἐπιθῶνται τῆς νυκτὸς οἱ βάρβαροι· ἔστι δὲ στράτευμα πολὺ ἐν τῷ πλησίον παραδείσῳ. 17. καὶ παρὰ τὴν γέφυραν τοῦ Τύγρητος ποταμοῦ πέμψαι κελεύουσι φυλακὴν, ὡς διανοεῖται αὐτὴν λῦσαι Τισσαφέρνης τῆς νυκτὸς, εἰάν δύνηται, ὡς μὴ διαβῆτε ἄλλ' ἐν μέσῳ ἀποληφθῆτε τοῦ ποταμοῦ καὶ τῆς διώρυχος. 18. ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα ἄγουσιν αὐτὸν παρὰ τὸν Κλέαρχον καὶ φράζουσιν ἃ λέγει. ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος ἀκούσας ἐταράχθη σφόδρα

καὶ ἐφοβεῖτο. 19. νεανίσκος δέ τις τῶν παρόντων ἐννοήσας εἶπεν ὡς οὐκ ἀκόλουθα εἶη τό τε ἐπιθήσασθαι καὶ λύσειν τὴν γέφυραν. δῆλον γὰρ ὅτι ἐπιτιθεμένους ἢ νικᾶν δεήσει ἢ ἡττᾶσθαι. ἐὰν μὲν οὖν νικῶσι, τί δεῖ αὐτοὺς λύειν τὴν γέφυραν; οὐδὲ γὰρ ἂν πολλαὶ γέφυραι ὧσιν ἔχοιμεν ἂν ὅποι φυγόντες ἡμεῖς σωθῶμεν. 20. ἐὰν δὲ ἡμεῖς νικῶμεν, λελυμένης τῆς γεφύρας οὐχ ἔξουσιν ἐκεῖνοι ὅποι φύγωσιν· οὐδὲ μὴν βοηθήσαι πολλῶν ὄντων πέραν οὐδεὶς αὐτοῖς δυνήσεται λελυμένης τῆς γεφύρας.

21. Ἀκούσας δὲ ὁ Κλέαρχος ταῦτα ἤρητο τὸν ἄγγελον πόση τις εἶη χώρα ἢ ἐν μέσῳ τοῦ Τύγρητος καὶ τῆς διώρυχος. ὁ δὲ εἶπεν ὅτι πολλή, καὶ κῶμαι ἔνεισι καὶ πόλεις πολλαὶ καὶ μεγάλαι. 22. τότε δὴ καὶ ἐγνώσθη ὅτι οἱ βάρβαροι τὸν ἀνθρώπον ὑποπέμψαιεν, ὀκνοῦντες μὴ οἱ Ἕλληνες διελόντες τὴν γέφυραν μένοιεν ἐν τῇ νήσῳ ἐρύματα ἔχοντες ἔνθεν μὲν τὸν Τύγρητα, ἔνθεν δὲ τὴν διώρυχα· τὰ δ' ἐπιτήδεια ἔχιοιεν ἐκ τῆς ἐν μέσῳ χώρας πολλῆς καὶ ἀγαθῆς οὐσης, καὶ τῶν ἐργασομένων ἐνότων· εἶτα δὲ καὶ ἀποστροφή γένοιτο εἴ τις βούλοιο βασιλέα κακῶς ποιεῖν. 23. μετὰ ταῦτα ἀνεπαύοντο· ἐπὶ μὲντοι τὴν γέφυραν ὁμῶς φυλακὴν ἐπεμψαν· καὶ οὔτε ἐπέθετο οὐδεὶς οὐδαμόθεν, οὔτε πρὸς τὴν γέφυραν οὐδεὶς ἦλθε τῶν πολεμίων, ὡς οἱ φυλάττοντες ἀπήγγελλον. 24. ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἕως ἐγένετο, διέβαινον τὴν γέφυραν ἐξευγμένην πλοίοις τριάκοντα καὶ ἑπτὰ ὡς οἶόν τε μάλιστα πεφυλαγμένως· ἐξήγγελλον γὰρ τινες

τῶν παρὰ Τισσαφέρνους Ἑλλήνων ὡς διαβαιόντων μέλλοιεν ἐπιθήσεσθαι. ἀλλὰ ταῦτα μὲν ψευδῆ ἦν διαβαιόντων μέντοι ὁ Γλοῦς αὐτοῖς ἐπεφάνη μετ' ἄλλων σκοπῶν εἰ διαβαίνοιεν τὸν ποταμόν ἐπειδὴ δὲ εἶδεν, ὄχητο ἀπελαύνων.

25. Ἀπὸ δὲ τοῦ Τύγρητος ἐπορεύθησαν σταθμοὺς τέτταρας παρασάγγας εἴκοσιν ἐπὶ τὸν Φύσκον ποταμόν, τὸ εὖρος πλέθρον· ἐπὴν δὲ γέφυρα. καὶ ἐνταῦθα ὤκειτο πόλις μεγάλη ἢ ὄνομα Ἰωπὶς· πρὸς ἣν ἀπήνησε τοῖς Ἑλλησιν ὁ Κύρου καὶ Ἀρταξέρξου νόθος ἀδελφὸς ἀπὸ Σούσων καὶ Ἐκβατάνων στρατιὰν πολλὴν ἄγων ὡς βοηθήσων βασιλεῖ· καὶ ἐπιστήσας τὸ ἑαυτοῦ στράτευμα παρερχομένους τοὺς Ἑλληνας ἐθεώρει. 26. ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος ἡγεῖτο μὲν εἰς δύο, ἐπορεύετο δὲ ἄλλοτε καὶ ἄλλοτε ἐφιστάμενος. ὅσον δὲ [ἀν] χρόνον τὸ ἡγούμενον τοῦ στρατεύματος ἐπιστήσειε, τοσοῦτον ἦν ἀνάγκη χρόνον δι' ὅλου τοῦ στρατεύματος γίνεσθαι τὴν ἐπίστασιν· ὥστε τὸ στράτευμα καὶ αὐτοῖς τοῖς Ἑλλησι δόξαι ἀμπολυ εἶναι, καὶ τὸν Πέρσῃν ἐκπεπλήχθαι θεωροῦντα. 27. ἐντεῦθεν δὲ ἐπορεύθησαν διὰ τῆς Μηδιάς σταθμοὺς ἐρήμους ἕξ παρασάγγας τριάκοντα εἰς τὰς Παρυσάτιδος κώμας τῆς Κύρου καὶ βασιλέως μητρός. ταύτας Τισσαφέρνης Κύρῳ ἐπεγγελῶν διαρπάσαι τοῖς Ἑλλησιν ἐπέτρεψε πλὴν ἀνδραπόδων. ἐνῆν δὲ σίτος πολὺς καὶ πρόβατα καὶ ἄλλα χρήματα. 28. ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν σταθμοὺς ἐρήμους τέτταρας παρασάγγας εἴκοσι τὸν Τύγρητα ποταμόν

26. εἰς δύο. see note on εἰς, I. 1. 3.

ἐν ἀριστεράῳ ἔχοντες. ἐν δὲ τῷ πρώτῳ σταθμῷ πέραν τοῦ ποταμοῦ πόλις ᾠκεῖτο μεγάλη καὶ εὐδαίμων ὄνομα Καιναί, ἐξ ἧς οἱ βάρβαροι διήγον ἐπὶ σχεδίαις διφθερίναις ἄρτους, τυρούς, οἶνον.

V. Μετὰ ταῦτα ἀφικνοῦνται ἐπὶ τὸν Ζάπαταν ποταμόν, τὸ εὖρος τεττάρων πλέθρων. καὶ ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν ἡμέρας τρεῖς· ἐν δὲ ταύταις ὑποψίαι μὲν ἦσαν, φανερά δὲ οὐδεμίᾳ ἐφαίνετο ἐπιβουλή. 2. ἔδοξεν οὖν τῷ Κλεάρχῳ ξυγγενέσθαι τῷ Τισσαφέρνει καὶ εἶ πως δύναιτο παῦσαι τὰς ὑποψίας πρὶν ἐξ αὐτῶν πόλεμον γενέσθαι· καὶ ἔπεμψε τινα ἐροῦντα ὅτι ξυγγενέσθαι αὐτῷ χρήξει. ὁ δὲ ἐτόίμως ἐκέλευεν ἤκειν.

Clearchus states that he was anxious, by a personal interview with Tissaphernes, to remove the misunderstanding existing between the two armies. He proceeds to shew that any act of treachery on the part of the Greeks would be a direct violation of the laws of God and man; that, in their present difficult and dangerous position, to wrong the only man who could aid them would be an act of foolish impolicy; and concludes by indicating the advantages Tissaphernes might derive from the assistance of the Greek auxiliaries. Tissaphernes states in reply, that with the means at his disposal it was in his power at any time to destroy the Greek force, and that it was consequently absurd to suppose that he would incur the vengeance of heaven by any violation of the oaths which they

28. ἐπὶ σχεδίαις διφθερίναις. "The actual ferry over the river, performed by means of rafts supported on inflated skins, exists in the present day at a place called Kélék I'zedi, or the ferry of the I'zedis or Yezedis, from the village adjacent to it being inhabited by that curious sect of Kurds."—*Ainsworth*, p. 119.

had mutually sworn. He proposes a conference of the leading men on both sides, that each may point out those who had endeavoured to create suspicion and distrust between them.

27. Ἐκ τούτων δὴ τῶν λόγων ὁ Τισσαφέρνης φιλοφρονούμενος τότε μὲν μένειν τε αὐτὸν ἐκέλευσε καὶ σύνδειπνον ἐποίησατο. τῇ δὲ ὑστεραία ὁ Κλέαρχος ἔλθων ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον δῆλός τ' ἦν πάνυ φιλικῶς οἴομενος διακείσθαι τῷ Τισσαφέρνει, καὶ ἃ ἔλεγεν ἐκείνος ἀπήγγελλεν, ἔφη τε χρῆναι ἰέναι παρὰ Τισσαφέρνην οὐδ' ἐκέλευσε, καὶ οἱ ἂν ἐλεγχθῶσι διαβάλλοντες τῶν Ἑλλήνων, ὡς προδότας αὐτοὺς καὶ κακόνους τοῖς Ἑλλήσιν ὄντας τιμωρηθῆναι. 28. ὑπώπτετε δὲ εἶναι τὸν διαβάλλοντα Μένωνα, εἰδὼς αὐτὸν καὶ συγγεγεννημένον Τισσαφέρνει μετ' Ἀριαίου καὶ στασιάζοντα αὐτῷ καὶ ἐπιβουλεύοντα, ὅπως τὸ στράτευμα ἅπαν πρὸς ἑαυτὸν λαβῶν φίλος ἦ Τισσαφέρνει. 29. ἐβούλετο δὲ καὶ ὁ Κλέαρχος ἅπαν τὸ στράτευμα πρὸς ἑαυτὸν ἔχειν τὴν γνώμην, καὶ τοὺς παραλυποῦντας ἐκποδῶν εἶναι. τῶν δὲ στρατιωτῶν ἀντέλεγον τινες αὐτῷ μὴ ἰέναι πάντας τοὺς λοχαγούς καὶ στρατηγούς μηδὲ πιστεύειν Τισσαφέρνει. 30. ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος ἰσχυρῶς κατέτεινεν, ἔστε διεπράξατο πέντε μὲν στρατηγούς ἰέναι, εἴκοσι δὲ λοχαγούς· συνηκολούθησαν δὲ ὡς εἰς ἀγορὰν καὶ τῶν ἄλλων στρατιωτῶν ὡς διακόσιοι.

31. Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦσαν ἐπὶ ταῖς θύραις ταῖς Τισσα-

V. 27. πάνυ φιλικῶς διακείσθαι τῷ Τισσαφέρνει, *that a very friendly feeling existed between him and Tissaphernes.*

φέρνους, οἱ μὲν στρατηγοὶ παρεκλήθησαν εἶσω, Πρόξενος Βοιωτίας, Μένων Θετταλός, Ἀγίας Ἀρκάς, Κλέαρχος Λάκων, Σωκράτης Ἀχαιοί· οἱ δὲ λοχαγοὶ ἐπὶ ταῖς θύραις ἔμενον. 32. οὐ πολλῶν δὲ ὕστερον ἀπὸ τοῦ αὐτοῦ σημείου οἳ τ' ἔνδον ξυνελαμβάνοντο καὶ οἱ ἔξω κατεκόπησαν. μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα τῶν βαρβάρων τινὲς ἰππέων διὰ τοῦ πεδίου ἐλαύνοντες ᾧτινι ἐντυγχάνοιεν Ἑλληνι ἢ δούλῳ ἢ ἐλευθέρῳ πάντας ἔκτεινον. 33. οἱ δὲ Ἑλληνες τὴν τε ἰππασίαν αὐτῶν ἐθαύμαζον ἐκ τοῦ στρατοπέδου ὁρῶντες καὶ ὅ,τι ἐποιοῦν ἡμφιγνόουν, πρὶν Νίκαρχος Ἀρκάς ἤκε φεύγων τετρωμένος εἰς τὴν γαστέρα καὶ τὰ ἔντερα ἐν ταῖς χερσὶν ἔχων, καὶ εἶπε πάντα τὰ γεγενημένα. 34. ἐκ τούτου δὴ οἱ Ἑλληνες ἔθεον ἐπὶ τὰ ὄπλα πάντες ἐκπεπληγμένοι καὶ νομίζοντες αὐτίκα ἤξειν αὐτοὺς ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον. 35. οἱ δὲ πάντες μὲν οὐκ ἦλθον, Ἀριαῖος δὲ καὶ Ἀρτάζος καὶ Μιθριδάτης, οἳ ἦσαν Κύρῳ πιστότατοι· ὁ δὲ τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἑρμηνεύς ἔφη καὶ τὸν Τισσαφέρνους ἀδελφὸν σὺν αὐτοῖς ὁρᾶν καὶ γινώσκειν· ξυνηκολούθουν δὲ καὶ ἄλλοι Περσῶν τεθωρακισμένοι εἰς τριακοσίους. 36. οὗτοι ἐπεὶ ἐγγύς ἦσαν, προσελθεῖν ἐκέλευον εἴ τις εἴη τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἢ στρατηγὸς ἢ λοχαγός, ἵνα ἀπαγγείλωσι τὰ παρὰ βασιλέως. 37. μετὰ ταῦτα ἐξῆλθον φυλαττόμενοι τῶν Ἑλλήνων στρατηγοὶ μὲν Κλεάνωρ Ὀρχομένιος καὶ Σοφαίνετος Στυμφάλιος, ξὺν αὐτοῖς δὲ Ξενοφῶν Ἀθηναῖος, ὅπως μάθοι τὰ περὶ Προξένου· Χειρίσοφος δ' ἐτύγχανεν ἀπὸν ἐν κώμῃ τινὶ ξὺν ἄλλοις ἐπισιτιζόμενος.

38. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἔστησαν εἰς ἐπήκοον, εἶπεν Ἀριαῖος τὰδε. Κλέαρχος μὲν, ὦ ἄνδρες Ἕλληνες, ἐπεὶ ἐπιπορκῶν τε ἐφάνη καὶ τὰς σπονδὰς λύων, ἔχει τὴν δίκην καὶ τέθηκε, Πρόξενος δὲ καὶ Μένων ὅτι κατήγγειλαν αὐτοῦ τὴν ἐπιβουλήν ἐν μεγάλῃ τιμῇ εἰσιν. ὑμᾶς δὲ ὁ βασιλεὺς τὰ ὄπλα ἀπαιτεῖ· αὐτοῦ γὰρ εἶναί φησιν, ἐπεὶ περ Κύρου ἦσαν τοῦ ἐκείνου δούλου.

39. Πρὸς ταῦτα ἀπεκρίναντο οἱ Ἕλληνες, ἔλεγε δὲ Κλεάρχω ὁ Ὀρχομένιος· Ὡ κάκιστε ἀνθρώπων Ἀριαῖε καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι ὅσοι ἦτε Κύρου φίλοι, οὐκ αἰσχύνεσθε οὔτε θεοὺς οὔτ' ἀνθρώπους, οἵτινες ὁμοσάτεες ἡμῖν τοὺς αὐτοὺς φίλους καὶ ἐχθροὺς νομίζετε. προδόντες ἡμᾶς σὺν Τισσαφέρει τῷ ἀθεωτάτῳ τε καὶ πανουργιάτῳ τοὺς τε ἄνδρας αὐτοὺς ὡς ἴσταντε ἀπολλύεσθε καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους ἡμᾶς προδεδρακότες ξὺν τοῖς πολεμίοις ἐφ' ἡμᾶς ἔρχεσθε. 40. ὁ δὲ Ἀριαῖος εἶπε, Κλεάρχω γὰρ πρόσθεν ἐπιβουλεύων φανερῶς ἐγένετο Τισσαφέρει τε καὶ Ὀρχομένει, καὶ ταῦτα ἡμῖν τοῖς ξὺν ταῖσι. 41. εἰς ταῦτα Σοσάνης τὰδε εἶπε. Κλεάρχω μὲν γούνη εἰ παρὰ τοὺς ὄμους ἔλεγε τὴν στυγίαν, τὴν δίκην ἔχει· ὁμοίαν γὰρ ἀπαλλασθῆναι τοὺς ἐπιπορκήσαντας· Πρόξενος δὲ καὶ Μένων εἰσαίτε εἰσὶν ἡμετέρας μὲν εἰρημέτας, ἡμετέρας δὲ στρατηγούς, πομπάτε αὐτοὺς δεῖμα· ὄπλων γὰρ ὅτι φίλοι γε ἄντε· ἡμῶν τε καὶ περικλυτῶν καὶ ἡμῶν καὶ ἡμῶν τὰ ζελευτάτα ζυμίζουσαν. 42. τῶν ταῦτα οἱ Σοσάνης τολῶν χυμῶν ἡμετέρησιν ἀλλήλους ἀπαλλάξαι αὐτῶν ἀποκρημνίσαντα.

VI. Οἱ μὲν δὴ στρατηγοὶ οὕτω ληφθέντες ἀνήχθησαν ὡς βασιλέα καὶ ἀποτμηθέντες τὰς κεφαλὰς ἐτελεύτησαν, εἰς μὲν αὐτῶν Κλέαρχος ὁμολογουμένως ἐκ πάντων τῶν ἐμπείρως αὐτοῦ ἐχόντων δόξας γενέσθαι ἀνὴρ καὶ πολεμικὸς καὶ φιλοπόλεμος ἐσχάτως.

Xenophon proceeds to review the characters of Clearchus, Proxenus, Menon, and Agias. See *Index*.

Γ.

I. Ὅσα μὲν δὴ ἐν τῇ ἀναβάσει τῇ μετὰ Κύρου οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔπραξαν μέχρι τῆς μάχης, καὶ ὅσα ἐπεὶ Κύρος ἐτελεύτησεν ἐγένετο ἀπίοντων τῶν Ἑλλήνων σὺν Τισσαφέρνει ἐν ταῖς σπονδαῖς, ἐν τῷ πρόσθεν λόγῳ δεδήλωται. 2. ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ τε στρατηγοὶ συνειλημμένοι ἦσαν καὶ τῶν λοχαγῶν καὶ τῶν στρατιωτῶν οἱ συνεπόμενοι ἀπολώλεσαν, ἐν πολλῇ δὴ ἀπορίᾳ ἦσαν οἱ Ἕλληνες, ἐννοοῦμενοι μὲν ὅτι ἐπὶ ταῖς βασιλέως θύραις ἦσαν, κύκλω δὲ αὐτοῖς πάντῃ πολλὰ καὶ ἔθνη καὶ πόλεις πολέμιοι ἦσαν, ἀγορὰν δὲ οὐδεὶς ἔτι παρέξειν ἔμελλεν, ἀπεῖχον δὲ τῆς Ἑλλάδος οὐ μείον ἢ μύρια στάδια, ἡγεμῶν δ' οὐδεὶς τῆς ὁδοῦ ἦν, ποταμοὶ δὲ διεῖργον ἀδιάβατοι ἐν μέσῳ τῆς οἴκαδε ὁδοῦ, προὔδεδώ-

VI. 1. ἐκ πάντων . . . δόξας, considered by all who were acquainted with him. αὐτοῦ is governed by ἐμπείρως ἐχόντων, for which see I. 1. 5.

κεσαν δὲ αὐτοὺς καὶ οἱ σὺν Κύρῳ ἀναβάντες βάρβαροι, μόνοι δὲ καταλελειμμένοι ἦσαν οὐδὲ ἰππέα οὐδένα σύμμαχον ἔχοντες, ὥστε εὐδηλον ἦν ὅτι νικῶντες μὲν οὐδένα ἂν κατακάνοιεν, ἡττηθέντων δὲ αὐτῶν οὐδεὶς ἂν λειφθείη. 3. ταῦτα ἐννοούμενοι καὶ ἀθύμως ἔχοντες ὀλίγοι μὲν αὐτῶν εἰς τὴν ἐσπέραν σίτου ἐγεύσαντο, ὀλίγοι δὲ πῦρ ἀνέκαυσαν, ἐπὶ δὲ τὰ ὄπλα πολλοὶ οὐκ ἤλθον ταύτην τὴν νύκτα, ἀνεπαύοντο δὲ ὅπου ἐτύγχανεν ἕκαστος, οὐ δυνάμενοι καθεύδειν ὑπὸ λύπης καὶ πόθου πατρίδων, γονέων, γυναικῶν, παιδῶν, οὓς οὔ ποτ' ἐνόμιζον ἔτι ὄψεσθαι. οὕτω μὲν δὴ διακείμενοι πάντες ἀνεπαύοντο.

4. Ἦν δέ τις ἐν τῇ στρατιᾷ Ξενοφῶν Ἀθηναῖος, ὃς οὔτε στρατηγὸς οὔτε λοχαγὸς οὔτε στρατιώτης ὢν συνηκολούθει, ἀλλὰ Πρόξενος αὐτὸν μετεπέμψατο οἴκοθεν ξένος ὢν ἀρχαῖος· ὑπισχνεῖτο δὲ αὐτῷ, εἰ ἔλθοι, φίλον αὐτὸν Κύρῳ ποιήσειν, ὃν αὐτὸς ἔφη κρείττω ἑαυτῷ νομίζειν τῆς πατρίδος. 5. ὁ μέντοι Ξενοφῶν ἀναγνούς τὴν ἐπιστολὴν ἀνακοινοῦται Σωκράτει τῷ Ἀθηναίῳ περὶ τῆς πορείας. καὶ ὁ Σωκράτης ὑποπτεύσας μὴ τι πρὸς τῆς πόλεως οἱ ἐπαίτιον εἶη Κύρῳ φίλον γενέσθαι, ὅτι ἐδόκει ὁ Κύρος προθύμως τοῖς Λακεδαιμονίοις ἐπὶ τὰς Ἀθήνας συμπολεμήσαι, συμβουλεύει τῷ Ξενοφῶντι ἐλθόντα εἰς Δελφοὺς ἀνακοινῶσαι τῷ θεῷ περὶ τῆς πορείας. 6. ἐλθὼν δ' ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἐπήρητο τὸν Ἀπόλλω τίνι ἂν θεῶν θύων καὶ εὐχόμενος

I. 6. ἐπήρητο. ἐπερωτᾶν is to ask a question grounded on something preceding: ἐρωτᾶ is simply, I ask a question; ἐπερωτᾶ, thereupon I ask. cf. I. 7. 9.

κάλλιστα καὶ ἄριστα ἔλθοι τὴν ὁδὸν ἣν ἐπινοεῖ καὶ καλῶς πράξας σωθείη. καὶ ἀνεΐλεν αὐτῷ ὁ Ἀπόλλων θεοῖς οἷς ἔδει θύειν. 7. ἐπεὶ δὲ πάλιν ἦλθε, λέγει τὴν μαντεῖαν τῷ Σωκράτει. ὁ δ' ἀκούσας ἠτιᾶτο αὐτὸν ὅτι οὐ τοῦτο πρῶτον ἠρώτα, πότερον λῶον εἶη αὐτῷ πορευέσθαι ἢ μένειν, ἀλλ' αὐτὸς κρίνας ἰτέον εἶναι τοῦτ' ἐπυνθάνετο ὅπως ἂν κάλλιστα πορευθείη. ἐπεὶ μέντοι οὕτως ἦρου, ταῦτ', ἔφη, χρὴ ποιεῖν ὅσα ὁ θεὸς ἐκέλευσεν. 8. ὁ μὲν δὴ Ξενοφῶν οὕτω θυσάμενος οἷς ἀνεΐλεν ὁ θεὸς ἐξέπλει, καὶ καταλαμβάνει ἐν Σάρδεσι Προξένου καὶ Κύρου μέλλοντας ἤδη ὁρμᾶν τὴν ἄνω ὁδόν, καὶ συνεστάθη Κύρω. 9. προθυμουμένου δὲ τοῦ Προξένου καὶ ὁ Κύρος συμπροϋθυμεῖτο μείναι αὐτόν. εἶπε δὲ ὅτι, ἐπειδὴν τάχιστα ἡ στρατεία λήξῃ, εὐθὺς ἀποπέμψειν αὐτόν. ἐλέγετο δὲ ὁ στόλος εἶναι εἰς Πισιδας.

10. Ἐστρατεύετο μὲν δὴ οὕτως ἐξαπατηθεὶς οὐχ ὑπὸ Προξένου· οὐ γὰρ ἤδει τὴν ἐπὶ βασιλέα ὁρμῆν, οὐδὲ ἄλλος οὐδεὶς τῶν Ἑλλήνων πλὴν Κλεάρχου· ἐπεὶ μέντοι εἰς Κιλικίαν ἦλθον, σαφὲς πᾶσιν ἤδη ἐδόκει εἶναι ὅτι ὁ στόλος εἶη ἐπὶ βασιλέα. φοβούμενοι δὲ τὴν ὁδὸν καὶ ἄκοντες ὅμως οἱ πολλοὶ δι' αἰσχύνην καὶ ἀλλήλων καὶ Κύρου συνηκολούθησαν· ὧν εἰς καὶ Ξενοφῶν ἦν. 11. ἐπεὶ

καλῶς πράττειν or *εὖ πράττειν*, to fare well; *εὖ ποιεῖν*, to do good to another.

θεοῖς. Observe that the object of the verb is attracted into the same case as the relative.

9. *ὅτι . . . ἀποπέμψειν*. Our author seems to have forgotten that he began the subjoined sentence with *ὅτι*.

δὲ ἀπορία ἦν, ἐλπεῖτο μὲν σὺν τοῖς ἄλλοις καὶ οὐκ ἐδύνατο καθεῦδειν μικρὸν δ' ὕπνου λαχὼν εἶδεν ὄναρ. ἔδοξεν αὐτῷ βροντῆς γενομένης σκηπτὸς πεσεῖν εἰς τὴν πατρῴαν οἰκίαν, καὶ ἐκ τούτου λάμπεσθαι πᾶσαν. 12. περίφοβος δ' εὐθύς ἀνηγγέρθη, καὶ τὸ ὄναρ πῆ μὲν ἔκρινεν ἀγαθόν, ὅτι ἐν πόνοις ὧν καὶ κινδύνοις φῶς μέγα ἐκ Διὸς ἰδεῖν ἔδοξε πῆ δὲ καὶ ἐφοβείτο, ὅτι ἀπὸ Διὸς μὲν βασιλέως τὸ ὄναρ ἐδόκει αὐτῷ εἶναι, κύκλω δὲ ἐδόκει λάμπεσθαι τὸ πῦρ, μὴ οὐ δύναιτο ἐκ τῆς χώρας ἐξελεῖν τῆς βασιλείας, ἀλλ' εἴργαστο πάντοθεν ὑπὸ τινων ἀποριῶν.

Xenophon, after reflecting on the forlorn condition of the Greeks, convoke the captains who served under Proxenus, shews them how little they have to expect from the mercy of the king, how slender their resources are compared with those of the enemy, and how urgent the necessity to adopt energetic measures for their defence. The captains, with the exception of a certain Apollonides, who urged submission to the king as their only means of safety, unanimously elect him as their commander. Xenophon exposes the folly of the proposal of Apollonides. A general meeting of about a hundred officers is held at midnight, and Xenophon having been called upon to address them, recommends them to remove the depression of the soldiers by avoiding despondency, and to elect officers to supply the places of those they had lost. Their various equipments Xenophon, and urges the adoption of his advice.

The election being concluded, the guards were set, and the soldiers summoned to a general meeting. After a brief address from Chersidromus, Xenophon denounces the unwise proposals of the Persians. His is followed by Xenophon, who reminds them of the numerous deeds

of their ancestors, points out the real weakness of the Persian monarch in his own dominions, and the expediency of returning to Greece; recommends that the wagons, tents, and superfluous baggage should be destroyed; and concludes by shewing the necessity for strict discipline and cheerful obedience.

Xenophon's proposition is adopted. He then suggests that, for security on the march, the hoplites shall form a hollow square, enclosing the baggage and camp-followers; that Cheirisophus shall command the van, two of the oldest generals the flanks, and the two youngest, Timasion and himself, the rear.

III. Τούτων λεχθέντων ἀνέστησαν, καὶ ἀπελθόντες κατέκαιον τὰς ὑμάξας καὶ τὰς σκηνάς, τῶν δὲ περιπτῶν ὅτου μὲν δέοιτό τις μετεδίδοσαν ἀλλήλοις, τὰ δὲ ἄλλα εἰς τὸ πῦρ ἐρρίπτουν. ταῦτα ποιήσαντες ἡριστοποιοῦντο. ἀριστοποιουμένων δὲ αὐτῶν ἔρχεται Μιθριδάτης σὺν ἱππεύσιν ὡς τριάκοντα, καὶ καλεσάμενος τοὺς στρατηγούς εἰς ἐπήκοον λέγει ὧδε. 2. Ἐγώ, ὦ ἄνδρες Ἕλληνες, καὶ Κύρῳ πιστὸς ἦν, ὡς ὑμεῖς ἐπίστασθε, καὶ νῦν ὑμῖν εὖνους· καὶ ἐνθάδε εἰμὶ σὺν πολλῷ φόβῳ διάγων. εἰ οὖν ὀρώην ὑμᾶς σωτήριόν τι βουλευομένους, ἔλθοιμι ἂν πρὸς ὑμᾶς καὶ τοὺς θεράποντας πάντας ἔχων. λέξατε οὖν πρὸς με τί ἐν νῷ ἔχετε ὡς φίλον τε καὶ εὖνουν καὶ βουλόμενον κοινῇ σὺν ὑμῖν τὸν στόλον ποιεῖσθαι. 3. βουλευομένοις τοῖς στρατηγοῖς ἔδοξεν ἀποκρίνασθαι τάδε· καὶ ἔλεγε

III. 1. ἐρρίπτουν. this is the usual form for the past imp.; pres. imp. ῥίπτω and ῥιπτίω. The other tenses are formed from root ῥιπ.; ἐρρίπτων is found in IV. 8. 3.

Χειρίσοφος Ἡμῖν δοκεῖ, εἰ μὲν τις ἐὰ ἡμᾶς ἀπι-
 ἐναι οἴκαδε, διαπορεύεσθαι τὴν χώραν ὡς ἂν
 δυνώμεθα ἀσινέστατα· ἦν δὲ τις ἡμᾶς τῆς ὁδοῦ
 ἀποκωλύη, διαπολεμῆναι τούτῳ ὡς ἂν δυνώμεθα
 κράτιστα. 4. ἐκ τούτου ἐπειρᾶτο Μιθριδάτης
 διδάσκειν ὡς ἄπορον εἶη βασιλέως ἄκοντος σωθῆ-
 ναι. ἔνθα δὲ ἐγγινώσκετο ὅτι ὑπόπεμπτος εἶη·
 καὶ γὰρ τῶν Τισσαφέρνους τις οἰκέων παρηκο-
 λούθει πίστεως ἕνεκα. 5. καὶ ἐκ τούτου ἐδόκει
 τοῖς στρατηγοῖς βέλτιον εἶναι δόγμα ποιήσασθαι
 τὸν πόλεμον ἀκήρυκτον εἶναι ἔστ' ἐν τῇ πολεμίᾳ
 εἶεν. διέφθειρον γὰρ προσιόντες τοὺς στρατιώτας,
 καὶ ἓνα γε λοχαγὸν διέφθειραν Νίκαρχον Ἀρκάδα,
 καὶ ὄχθετο ἀπιῶν νυκτὸς σὺν ἀνθρώποις ὡς εἴκοσι.

6. Μετὰ ταῦτα ἀριστήσαντες καὶ διαβάντες
 τὸν Ζαπάταν ποταμὸν ἐπορεύοντο τεταγμένοι τὰ
 ὑποζύγια καὶ τὸν ὄχλον ἐν μέσῳ ἔχοντες. οὐ πολὺ
 δὲ προεληλυθότων αὐτῶν ἐπιφαίνεται πάλιν ὁ
 Μιθριδάτης ἰππέας ἔχων ὡς διακοσίους, καὶ τοξό-
 τας καὶ σφενδονήτας ὡς τετρακοσίους· μάλα ἐλα-
 φροὺς καὶ εὐζώνους, καὶ προσῆει μὲν ὡς φίλος ὢν
 πρὸς τοὺς Ἕλληνας. 7. ἐπεὶ δ' ἐγγὺς ἐγένοντο,
 ἔξαπίνης οἱ μὲν αὐτῶν ἐτόξευον καὶ ἰππεῖς καὶ
 πεζοί, οἱ δ' ἐσφενδόνων καὶ ἐτίρωσκον. οἱ δὲ

4. ὑπόπεμπτος. cf. ὑποπέμψαιεν, II. 4. 22.

6. διαβάντες τὸν Ζαπάταν. "The ford by which the Greeks crossed the Great Zab may, I think, be accurately determined. It is still the principal ford in this part of the river, and must, from the nature of the bed of the stream, have been so from the earliest period. It is about twenty-five miles from the confluence of the Zab and the Tigris."—Layard's *Nineveh and Babylon*, p. 60.

ὀπισθοφύλακες τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἔπασχον μὲν κακῶς, ἀντεποιοῦν δ' οὐδέν. οἳ τε γὰρ Κρήτες βραχύτερα τῶν Περσῶν ἐτόξευον καὶ ἅμα ψιλοὶ ὄντες εἴσω τῶν ὄπλων κατεκέκλειντο, οἳ τε ἀκοντισταὶ βραχύτερα ἠκόντιζον ἢ ὡς ἐξικνεῖσθαι τῶν σφενδονητῶν. 8. ἐκ τούτου Ξενοφῶντι ἐδόκει διωκτέον εἶναι· καὶ ἐδίωκον τῶν ὀπλιτῶν καὶ πελταστῶν οἱ ἔτυχον σὺν αὐτῷ ὀπισθοφυλακοῦντες· διώκοντες δὲ οὐδένα κατελάμβανον τῶν πολεμίων· 9. οὔτε γὰρ ἵππεῖς ἦσαν τοῖς Ἑλλησιν οὔτε οἱ πέζοι τοὺς πέζους ἐκ πολλοῦ φεύγοντας ἐδύνατο καταλαμβάνειν ἐν ὀλίγῃ χωρίῳ· πολὺ γὰρ οὐχ οἶόν τε ἦν ἀπὸ τοῦ ἄλλου στρατεύματος διώκειν. 10. οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι ἵππεῖς καὶ φεύγοντες ἅμα ἐτίτρωσκον εἰς τοῦπισθεν τοξεύοντες ἀπὸ τῶν ἵππων, ὅποσον δὲ προδιώξειαν οἱ Ἕλληνες, τοσοῦτον πάλιν ἐπαναχωρεῖν μαχομένους ἔδει. 11. ὥστε τῆς ἡμέρας ὅλης διήλθον οὐ πλέον πέντε καὶ εἴκοσι σταδίων, ἀλλὰ δαίλης ἀφίκοντο εἰς τὰς κόμας. ἐνθα δὴ πάλιν ἀθυμία ἦν. καὶ Χειρίσοφος καὶ οἱ πρεσβύτατοι τῶν στρατηγῶν Ξενοφῶντα ἠτιῶντο ὅτι ἐδίωκεν ἀπὸ τῆς φάλαγγος, καὶ αὐτὸς τε ἐκινδύνευε καὶ τοὺς πολεμίους οὐδὲν μᾶλλον ἐδύνατο βλάπτειν.

Xenophon acknowledges his error, explains the difficulty of his position, owing to the want of slingers and

7. τῶν ὄπλων. see II. 2. 4.

βραχύτερα ἢ ὡς. see I. 2. 4.

9. ἐκ πολλοῦ. see note I. 10. 11.

10. τοῦπισθεν = τὸ ὑπισθεν.

cavalry, and proposes to raise a corps of the former from the Rhodians who were in the army and from other volunteers, and to employ whatever horses were available to mount a small body of cavalry.

20. Ἔδοξε ταῦτα. καὶ ταύτης τῆς νυκτὸς σφενδονήται μὲν εἰς διακοσίους ἐγένοντο, ἵπποι δὲ καὶ ἵππεῖς ἐδοκιμάσθησαν τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ εἰς πενήκοντα, καὶ στολάδες καὶ θώρακες αὐτοῖς ἐπορίσθησαν, καὶ ἵππαρχος δὲ ἐπεστάθη Λύκιος ὁ Πολυστράτου Ἀθηναῖος.

IV. Μείναντες δὲ ταύτην τὴν ἡμέραν τῇ ἄλλῃ ἐπορεύοντο πρωαίτερον ἀναστάντες· χαράδραν γὰρ αὐτοὺς ἔδει διαβῆναι ἐφ' ἧ ἐφοβοῦντο μὴ ἐπιθοῖντο αὐτοῖς διαβαίνουσιν οἱ πολέμιοι. 2. διαβεβηκόσι δὲ αὐτοῖς πάλιν φαίνεται ὁ Μιθριδάτης ἔχων ἵππέας χιλίους, τοξότας δὲ καὶ σφενδονήτας εἰς τετρακισχιλίους· τοσοῦτους γὰρ ᾗτησε Τισσαφέρην, καὶ ἔλαβεν ὑποσχόμενος, ἂν τούτους λάβῃ, παραδώσειν αὐτῷ τοὺς Ἕλληνας, καταφρονήσας ὅτι ἐν τῇ πρόσθεν προσβολῇ ὀλίγους ἔχων ἔπαθε μὲν οὐδέν, πολλὰ δὲ κακὰ ἐνόμιζε ποιῆσαι. 3. ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ Ἕλληνες διαβεβηκότες ἀπέιχον τῆς

IV. 1. *χαράδραν*. "The torrent here alluded to was evidently the Khazir or Gomar-su, a small river which has its sources in the mountainous districts of Kurdistan, to the west of the central chain, and where its principal branch is called the Gomar-su; but after its arrival on the fertile plains of Adiabene, it is more generally known by the name of Khazir-su. It is the Bumadus of Quintus Curtius and of the historians of Alexander; and the adjacent plain became, on the 1st of October, seventy years afterwards, the scene of the final overthrow of the Persian dynasty."—*Ainsworth*, p. 136.

χαράδρας ὅσον ὀκτῶ σταδίους, διέβαινε καὶ ὁ Μιθριδάτης ἔχων τὴν δύναμιν. παρήγγελο δὲ τῶν τε πελταστῶν οὓς ἔδει διώκειν, καὶ τῶν ὀπλιτῶν, καὶ τοῖς ἰππεύσιν εἴρητο θαρρῶσι διώκειν ὡς ἐφευομένης ἰκανῆς δυνάμεως. 4. ἐπεὶ δὲ ὁ Μιθριδάτης κατειλήφει, καὶ ἤδη σφενδόνας καὶ τοξεύματα ἐξικνούντο, ἐσήμνηε τοῖς Ἕλλησι τῇ σάλπιγγι, καὶ εὐθύς ἔθεον ὁμόσε οἷς εἴρητο, καὶ οἱ ἰππεῖς ἤλαυνον οἱ δὲ οὐκ ἐδέξαντο, ἀλλ' ἔφευγον ἐπὶ τὴν χαράδραν. 5. ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ διώξει τοῖς βαρβάροις τῶν τε πεζῶν ἀπέθανον πολλοί, καὶ τῶν ἰππέων ἐν τῇ χαράδρᾳ ζωὴ ἐλήφθησαν εἰς ὀκτωκαίδεκα. τοὺς δὲ ἀποθανόντας αὐτοκέλευστοι οἱ Ἕλληνες ἤκισαντο, ὡς ὅτι φοβερῶτατον τοῖς πολεμίοις εἶν ὄραν.

6. Καὶ οἱ μὲν πολέμιοι οὕτω πράξαντες ἀπῆλθον, οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες ἀσφαλῶς πορευόμενοι τὸ λοιπὸν τῆς ἡμέρας ἀφίκοντο ἐπὶ τὸν Τίγρητα ποταμόν. 7. ἐνταῦθα πόλις ἦν ἐρήμη μεγάλη,

5. τοῖς βαρβάροις, *on the side of the barbarians.*

6. οὕτω πράξαντες. *see III. 1. 6.*

7-9. "What remains of these ruins in the present day consists chiefly of long mounds of earth, as at Nineveh, marking the former extent and area of the wall of the city, and a hill or mound of a pointed shape, 144 feet in height. This hill was undoubtedly riveted with stone-mason work, as described by Xenophon, vestiges of which still remain at the west base. Fragments of bricks, with arrow-headed characters, are not uncommon within the circuit of the wall, where glazed tiles, pottery, and other relics are to be found in abundance. It must be remarked, that Xenophon describes the walls as being built of brick, except the foundations, which were of stone, and twenty feet high; and I ascertained by

ὄνομα δ' αὐτῇ ἦν Λάρισσα· ᾠκουν δ' αὐτὴν τὸ παλαιὸν Μῆδοι. τοῦ δὲ τείχους ἦν αὐτῆς τὸ εὖρος πέντε καὶ εἴκοσι πόδες, ὕψος δ' ἑκατόν· τοῦ δὲ κύκλου ἢ περιόδος δύο παρασάγγαι· ᾠκοδόμητο δὲ πλίνθοις κεραμίαις· κρητὶς δ' ὑπὴν λιθίνη τὸ ὕψος εἴκοσι ποδῶν. 8. ταύτην βασιλεὺς ὁ Περσῶν, ὅτε παρὰ Μήδων τὴν ἀρχὴν ἐλάβανον Πέρσαι, πολιορκῶν οὐδενὶ τρόπῳ ἐδύνατο ἐλεῖν· ἥλιον δὲ νεφέλη προκαλύψασα ἠφάνισε μέχρι ἐξέλιπον οἱ ἄνθρωποι, καὶ οὕτως ἐάλω. 9. παρὰ ταύτην τὴν πόλιν ἦν πυραμὶς λιθίνη, τὸ μὲν εὖρος ἑνὸς πλέθρου, τὸ δὲ ὕψος δύο πλέθρων. ἐπὶ ταύτης πολλοὶ τῶν βαρβάρων ἦσαν ἐκ τῶν πλησίον κωμῶν ἀποπεφευγότες. 10. ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύθησαν σταθμὸν ἕνα παρασάγγας ἐξ πρὸς τεῖχος ἔρημον μέγα πρὸς τῇ πόλει κείμενον· ὄνομα δὲ ἦν τῇ πόλει Μέσπιλα· Μῆδοι δ' αὐτὴν ποτε ᾠκουν. ἦν δὲ ἢ μὲν κρητὶς λίθου ξεστοῦ κογχυλιάτου, τὸ εὖρος πεντήκοντα ποδῶν καὶ τὸ ὕψος πεντήκοντα. 11. ἐπὶ δὲ ταύτῃ ἐπικοδόμητο πλίνθινον τεῖχος, τὸ μὲν εὖρος πεντήκοντα ποδῶν, τὸ δὲ ὕψος ἑκατόν· τοῦ δὲ κύκλου ἢ περιόδος ἐξ παρασάγγαι. ἐνταῦθα λέγεται Μήδεια γυνὴ βασιλέως καταφυγεῖν ὅτε ἀπώλεσαν τὴν ἀρχὴν ὑπὸ Περσῶν Μῆδοι.

examination that they were in most parts based on a rude and hard conglomerate rock, giving to them all the solidity and characteristics of being built of stone."—*Ainsworth*, pp. 137-139.

8. ἐάλω. see I. 4. 7.

10. κογχυλιάτου. "It is a curious fact that the common building-stone of Mósul is highly fossiliferous, and indeed replete with shells."—*Ainsworth*, p. 140.

12. ταύτην δὲ τὴν πόλιν πολιορκῶν ὁ Περσῶν βασιλεὺς οὐκ ἐδύνατο οὔτε χρόνῳ ἐλείν οὔτε βία· Ζεὺς δ' ἐμβροντήτους ποιεῖ τοὺς ἐνοικοῦντας, καὶ οὕτως ἐάλω.

13. Ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν σταθμὸν ἕνα παρασάγγας τέτταρας. εἰς τοῦτον δὲ τὸν σταθμὸν Τισσαφέρνης ἐπεφάνη, οὓς τε αὐτὸς ἰππέας ἦλθεν ἔχων καὶ τὴν Ὀρόντου δύναμιν τοῦ τὴν βασιλέως θυγατέρα ἔχοντος, καὶ οὓς Κῦρος ἔχων ἀνέβη βαρβάρους, καὶ οὓς ὁ βασιλέως ἀδελφὸς ἔχων βασιλεῖ ἐβοήθει, καὶ πρὸς τούτοις ὅσους βασιλεὺς ἔδωκεν αὐτῷ, ὥστε τὸ στράτευμα πάμπλου ἐφάνη. 14. ἐπεὶ δ' ἐγγὺς ἐγένετο, τὰς μὲν τῶν τάξεων εἶχεν ὀπισθεν καταστήσας, τὰς δὲ εἰς τὰ πλάγια παραγαγῶν ἐμβάλλειν μὲν οὐκ ἐτόλμησεν οὐδ' ἐβούλετο διακινδυνεύειν, σφενδονᾶν δὲ παρήγγειλε καὶ τοξεύειν. 15. ἐπεὶ δὲ διαταχθέντες οἱ Ῥόδιοι ἐσφενδόνησαν καὶ οἱ Σκύθαι τοξόται ἐτόξευσαν καὶ οὐδεὶς ἡμίρτανεν ἀνδρός, οὐδὲ γὰρ εἰ πάνυ προθυμοῖτο ῥάδιον ἦν, καὶ ὁ Τισσαφέρνης μάλα ταχέως ἔξω βελῶν ἀπεχώρει καὶ αἱ ἄλλαι τάξεις ἀπεχώρησαν. 16. καὶ τὸ λοιπὸν τῆς ἡμέρας οἱ μὲν ἐπορεύοντο, οἱ δ' εἵποντο· καὶ οὐκέτι ἐσίνοντο οἱ βάρβαροι τῇ τότε ἀκροβολίσει· μακρότερον γὰρ οἱ τε Ῥόδιοι τῶν Περσῶν ἐσφενδόνων καὶ τῶν πλείστων τοξοτῶν. 17. μεγάλη δὲ καὶ τὰ τόξα τὰ Περσικά ἐστίν· ὥστε χρήσιμα ἦν ὀπίσσω ἀλίσκοιτο τῶν τοξευμάτων τοῖς Κρησί, καὶ

13. οὓς τε . . . ἔχων, (*with*) *the cavalry, which he himself came with.*

διετέλουν χρώμενοι τοῖς τῶν πολεμίων τοξεύμασι, καὶ ἐμελέτων τοξεύειν ἄνω ἰέντες μακράν. εὐρίσκειτο δὲ καὶ νεῦρα πολλὰ ἐν ταῖς κώμαις καὶ μόλυβδος, ὥστε χρῆσθαι εἰς τὰς σφενδόνας.

18. Καὶ ταύτη μὲν τῇ ἡμέρᾳ, ἐπεὶ κατεστρατοπεδεύοντο οἱ Ἕλληνες κώμαις ἐπιτυχόντες, ἀπῆλθον οἱ βάρβαροι μείον ἔχοντες ἐν τῇ τότε ἀκροβολίσει τὴν δ' ἐπιούσαν ἡμέραν ἔμειναν οἱ Ἕλληνες καὶ ἐπεσιτίσαντο· ἦν γὰρ πολλὸς σίτος ἐν ταῖς κώμαις. τῇ δ' ὑστεραίᾳ ἐπορεύοντο διὰ τοῦ πεδίου, καὶ Τισσαφέρνης εἶπετο ἀκροβολιζόμενος. 19. ἔνθα δὴ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔγνωσαν ὅτι πλαίσιον ἰσόπλευρον πονηρὰ τάξις εἶη πολεμίων ἐπομένων.

The generals discovering that the manner in which the army was drawn up (see iii. 2. 1. &c.) was ill-adapted for the passage of bridges, narrow roads, and defiles, owing to the confused and defenceless condition of the rear, when the square was compressed at the flanks and the enemy were pursuing, formed six companies of one hundred men each, and disposed them in the rear so as to remedy this defect.

Τούτῳ τῷ τρόπῳ ἐπορεύθησαν σταθμούς τέταρτας. 24. ἠνίκα δὲ τὸν πέμπτον ἐπορεύοντο εἶδον βασιλείον τι καὶ περὶ αὐτὸ κώμας πολλὰς, τὴν δὲ

18. μείον ἔχοντες. see I. 10. 8.

24. "The appearance of Zákú in the present day coincides in a remarkable manner with what it was described to be in the time of Xenophon—a palace amid villages. As the stranger approaches he is struck with its bold and isolated appearance; it is an outpost of warlike Kurdistan. Built on an island of rocky conglomerate, it rises out of the blue waters of the Khábûr—a pile of ruin belonging to different ages, with abutments and foundations

ὁδὸν πρὸς τὸ χωρίον τοῦτο διὰ γηλόφων ὑψηλῶν
 γιγνομένην, οἱ καθήκον ἀπὸ τοῦ ὄρους ὑφ' ᾧ ἦν ἡ
 κώμη. καὶ εἶδον μὲν τοὺς γηλόφους ἄσμενοι οἱ
 Ἕλληνες, ὡς εἰκὸς τῶν πολεμίων ὄντων ἰππέων.
 25. ἐπεὶ δὲ πορευόμενοι ἐκ τοῦ πεδίου ἀνέβησαν
 ἐπὶ τὸν πρῶτον γήλοφον, κατέβαινον ὡς ἐπὶ τὸν
 ἕτερον ἀναβαίνειν. ἐνταῦθα ἐπιγίγνονται οἱ βάρ-
 βαροι καὶ ἀπὸ τοῦ ὑψηλοῦ εἰς τὸ πρανὲς ἔβαλ-
 λον, ἐσφενδόνων, ἐτόξευον ὑπὸ μαστίγων 26. καὶ
 πολλοὺς ἐτίτρωσκον καὶ ἐκράτησαν τῶν Ἑλλήνων
 γυμνήτων, καὶ κατέκλεισαν αὐτοὺς εἴσω τῶν ὄπ-
 λων ὥστε παντάπασι ταύτην τὴν ἡμέραν ἄχρησ-
 τοὶ ἦσαν ἐν τῷ ὄχλῳ ὄντες καὶ οἱ σφενδονῆται καὶ
 οἱ τοξόται. 27. ἐπεὶ δὲ πιεζόμενοι οἱ Ἕλληνες
 ἐπεχείρησαν διώκειν, σχολῆ μὲν ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον
 ἀφικνούνται ὀπλίται ὄντες, οἱ δὲ πολέμοιοι ταχὺ
 ἀπεπήδων. 28. πάλιν δὲ ὅποτε ἀπίοιεν πρὸς τὸ
 ἄλλο στράτευμα ταῦτ' ἔπασχον, καὶ ἐπὶ τοῦ
 δευτέρου γηλόφου ταῦτ' ἐγίγνετο, ὥστε ἀπὸ τοῦ
 τρίτου γηλόφου ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς μὴ κινεῖν τοὺς στρα-
 τιώτας πρὶν ἀπὸ τῆς δεξιᾶς πλευρᾶς τοῦ πλαισίου
 ἀνήγαγον πελταστὰς πρὸς τὸ ὄρος. 29. ἐπεὶ δ'
 οὗτοι ἐγένοντο ὑπὲρ τῶν ἐπομένων πολεμίων, οὐκ

of solid hewn stones ; walls of more recent, but still ancient con-
 struction ; and lastly, mud compartments, so characteristic of
 modern Turkish pride and poverty, and which disfigure the loftier
 parts."—*Ainsworth*, p. 144.

25. *eis τὸ πρανὲς, downhill.*

ὑπὸ μαστίγων, *under the lash.* This barbarous custom is thrice
 mentioned by Herodotus in describing the march of the Persian
 army into Greece under Ξέρξης.

ἔτι ἐπετίθεντο οἱ πολέμιοι τοῖς καταβαίνουσι, δεδοικότες μὴ ἀποτμηθῆϊσαν καὶ ἀμφοτέρωθεν αὐτῶν γένοιτο οἱ πολέμιοι. 30. οὕτω τὸ λοιπὸν τῆς ἡμέρας πορευόμενοι, οἱ μὲν τῇ ὁδῷ κατὰ τοὺς γηλόφους, οἱ δὲ κατὰ τὸ ὄρος ἐπιπαριόντες, ἀφίκοντο εἰς τὰς κώμας καὶ ἰατροὺς κατέστησαν ὀκτώ· πολλοὶ γὰρ ἦσαν οἱ τετρωμένοι.

31. Ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν ἡμέρας τρεῖς καὶ τῶν τετρωμένων ἕνεκα καὶ ἅμα ἐπιτήδεια πολλὰ εἶχον, ἄλευρα, οἶνον, καὶ κριθὰς ἵπποις συμβεβλημένας πολλὰς. ταῦτα δὲ συνενηγεμένα ἦν τῷ σατραπεύοντι τῆς χώρας. τετάρτη δ' ἡμέρα καταβαίνουσιν εἰς τὸ πεδῖον. 32. ἐπεὶ δὲ κατέλαβεν αὐτοὺς Τισσαφέρνης σὺν τῇ δυνάμει, ἐδίδαξεν αὐτοὺς ἢ ἀνάγκη κατασκηνῆσαι οὐ πρῶτον εἶδον κώμην καὶ μὴ πορεύεσθαι ἔτι μαχομένους· πολλοὶ γὰρ ἦσαν ἀπόμαχοι οἱ τετρωμένοι καὶ οἱ ἐκείνους φέροντες καὶ οἱ τῶν φερόντων τὰ ὄπλα δεξάμενοι. 33. ἐπεὶ δὲ κατεσκήνησαν καὶ ἐπεχείρησαν αὐτοῖς ἀκροβολίζεσθαι οἱ βάρβαροι πρὸς τὴν κώμην προσιόντες, πολὺ περιῆσαν οἱ Ἕλληνες· πολὺ γὰρ διέφερον ἐκ χώρας ὀρμώντες ἀλέξασθαι ἢ πορευόμενοι ἐπιούσι τοῖς πολεμίοις μάχεσθαι. 34. ἦνικα δ' ἦν ἤδη δειλῆ, ὥρα ἦν ἀπιέναι τοῖς πολεμίοις· οὐποτε γὰρ μείον ἀπεστρατοπεδεύοντο οἱ βάρβαροι τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ ἐξήκοντα σταδίων, φοβούμενοι μὴ τῆς νυκτὸς οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐπιθῶνται αὐτοῖς. 35.

31. *συνενηγεμένα*, perf. pass. part., pres. imp. *συμφέρω*.

33. *πολὺ γὰρ διέφερον . . . ἢ*, for they found a great difference between . . . and.

πονηρὸν γὰρ νυκτὸς ἔστι στράτευμα Περσικόν, οἷ τε γὰρ ἵπποι αὐτοῖς δέδενται καὶ ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ πολὺ πεποδισμένοι εἰσὶ τοῦ μὴ φεύγειν ἕνεκα εἰ λυθείησαν· ἐάν τε τις θόρυβος γίγνηται, δεῖ ἐπι-σάξαι τὸν ἵππον Πέρσῃ ἀνδρὶ καὶ χαλινῶσαι δεῖ καὶ θωρακισθέντα ἀναβῆναι ἐπὶ τὸν ἵππον. ταῦτα δὲ πάντα χαλεπὰ ποιεῖν νύκτωρ καὶ θορύβου ὄντος. τοῦτου ἕνεκα πόρρω ἀπεσκήνουν τῶν Ἑλ-λήνων.

36. Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐγίγνωσκον αὐτοὺς οἱ Ἕλληγες βουλομένους ἀπιέναι καὶ διαγγελλομένους, ἐκή-ρυξε τοῖς Ἕλλησι συσκευάζεσθαι ἀκούοντων τῶν πολεμίων. καὶ χρόνον μὲν τινα ἐπέσχον τῆς πορείας οἱ βάρβαροι, ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἀψὲ ἐγίγνετο ἀπῆεσαν. οὐ γὰρ ἐδόκει λύειν αὐτοὺς νυκτὸς πορεύεσθαι καὶ κατάγεσθαι ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον. 37. ἐπειδὴ δὲ σαφῶς ἀπιόντας ἤδη ἐώρων οἱ Ἕλ-ληγες, ἐπορεύοντο καὶ αὐτοὶ ἀναζεύξαντες καὶ διήλθον ὄσον ἐξήκοντα σταδίους. καὶ γίγνεται τοσοῦτον μεταξὺ τῶν στρατευμάτων ὥστε τῇ ὑστε-ραίᾳ οὐκ ἐφάνησαν οἱ πολέμιοι οὐδὲ τῇ τρίτῃ, τῇ δὲ τετάρτῃ νυκτὸς προελθόντες καταλαμβάνουσι χωρίον ὑπερδέξιον οἱ βάρβαροι, ἧ ἔμελλον οἱ Ἕλληγες παριέναι, ἀκρωνυχίαν ὄρους ὑφ' ἣν ἡ κατάβασις ἦν εἰς τὸ πεδίον. 38. ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἐώρα Χειρίσοφος προκατειλημμένην τὴν ἀκρωνυχίαν, καλεῖ Ξενοφῶντα ἀπὸ τῆς οὐρᾶς καὶ κελεύει λα-βόντα τοὺς πελταστὰς παραγενέσθαι εἰς τὸ πρόσ-θεν.

36. *λύειν* is here used intransitively = *to be of advantage*.

Xenophon seeing the enemy advancing upon the rear did not draw off the targeteers, but, observing a road from the summit of the mountain, which overhung the Greek army, to the hill occupied by the enemy, he proposed to seize upon the height immediately, and then dislodge the Persians on the hill. To save time he takes a detachment of troops from the van.

44. Ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύοντο ὡς ἐδύναντο τάχιστα. οἱ δ' ἐπὶ τοῦ λόφου πολέμοι ὡς ἐνόησαν αὐτῶν τὴν πορείαν ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον, εὐθύς καὶ αὐτοὶ ὥρμησαν ἀμιλλᾶσθαι ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον. 45. καὶ ἐνταῦθα πολλή μὲν κραυγὴ ἦν τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ στρατεύματος διακελευομένων τοῖς ἑαυτῶν, πολλή δὲ κραυγὴ τῶν ἀμφὶ Τισσαφέρην τοῖς ἑαυτῶν διακελευομένων. 46. Ξενοφῶν δὲ παρελαύνων ἐπὶ τοῦ ἵππου παρεκελεύετο, Ἄνδρες, νῦν ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα νομίζετε ἀμιλλᾶσθαι, νῦν πρὸς τοὺς παῖδας καὶ τὰς γυναῖκας, νῦν ὀλίγον πονήσαντες ἀμαχεῖ τὴν λοιπὴν πορευσόμεθα. Σωτηρίδης δὲ ὁ Σικυώνιος εἶπεν, Οὐκ ἐξ ἴσου, ὦ Ξενοφῶν, ἐσμεν. 47. σὺ μὲν γὰρ ἐφ' ἵππου ὄχῃ, ἐγὼ δὲ χαλεπῶς κάμνω τὴν ἀσπίδα φέρων. 48. καὶ ὃς ἀκούσας ταῦτα καταπηδήσας ἀπὸ τοῦ ἵππου ὠθεῖται αὐτὸν ἐκ τῆς τάξεως, καὶ τὴν ἀσπίδα ἀφελόμενος ὡς ἐδύνατο τάχιστα ἔχων ἐπορεύετο· ἐτύγχανε δὲ καὶ θώρακα ἔχων τὸν ἵππικόν· ὥστε ἐπιέζετο. καὶ τοῖς μὲν ἐμπροσθεν ὑπάγειν παρεκελεύετο, τοῖς δὲ ὀπίσθεν παριέναι μόλις ἐπομένοις. 49. οἱ δ' ἄλλοι στρατιῶται παίουσι καὶ βάλλουσι καὶ

48. ὑπάγειν, to lead slowly on.

λοιδοροῦσι τὸν Σωτηρίδην, ἔστε ἠνάγκασαν λαβόντα τὴν ἀσπίδα πορεύεσθαι. ὁ δὲ ἀναβάς, ἕως μὲν βάσιμα ἦν ἐπὶ τοῦ ἵππου ἦγεν, ἐπεὶ δὲ ἄβατα ἦν, καταλιπὼν τὸν ἵππον ἔσπευδε πεζῇ. καὶ φθάνουσιν ἐπὶ τῷ ἄκρῳ γενόμενοι τοὺς πολεμίους.

V. Ἐνθα δὴ οἱ μὲν βάρβαροι στραφέντες ἔφευγον ἢ ἕκαστος ἐδύνατο, οἱ δ' Ἕλληνες εἶχον τὸ ἄκρον. οἱ δὲ ἀμφὶ Τισσαφέρην καὶ Ἀριαῖον ἀποτραπόμενοι ἄλλην ὁδὸν ᾤχοντο. οἱ δὲ ἀμφὶ Χειρίσοφον καταβάντες ἐστρατοπεδεύσαντο ἐν κώμῃ μεστῇ πολλῶν ἀγαθῶν. ἦσαν δὲ καὶ ἄλλαι κῶμαι πολλαὶ πλήρεις πολλῶν ἀγαθῶν ἐν τούτῳ τῷ πεδίῳ παρὰ τὸν Τίγρητα ποταμόν. 2. ἠνίκα δ' ἦν δεῖλη ἐξαπίνης οἱ πολέμιοι ἐπιφαίνονται ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ, καὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων κατέκοψάν τινες τῶν ἐσκεδασμένων ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ καθ' ἀρπαγὴν· καὶ γὰρ νομαὶ πολλαὶ βοσκημάτων διαβιβαζόμεναι εἰς τὸ πέραν τοῦ ποταμοῦ κατελήφθησαν.

Tissaphernes proceeds to burn the villages; and some of the Greeks, apprehending a scarcity of provisions, are disheartened. Xenophon encourages them. On returning to the tents, the officers hold a council of war. Their position was perplexing. On one side rose lofty mountains, on the other was a deep river.* At last a certain Rhodian came forward, and proposed to construct a bridge of inflated skins. The council reject the idea, as ingenious, but impracticable.

13. Ἐνταῦθα τὴν μὲν ὑστεραίαν ὑπανεχώρου

* "This must have been near Fynk, where the very foot of the Kurdish mountains is first washed by the river. The spot agrees accurately with Xenophon's description, as it does with the distance."—*Layard's Nineveh*, p. 62.

εἰς τοῦμπαλιν ἢ πρὸς Βαβυλῶνα εἰς τὰς ἀκαύσ-
τους κόμας, κατακαύσαντες ἔνθεν ἐξήεσαν ὥστε
οἱ πολέμιοι οὐ προσήλανον, ἀλλὰ ἐθεῶντο καὶ
ὅμοιοι ἦσαν θαυμάζειν ὅποι ποτὲ τρέφονται οἱ
Ἕλληνες καὶ τί ἐν νῶ ἔχοιεν. 14. ἐνταῦθα οἱ
μὲν ἄλλοι στρατιῶται ἀμφὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἦσαν· οἱ
δὲ στρατηγοὶ (καὶ οἱ λοχαγοὶ) πάλιν συνήλθον,
καὶ συναγαγόντες τοὺς ἐαλωκότας ἤλεγχον τὴν
κύκλῳ πᾶσαν χώραν τίς ἐκάστη εἶη. 15. οἱ δὲ
ἔλεγον ὅτι τὰ μὲν πρὸς μεσημβρίαν τῆς ἐπὶ Βαβυ-
λῶνα εἶη καὶ Μηδίαν, δι' ἧσπερ ἦκοιεν· ἡ δὲ πρὸς
ἔω ἐπὶ Σοῦσά τε καὶ Ἐκβάτανα φέροι, ἔνθα θερί-
ζειν καὶ ἐαρίζειν λέγεται βασιλεύς· ἡ δὲ διαβάντι
τὸν ποταμὸν πρὸς ἐσπέραν ἐπὶ Λυδίαν καὶ Ἰωνίαν
φέροι· ἡ δὲ διὰ τῶν ὀρέων καὶ πρὸς ἄρκτον τε-
τραμμένη ὅτι εἰς Καρδούχους ἄγοι. 16. τούτους
δὲ ἔφασαν οἰκεῖν ἀνὰ τὰ ὄρη καὶ πολεμικοὺς εἶναι,
καὶ βασιλέως οὐκ ἀκούειν, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἐμβαλεῖν
ποτε εἰς αὐτοὺς βασιλικὴν στρατιὰν δώδεκα μυ-
ριάδας· τούτων δὲ οὐδένα ἀπονοστήσαι διὰ τὴν
δυσχωρίαν. ὅποτε μέντοι πρὸς τὸν σατράπην τὸν
ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ σπείσαιντο, καὶ ἐπιμυγγύναι σφῶν τε
πρὸς ἐκείνους καὶ ἐκείνων πρὸς ἑαυτούς.

17. Ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἐκάθισαν
χωρὶς τοὺς ἐκασταχόσε φάσκοντας εἰδέναί, οὐδὲν
δὲ δῆλον ποιήσαντες ὅποι πορεύεσθαι ἔμελλον.

V. 13. εἰς τοῦμπαλιν ἢ πρὸς, in a direction opposite to, or in a
contrary direction to.

θαυμάζειν must be translated like a participle.

15. τῆς ἐπὶ Βαβυλῶνα εἶη, were parts of the country leading to
Babylon.

ἔδόκει δὲ τοῖς στρατηγοῖς ἀναγκαῖον εἶναι διὰ τῶν ὁρέων εἰς Καρδούχους ἐμβάλλειν· τούτους γὰρ διελθόντας ἔφασαν εἰς Ἀρμενίαν ἤξειν, ἧς Ὀρόντας ἦρχε πολλῆς καὶ εὐδαίμονος. ἐντεῦθεν δ' εὐπορον ἔφασαν εἶναι ὅποι τις ἐθέλοι πορεύεσθαι. 18. ἐπὶ τούτοις ἐθύσαντο, ὅπως ὀπηνίκα καὶ δοκοίη τῆς ὥρας τὴν πορείαν ποιοῖντο· τὴν γὰρ ὑπερβολὴν τῶν ὁρέων ἐδεδοίκεσαν μὴ προκαταληφθεῖη· καὶ παρήγγειλαν ἐπειδὴ δειπνήσαιεν συνεσκευασμένους πάντας ἀναπαύεσθαι, καὶ ἔπεσθαι ἡνίκ' ἂν τις παραγγείλη.

4.

I. Ὅσα μὲν δὴ ἐν τῇ ἀναβάσει ἐγένετο μέχρι τῆς μάχης, καὶ ὅσα μετὰ τὴν μάχην ἐν ταῖς σπονδαῖς ἄς βασιλεὺς καὶ οἱ σὺν Κύρῳ ἀναβάντες Ἕλληνες ἐποίησαντο, καὶ ὅσα παραβάντος τὰς σπονδὰς βασιλέως καὶ Τισσαφέρνους ἐπολεμήθη πρὸς τοὺς Ἕλληνας ἐπακολουθοῦντος τοῦ Περσικοῦ στρατεύματος, ἐν τῷ πρόσθεν λόγῳ δεδήλωται.

2. Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀφίκοντο ἔνθα ὁ μὲν Τίγρης ποταμὸς παντάπασιν ἄπορος ἦν διὰ τὸ βᾶθος καὶ

17. ἐμβάλλειν. "The great natural highway from the remotest period between eastern Armenia and Assyria."—*Layard's Nineveh*, p. 62.

18. ὀπηνίκα καὶ δοκοίη τῆς ὥρας. τῆς ὥρας is governed by ὀπηνίκα: ὀπηνίκα is placed before καὶ for emphasis. Translate, and when best.

μέγεθος, πάροδος δὲ οὐκ ἦν, ἀλλὰ τὰ Καρδούχια ὄρη ἀπότομα ὑπὲρ αὐτοῦ τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἐκρέματο, ἐδόκει δὲ τοῖς στρατιώταις διὰ τῶν ὀρέων πορευτέον εἶναι. 3. ἤκουον γὰρ τῶν ἀλισκομένων ὅτι εἰ διέλθοιεν τὰ Καρδούχια ὄρη, ἐν τῇ Ἀρμενίᾳ τὰς πηγὰς τοῦ Τίγρητος ποταμοῦ, ἦν μὲν βούλωνται, διαβήσονται ἦν δὲ μὴ βούλωνται, περιίασι. καὶ τοῦ Εὐφράτου τε τὰς πηγὰς ἐλέγετο οὐ πρόσω τοῦ Τίγρητος εἶναι, καὶ ἔστιν οὕτω στενόν. 4. τὴν δ' εἰς τοὺς Καρδούχους ἐμβολὴν ὧδε ποιοῦνται, ἅμα μὲν λαθεῖν πειρώμενοι, ἅμα δὲ φθάσαι πρὶν τοὺς πολεμίους καταλαβεῖν τὰ ἄκρα. 5. ἐπεὶ δ' ἦν ἀμφὶ τὴν τελευταίαν φυλακὴν καὶ ἐλείπετο τῆς νυκτὸς ὅσον σκοταίους διελθεῖν τὸ πεδίον, τηλικαῦτα ἀναστάντες ἀπὸ παραγγέλσεως πορευόμενοι ἀφικνοῦνται ἅμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ πρὸς τὸ ὄρος.

6. Ἐνθα δὴ Χειρίσοφος μὲν ἠγεῖτο τοῦ στρατεύματος λαβὼν τὸ ἀμφ' αὐτὸν καὶ τοὺς γυμνήτας πάντας, Ξενοφῶν δὲ σὺν τοῖς ὀπισθοφύλαξιν ὀπίταις εἶπετο οὐδένα ἔχων γυμνήτα· οὐδεὶς γὰρ κίνδυνος ἐδόκει εἶναι μή τις ἄνω πορευομένων ἐκ τοῦ ὀπισθεν ἐπίσποιτο. 7. καὶ ἐπὶ μὲν τὸ ἄκρον ἀναβαίνει Χειρίσοφος πρὶν τινα αἰσθέσθαι τῶν πολεμιῶν· ἔπειτα δ' ὑφηγεῖτο· ἐφείπετο δὲ αἰεὶ τὸ ὑπερβάλλον τοῦ στρατεύματος εἰς τὰς κώμας τὰς ἐν τοῖς ἄγκεσί τε καὶ μυχοῖς τῶν ὀρέων.

1. 2. ἐδόκει δέ. δέ here is not the conjunction, but a shortened form of δὲ.

3. καὶ ἔστιν οὕτω στενόν, and it (i. e. the space between) is really so narrow.

6. πορευομένων, gen. absolute.

8. Ἐνθα δὴ οἱ μὲν Καρδοῦχοι ἐκλιπόντες τὰς οἰκίας ἔχοντες καὶ γυναῖκας καὶ παῖδας ἔφευγον ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρη. τὰ δὲ ἐπιτήδεια πολλὰ ἦν λαμβάνειν, ἦσαν δὲ καὶ χαλκώμασι παμπόλλοις κατεσκευασμένοι αἱ οἰκίαι, ὧν οὐδὲν ἔφερον οἱ Ἕλληνες, οὐδὲ τοὺς ἀνθρώπους ἐδίωκόν, ὑποφειδόμενοι, εἴ πως ἐθελήσειαν οἱ Καρδοῦχοι διέναι αὐτοὺς ὡς διὰ φιλίας τῆς χώρας, ἐπεὶ περ βασιλεῖ πολέμιοι ἦσαν.

9. τὰ μέντοι ἐπιτήδεια ὅ,τι τις ἐπιτυγχάνοι ἐλάβανον ἀνάγκη γὰρ ἦν. οἱ δὲ Καρδοῦχοι οὔτε καλοῦντων ὑπήκουον οὔτε ἄλλο φιλικὸν οὐδὲν ἐποίουν.

10. ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ τελευταῖοι τῶν Ἑλλήνων κατέβαινον εἰς τὰς κόμας ἀπὸ τοῦ ἄκρου ἤδη σκοταῖοι, διὰ γὰρ τὸ στενὴν εἶναι τὴν ὁδὸν ὅλην τὴν ἡμέραν ἢ ἀνάβασις αὐτοῖς ἐγένετο καὶ κατάβασις εἰς τὰς κόμας, τότε δὴ συλλεγόντες τινὲς τῶν Καρδοῦχων τοῖς τελευταίοις ἐπέθεντο, καὶ ἀπέκτεινάν τινας, καὶ λίθοις καὶ τοξεύμασι κατέτρωσαν, ὀλίγοι ὄντες, ἐξ ἀπροσδοκῆτου γὰρ αὐτοῖς ἐπέπεσε τὸ Ἑλληνικόν.

11. εἰ μέντοι τότε πλείους συνελήγησαν, ἐκινδύνευσεν ἂν διαφθαρῆναι πολὺ τοῦ στρατεύματος. καὶ ταύτην μὲν τὴν νύκτα οὕτως ἐν ταῖς κόμαις ἠύλισθησαν οἱ δὲ Καρδοῦχοι πυρὰ πολλὰ ἔκαιον κύκλῳ ἐπὶ τῶν ὀρέων, καὶ συνεῶρων ἀλλήλους.

12. ἅμα δὲ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ συνελθοῦσι τοῖς στρατηγοῖς καὶ λοχαγοῖς τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἔδοξε τῶν

8. χαλκώμασι. "This is to the present day a feature of the Kurds, who take great pride in their copper, not brass, utensils." — *Ainsworth*, p. 156.

10. ἐξ ἀπροσδοκῆτου = *ex improvisio*.

τε ὑποζυγίων τὰ ἀναγκαῖα καὶ δυνατώτατα πορεύεσθαι ἔχοντας, καταλιπόντας τᾶλλα, καὶ ὅποσα ἦν νεωστὶ αἰχμάλωτα, ἀνδράποδα ἐν τῇ στρατιᾷ πάντα ἀφείναι. 13. σχολαίαν γὰρ ἐποιοῦν τὴν πορείαν πολλὰ ὄντα τὰ ὑποζύγια καὶ τὰ αἰχμάλωτα, πολλοὶ δὲ οἱ ἐπὶ τούτοις ὄντες ἀπόμαχοι ἦσαν, διπλάσιά τε ἐπιτήδεια ἔδει πορίζεσθαι καὶ φέρεσθαι πολλῶν τῶν ἀνθρώπων ὄντων. δόξαν δὲ ταῦτα ἐκήρυξαν οὕτω ποιεῖν.

14. Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀριστήσαντες ἐπορεύοντο, ὑποστάντες ἐν τῷ στενῷ οἱ στρατηγοὶ εἶ τι εὐρίσκοιεν τῶν εἰρημένων μὴ ἀφειμένον ἀφηροῦντο, οἱ δ' ἐπέιθοντο, πλὴν εἴ τίς τι ἔκλεψεν, οἶον ἢ παιδὸς ἐπιθυμίας ἢ γυναικὸς τῶν εὐπρεπῶν. καὶ ταύτην μὲν τὴν ἡμέραν οὕτως ἐπορεύθησαν, τὰ μὲν τι μαχόμενοι, τὰ δὲ καὶ ἀναπαυόμενοι. 15. εἰς δὲ τὴν ὑστεραίαν γίγνεται χειμῶν πολὺς, ἀναγκαῖον δ' ἦν πορεύεσθαι· οὐ γὰρ ἦν ἰκανὰ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. καὶ ἠγείτο μὲν Χειρίσοφος, ὠπισθοφυλάκει δὲ Ξενοφῶν. 16. καὶ οἱ πολέμιοι ἰσχυρῶς ἐπετίθεντο, καὶ στενῶν ὄντων τῶν χωρίων ἐγγὺς προσιόντες ἐτόξευον καὶ ἐσφενδόνων ὥστε ἠναγκάζοντο οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐπιδιώκοντες καὶ πάλιν ἀναχάζοντες σχολῇ πορεύεσθαι· καὶ θαμινὰ παρήγγελλεν ὁ Ξενοφῶν ὑπομένειν, ὅτε οἱ πολέμιοι ἰσχυρῶς ἐπικέοιντο. 17. ἐνταῦθα ὁ Χειρίσοφος ἄλλοτε μὲν

13. δόξαν δὲ ταῦτα, *having agreed on this*: δόξαν, acc. absolute.

14. ὑποστάντες, *having halted* (to await their approach).

16. ἀναχάζοντες here used intransitively. ἀναχάζειν is very rarely used in the active voice: cf. IV. 7. 10.

ὄτε παρεγγυῶτο ὑπέμενε, τότε δὲ οὐχ ὑπέμενεν, ἀλλ' ἦγε ταχέως καὶ παρηγγυῖα ἔπεσθαι, ὥστε δῆλον ἦν ὅτι πρῶγμά τι εἶη· σχολὴ δ' οὐκ ἦν ἰδεῖν παρελθόντι τὸ αἴτιον τῆς σπουδῆς· ὥστε ἡ πορεία ὁμοία φυγῇ ἐγίνετο τοῖς ὀπισθοφύλαξι. 18. καὶ ἐνταῦθα ἀποθνήσκει ἀνὴρ ἀγαθὸς Λακωνικὸς Κλεώνυμος τοξευθεὶς διὰ τῆς ἀσπίδος καὶ τῆς στολάδος εἰς τὰς πλευράς, καὶ Βασίαις Ἀρκὰς διαμπερὲς εἰς τὴν κεφαλὴν. 19. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀφίκοντο ἐπὶ σταθμόν, εὐθύς ὥσπερ εἶχεν ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἐλθὼν πρὸς τὸν Χειρίσοφον ἠτιάτο αὐτὸν ὅτι οὐχ ὑπέμεινεν, ἀλλ' ἠναγκάζοντο φεύγοντες ἅμα μάχεσθαι. καὶ νῦν δύο καλῶ τε κάγαθῶ ἄνδρε τέθνατον, καὶ οὔτε ἀνελέσθαι οὔτε θάψαι ἐδυνάμεθα. 20. ἀποκρίνεται ὁ Χειρίσοφος, Βλέψον, ἔφη, πρὸς τὰ ὄρη καὶ ἴδε ὡς ἄβατα πάντα ἐστί· μία δὲ αὕτη ὁδὸς ἦν ὄρῃς ὄρθια, καὶ ἐπὶ ταύτῃ ἀνθρώπων ὄρῶν ἕξεστί σοι ὄχλον τοσοῦτον, οἱ κατειληφότες φυλάττουσι τὴν ἔκβασιν. 21. ταῦτ' ἐγὼ ἔσπειυδον καὶ διὰ τοῦτό σε οὐχ ὑπέμενον, εἴ πως δυναίμην φθάσαι πρὶν κατειληφθαι τὴν ὑπερβολὴν οἱ δ' ἠγεμόνες οὐς ἔχομεν οὐ φασιν εἶναι ἄλλην ὁδόν. 22. ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν λέγει, Ἄλλ' ἐγὼ ἔχω δύο ἄνδρας. ἐπεὶ γὰρ ἡμῖν πράγματα παρῆιχον, ἐνηδρεύσαμεν, ὅπερ ἡμᾶς καὶ ἀναπνεῦσαι ἐποίησε, καὶ ἀπεκτείναμέν τινας αὐτῶν, καὶ ζῶντας προὔθυμήθημεν λαβεῖν αὐτοῦ τούτου ἕνεκεν ὅπως ἠγεμόσιν εἰδόσι τὴν χῶραν χρῆσαιμέθα.

19. ὥσπερ εἶχεν, *just as he was*.22. πράγματα παρῆιχον. *cf. I. 1. 11.*

23. Καὶ εὐθύς ἀγαγόντες τοὺς ἀνθρώπους ἤλεγχον διαλαβόντες εἰ τινα εἶδειεν ἄλλην ὁδὸν ἢ τὴν φανεράν. ὁ μὲν οὖν ἕτερος οὐκ ἔφη καὶ μάλα πολλῶν φόβων προσαγομένων· ἐπεὶ δὲ οὐδὲν ὠφέλιμον ἔλεγεν, ὀρώντος τοῦ ἐτέρου κατεσφάγη. 24. ὁ δὲ λοιπὸς ἔλεξεν ὅτι οὗτος μὲν οὐ φαίη διὰ ταῦτα εἰδέναι ὅτι αὐτῷ τυγχάνει θυγάτηρ ἐκεῖ παρ' ἀνδρὶ ἐκδεδομένη· αὐτὸς δ' ἔφη ἠγήσασθαι δυνατὴν καὶ ὑποζυγίοις πορεύεσθαι ὁδόν. 25. ἐρωτώμενος δ', εἰ εἴη τι ἐν αὐτῇ δυσπάριτον χωρίον, ἔφη εἶναι ἄκρον ὃ εἰ μὴ τις προκαταλήφουτο ἀδύνατον ἔσεσθαι παρελθεῖν. 26. ἐνταῦθα ἐδόκει συγκαλέσαντας λοχαγοὺς καὶ πελταστὰς καὶ τῶν ὀπλιτῶν λέγειν τε τὰ παρόντα, καὶ ἐρωτᾶν εἰ τις αὐτῶν ἔστιν ὅστις ἀνὴρ ἀγαθὸς ἐθέλοι ἂν γενέσθαι, καὶ ὑποστὰς ἐθελοντῆς πορεύεσθαι. 27. ὑφίσταται τῶν μὲν ὀπλιτῶν Ἀριστώνυμος Μεθυδριεὺς Ἀρκάς, καὶ Ἀγασίας Στυμφάλιος Ἀρκάς· ἀντιστασιάζων δὲ αὐτοῖς Καλλίμαχος Παρρᾶσιος Ἀρκάς καὶ οὗτος ἔφη ἐθέλειν πορεύεσθαι προσλαβὼν ἐθελοντὰς ἐκ παντὸς τοῦ στρατεύματος· ἐγὼ γάρ, ἔφη, οἶδα ὅτι ἔψονται πολλοὶ τῶν νέων ἐμοῦ ἠγουμένου. 28. ἐκ τούτου ἐρωτῶσιν εἰ τις καὶ τῶν γυμνήτων ταξιαρχῶν ἐθέλοι συμπορεύεσθαι. ὑφίσταται Ἀριστέας Χίος, ὃς πολλαχοῦ πολλοῦ ἄξιός τῃ στρατιᾷ εἰς τὰ τοιαῦτα ἐγένετο.

II. Καὶ ἦν μὲν δεῖλη ἤδη, οἱ δ' ἐκέλευον αὐτοὺς ἐμφαγόντας πορεύεσθαι. καὶ τὸν ἠγεμόνα

26. *peltaστὰς* is here used as an adjective; translate, *both of the peltasts and of the hoplites*: cf. *γυμνήτων*, § 28.

δήσαντες παραδιόασιν αὐτοῖς, καὶ συντίθενται τὴν μὲν νύκτα, ἣν λάβωσι τὸ ἄκρον, τὸ χωρίον φυλάττειν, ἅμα δὲ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ τῇ σάλπιγγι σημαίνειν καὶ τοὺς μὲν ἄνω ὄντας ἰέναι ἐπὶ τοὺς κατέχοντας τὴν φανεράν ἔκβασιν, αὐτοὶ δὲ συμβολῆς ἕνεκεν βαίνοντες ὡς ἂν δύνωνται τάχιστα. 2. ταῦτα συνθέμενοι οἱ μὲν ἐπορεύοντο πλήθος ὡς δισχίλιοι· καὶ ὕδωρ πολὺ ἦν ἐξ οὐρανοῦ· Ξενοφῶν δὲ ἔχων τοὺς ὀπισθοφύλακας ἠγγεῖτο πρὸς τὴν φανεράν ἔκβασιν, ὅπως ταύτῃ τῇ ὁδῷ οἱ πολέμιοι προσέχοιεν τὸν νοῦν καὶ ὡς μάλιστα λάθοιεν οἱ περιμόντες. 3. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦσαν ἐπὶ χαράδρᾳ οἱ ὀπισθοφύλακες ἦν ἔδει διαβάοντας πρὸς τὸ ὄρθιον ἐκβαίνειν, τηνικαῦτα ἐκυλίνδουν οἱ βάρβαροι ὄλοιτρόχους ἀμαξιαίους καὶ μεῖζους καὶ ἐλάττους, οἱ φερόμενοι πρὸς τὰς πέτρας παίοντες διεσφενδωνῶντο· καὶ παντάπασιν οὐδὲ πελάσαι οἷόν τ' ἦν τῇ εἰσόδῳ. 4. ἔνιοι δὲ τῶν λοχαγῶν, εἰ μὴ ταύτῃ δύναιτο, ἄλλῃ ἐπειρῶντο· καὶ ταῦτα ἐποίουν μέχρι σκότος ἐγένετο· ἐπεὶ δὲ φῶντο ἀφανεῖς εἶναι ἀπίοντες, τότε ἀπῆλθον ἐπὶ τὸ δεῖπνον· ἐτύγχανον δὲ καὶ ἀνάριστοι ὄντες αὐτῶν οἱ ὀπισθοφυλακήσαντες. οἱ μέντοι πολέμιοι, φοβούμενοι δῆλον ὅτι, οὐδὲν ἐπαύσαντο δι' ὅλης τῆς νυκτὸς κυλινδούντες τοὺς λίθους· τεκμαίρεσθαι δ' ἦν τῷ ψόφῳ. 5. οἱ δ' ἔχοντες τὸν ἠγεμόνα κύκλῳ περιιόντες καταλαμβάνουσι τοὺς φύλακας ἀμφὶ πύρ

II. 1. αὐτοὶ δέ. introduce after αὐτοὶ, συντίθενται ἰέναι.

4. φοβούμενοι δῆλον ὅτι, being evidently afraid; lit. it was evident that they were afraid.

καθημένους· και τούς μὲν κατακανόντες τούς δὲ καταδιώξαντες αὐτοὶ ἐνταῦθ' ἔμενον ὡς τὸ ἄκρον κατέχοντες. 6. οἱ δ' οὐ κατείχον, ἀλλὰ μαστὸς ἦν ὑπὲρ αὐτῶν παρ' ὃν ἦν ἡ στενὴ αὐτῆ ὁδὸς ἐφ' ἣ ἐκάθητο οἱ φύλακες. ἔφαδος μέντοι αὐτόθεν ἐπὶ τούς πολεμίους ἦν οἱ ἐπὶ τῇ φανερᾷ ὁδῷ ἐκάθητο.

7. Καὶ τὴν μὲν νύκτα ἐνταῦθά διήγαγον· ἐπεὶ δ' ἡμέρα ὑπέφαιεν ἐπορεύοντο σιγῇ συντεταγμένοι ἐπὶ τούς πολεμίους· καὶ γὰρ ὁμίχλη ἐγένετο, ὥστε ἔλαθον ἐγγὺς προσελθόντες. ἐπεὶ δὲ εἶδον ἀλλήλους, καὶ ἡ τε σάλπιγξ ἐπεφθέγγετο καὶ ἀλαλάξαντες οἱ Ἕλληνες ἴεντο ἐπὶ τούς ἀνθρώπους, οἱ δὲ οὐκ ἐδέξαντο, ἀλλὰ λιπόντες τὴν ὁδὸν φεύγοντες ὀλίγοι ἀπέβησκον· εὐζωνοὶ γὰρ ἦσαν. 8. οἱ δὲ ἀμφὶ Χειρίσοφον ἀκούσαντες τῆς σάλπιγγος εὐθὺς ἴεντο ἄνω κατὰ τὴν φανερὰν ὁδὸν· ἄλλοι δὲ τῶν στρατηγῶν κατὰ ἀτριβεῖς ὁδοὺς ἐπορεύοντο ἢ ἔτυχον ἕκαστοι ὄντες, καὶ ἀναβάντες ὡς ἐδύναντο ἀνίμων ἀλλήλους τοῖς δόρασι. 9. καὶ οὗτοι πρῶτοι συνέμιξαν τοῖς προκαταλαβοῦσι τὸ χωρίον. Ξενοφῶν δὲ ἔχων τῶν ὀπισθοφυλάκων τούς ἡμίσεις ἐπορεύετο ἢ οἱ τὸν ἡγεμόνα ἔχοντες· εὐδοκία γὰρ ἦν τοῖς ὑποζυγίοις· τούς δὲ ἡμίσεις ὀπισθεν τῶν ὑποζυγίων ἔταξε. 10. πορευόμενοι δ' ἐντυγχάνουσι λόφῳ ὑπὲρ τῆς ὁδοῦ κατειλημμένῳ ὑπὸ τῶν πολεμίων, οὗς ἡ ἀποκόψαι ἦν ἀνάγκη ἢ διεξελθεῖν ἀπὸ τῶν ἄλλων Ἑλλήνων. καὶ αὐτοὶ ἂν ἐπορεύθησαν ἢ οἱ ἄλλοι, τὰ δὲ ὑποζύγια ἢ ἄλλη ἢ ταύτη ἐκβῆναι. 11. ἐνθα δὲ παρα-
αὐτοὶ μὲν ἂν ἐπορεύθησαν, they too would have proceeded.

κελευσάμενοι ἀλλήλοις προσβάλλουσι πρὸς τὸν λόφον ὀρθίοις τοῖς λόχοις, οὐ κύκλῳ ἀλλὰ καταλιπόντες ἄφοδον τοῖς πολεμίοις, εἰ βούλοιντο φεύγειν. 12. καὶ τέως μὲν αὐτοὺς ἀναβαίνοντας ὅπη ἐδύναντο ἕκαστος οἱ βάρβαροι ἐτόξευον καὶ ἔβαλλον, ἐγγὺς δ' οὐ προσέεντο, ἀλλὰ φυγῇ λείπουσι τὸ χωρίον. καὶ τοῦτόν τε παρεληλύθεσαν οἱ Ἕλληγες, καὶ ἕτερον ὀρώσιν ἔμπροσθεν λόφον κατεχόμενον. ἐπὶ τοῦτον αὐθις ἐδόκει πορεύεσθαι.

13. Ἐννοήσας δ' ὁ Ξενοφῶν μὴ, εἰ ἔρημον καταλείπει τὸν ἠλωκότα λόφον, καὶ πάλιν λαβόντες οἱ πολέμιοι ἐπιθοῖντο τοῖς ὑποζυγίοις παριούσιν, (ἐπὶ πολὺ δ' ἦν τὰ ὑποζύγια ἅτε διὰ στενῆς τῆς ὁδοῦ πορευόμενα,) καταλείπει ἐπὶ τοῦ λόφου λοχαγούς Κηφισόδωρον Κηφισοφώντος Ἀθηναῖον, καὶ Ἀμφικράτην Ἀμφιδήμου Ἀθηναῖον, καὶ Ἀρχαγόραν Ἀργεῖον φυγάδα, αὐτὸς δὲ σὺν τοῖς λοιποῖς ἐπορεύετο ἐπὶ τὸν δεύτερον λόφον, καὶ τῷ αὐτῷ τρόπῳ καὶ τοῦτον αἰροῦσιν. 14. ἔτι δ' αὐτοῖς τρίτος μαστὸς λοιπὸς ἦν πολὺ ὀρθιώτατος ὁ ὑπὲρ τῆς ἐπὶ τῷ πυρὶ κυταληφθείσης φυλακῆς τῆς νυκτὸς ὑπὸ τῶν ἐθελοντῶν. 15. ἐπεὶ δ' ἐγγὺς ἐγένοντο οἱ Ἕλληγες, λείπουσιν οἱ βάρβαροι ἀμαχητὶ τὸν μαστόν, ὥστε θαυμαστόν πᾶσι γενέσθαι, καὶ ὑπὸ πτερον δείσαντας αὐτοὺς μὴ κυκλωθέντες

11. ὀρθίοις τοῖς λόχοις, with their companies in column.

13. ἐννοήσας μὴ, apprehensive that.

καὶ is used here for emphasis, not as a copulative conjunction.

ἐπὶ πολὺ. see note, I. 8. 8.

ἅτε = quippe quae.

πολιορκοῖντο ἀπολιπεῖν. οἱ δ' ἄρα ἀπὸ τοῦ ἄκρου καθορῶντες τὰ ὀπισθεν γιγνόμενα πάντες ἐπὶ τοὺς ὀπισθοφύλακας ἐχώρουν.

16. Καὶ Ξενοφῶν μὲν σὺν τοῖς νεωτάτοις ἀνέβαινε ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον, τοὺς δὲ ἄλλους ἐκέλευσεν ὑπάγειν, ὅπως οἱ τελευταῖοι λόχοι πρὸς μίξιαν καὶ προελθόντας κατὰ τὴν ὁδὸν ἐν τῷ ὀμαλῷ θέσθαι τὰ ὄπλα εἶπε. 17. καὶ ἐν τούτῳ τῷ χρόνῳ ἦλθεν Ἀρχαγόρας ὁ Ἀργεῖος πεφευγώς, καὶ λέγει ὡς ἀπεκόπησαν ἀπὸ τοῦ πρώτου λόφου, καὶ ὅτι τεθῶσι Κηφισόδωρος καὶ Ἀμφικράτης, καὶ ἄλλοι ὅσοι μὴ ἀλλόμενοι κατὰ τῆς πέτρας πρὸς τοὺς ὀπισθοφύλακας ἀφίκοντο. 18. ταῦτα δὲ διαπραξάμενοι οἱ βάρβαροι ἦκον ἐπ' ἀντίπορον λόφον τῷ μαστῷ· καὶ Ξενοφῶν διελέγετο αὐτοῖς δι' ἑρμηνέως περὶ σπονδῶν, καὶ τοὺς νεκροὺς ἀπῆτει. 19. οἱ δὲ ἔφασαν ἀποδώσειν ἐφ' ᾧ μὴ καίειν τὰς κώμας. συνωμολόγει ταῦτα ὁ Ξενοφῶν. ἐν ᾧ δὲ τὸ μὲν ἄλλο στράτευμα παρήει, οἱ δὲ ταῦτα διελέγοντο, πάντες οἱ ἐκ τούτου τοῦ τόπου συνεβλήθησαν. 20. ἐνταῦθα ἴσταντο οἱ πολέμιοι· καὶ ἐπεὶ ἤρξαντο καταβαίνειν ἀπὸ τοῦ μαστοῦ πρὸς τοὺς ἄλλους ἔνθα τὰ ὄπλα ἔκειντο, ἴεντο δὴ οἱ πολέμιοι πολλῶς πλήθει καὶ θορύβῳ· καὶ ἐπεὶ ἐγένοντο ἐπὶ τῆς κορυφῆς τοῦ μαστοῦ ἀφ' οὗ Ξενοφῶν κατέβαινε, ἐκυλίνδουν πέτρας· καὶ ἐνὸς μὲν κατέαξαν τὸ σκέλος, Ξενοφῶντα δὲ ὁ ὑπασπιστὴς ἔχων τὴν ἀσπίδα

19. ἐφ' ᾧ μὴ καίειν, on condition of not burning.
 συνεβλήθησαν, pass. aor. 2; imp. pres. συβλήτω.

20. κατέαξαν. see κατάγνυμι.

ἀπέλιπεν· 21. Εὐρύλοχος δὲ Λουσιεὺς Ἄρκας προσέδραμεν αὐτῷ ὀπλίτης, καὶ πρὸ ἀμφοῖν προβηβλημένος ἀπεχώρει, καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι πρὸς τοὺς συντεταγμένους ἀπήλθον.

22. Ἐκ δὲ τούτου πᾶν ὁμοῦ ἐγένετο τὸ Ἑλληνικόν, καὶ ἐσκήνησαν αὐτοῦ ἐν πολλαῖς καὶ καλαῖς οἰκίαις καὶ ἐπιτηδείοις δαφυλίεσι· καὶ γὰρ οἶνος πολὺς ἦν, ὥστε ἐν λάκκοις κονιατοῖς εἶχον. 23. Ξενοφῶν δὲ καὶ Χειρίσοφος διεπράξαντο ὥστε λαβόντες τοὺς νεκροὺς ἀπέδωκαν τὸν ἡγεμόνα· καὶ πάντα ἐποίησαν τοῖς ἀποθανούσιν ἐκ τῶν δυνατῶν ὥσπερ νομίζεται ἀνδράσιν ἀγαθοῖς. 24. τῇ δὲ ὑστεραίᾳ ἄνευ ἡγεμόνος ἐπορεύοντο· μαχόμενοι δ' οἱ πολέμιοι καὶ ὅπη εἶη στενὸν χωρίον προκαταλαμβάνοντες ἐκάλων τὰς παρόδους. 25. ὁπότε μὲν οὖν τοὺς πρώτους κωλύοιεν, Ξενοφῶν ὀπισθεν ἐκβαίνων πρὸς τὰ ὄρη ἔλυε τὴν ἀπόφραξιν τῆς παρόδου τοῖς πρώτοις ἀνωτέρω πειρώμενος γίγνεσθαι τῶν κωλύόντων· 26. ὁπότε δὲ τοῖς ὀπισθεν ἐπιθοῖντο, Χειρίσοφος ἐκβαίνων καὶ πειρώμενος

22. "The Kurd houses in the better class of villages, and especially in districts where wood abounds, as shown in the two villages situated on the right bank in this pass, are constructed of two stories, generally tiled, with open balconies in front, and have a very inviting appearance. The plastered cisterns noticed by Xenophon are also met with throughout Kurdistan, Armenia, and Syria. They are especially numerous around some of the ancient villages of the early Christians of those countries. Since the Kurds have become Mohammedans, and rejected the use of wine, there is no doubt they are sometimes used for depôts for corn or hay, and even sometimes for water. They were generally closed by a single large stone."—*Ainsworth*, p. 164.

ἀνωτέρω γίνεσθαι τῶν κωλύοντων ἔλυε τὴν ἀπόφραξιν τῆς παρόδου τοῖς ὀπισθεν καὶ αἰεὶ οὕτως ἐβοήθουν ἀλλήλοις καὶ ἰσχυρῶς ἀλλήλων ἐπεμέλλοντο. 27. ἦν δὲ καὶ ὅποτε αὐτοῖς τοῖς ἀναβάσι πολλὰ πράγματα παρείχον οἱ βάρβαροι πάλιν καταβαίνουσιν ἑλαφροὶ γὰρ ἦσαν ὥστε καὶ ἐγγύθεν φεύγοντες ἀποφεύγειν οὐδὲν γὰρ εἶχον ἄλλο ἢ τόξα καὶ σφενδόνας. 28. ἄριστοι δὲ καὶ τοξοὶτα ἦσαν εἶχον δὲ τόξα ἐγγὺς τριπήχη, τὰ δὲ τοξεύματα πλέον ἢ διπήχη· εἰλκον δὲ τὰς νευρὰς ὅποτε τοξεύοιεν πρὸς τὸ κάτω τοῦ τόξου τῷ ἀριστερῷ ποδὶ προβαίνοντες. τὰ δὲ τοξεύματα ἐχώρει διὰ τῶν ἀσπίδων καὶ διὰ τῶν θωράκων. ἐχρῶντο δὲ αὐτοῖς οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐπεὶ λάβοιεν ἀκοντίους ἐναγκυλῶντες. ἐν τούτοις τοῖς χωρίοις οἱ Κρήτες χρησιμώτατοι ἐγένοντο. ἦρχε δὲ αὐτῶν Στρατοκλῆς Κρής.

III. Ταύτην δ' αὖ τὴν ἡμέραν ἠύλισθησαν ἐν ταῖς κόμαις ταῖς ὑπὲρ τοῦ πεδίου τοῦ παρὰ τὸν Κεντρίτην ποταμόν, εὐρος ὡς δέκπλεθρον, ὅς ὀρίζει τὴν Ἀρμενίαν καὶ τὴν τῶν Καρδούχων χώραν. καὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐνταῦθα ἀνεκαύσαντο ἄσμενοι ἰδόντες πεδῖον ἀπέειχε δὲ τῶν ὀρέων ὁ ποταμὸς ἕξ ἢ ἐπτὰ στάδια τῶν Καρδούχων. 2. τότε μὲν οὖν ἠύλισθησαν μάλα ἠδέως, καὶ ταπιτήθεια ἔχοντες καὶ πολλὰ τῶν παρεληλυθῶτων πόρων

27. ἦν δὲ καὶ ὅποτε. see note, I. 5. 7.

III. 1. Κεντρίτην. "The Centritis, or eastern Tigris, the united waters of the rivers of Bitlis, Sert, and Bohtan."—Layard's *Nimrod*, p. 63.

μνημονεύοντες. ἑπτὰ γὰρ ἡμέρας ὅσασπερ ἐπορεύθησαν διὰ τῶν Καρδούχων πάσας μαχόμενοι διετέλεσαν, καὶ ἔπαθον κακὰ ὅσα οὐδὲ τὰ σύμπαντα ὑπὸ βασιλέως καὶ Τισσαφέρνους. ὡς οὖν ἀπηλλαγμένοι τούτων ἠδέως ἐκοιμήθησαν.

3. Ἄμα δὲ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ ὀρώσιν ἰππέας που πέραν τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἐξωπλισμένους ὡς κωλύσοντας διαβαίνειν, πεζοὺς δ' ἐπὶ ταῖς ὄχθαις παρατεταγμένους ἄνω τῶν ἰππέων ὡς κωλύσοντας εἰς τὴν Ἀρμενίαν ἐκβαίνειν. 4. ἦσαν δ' οὗτοι Ὀρόντου καὶ Ἄρτούχου, Ἀρμένιοι καὶ Μαρδόνιοι καὶ Χαλδαῖοι μισθοφόροι. ἐλέγοντο δὲ οἱ Χαλδαῖοι ἐλεύθεροί τε καὶ ἀλκιμοί εἶναι· ὄπλα δ' εἶχον γέρρα μακρὰ καὶ λόγχας. 5. αἱ δὲ ὄχθαι αὐταὶ ἐφ' ὧν παρατεταγμένοι οὗτοι ἦσαν τρία ἢ τέτταρα πλέθρα ἀπὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἀπέειχον· ὁδὸς δὲ μία ἢ ὀρωμένη ἦν ἄγουσα ἄνω ὥσπερ χειροποίητος· ταύτῃ ἐπειρῶντο διαβαίνειν οἱ Ἕλληες. 6. ἐπεὶ δὲ πειρωμένοις τό τε ὕδωρ ὑπὲρ τῶν μαστῶν ἐφαίνετο, καὶ τραχὺς ἦν ὁ ποταμὸς μεγάλους λίθοις καὶ ὀλισθηροῖς, καὶ οὐτ' ἐν τῷ ὕδατι τὰ ὄπλα ἦν ἔχειν· εἰ δὲ μή, ἤρπαζεν ὁ

6. *ἐπεὶ δέ.* The spot where the Greeks crossed the Centritis was near the modern village of Tilleh, where the eastern and western branches of the Tigris unite. "The two streams," says Mr. Layard, "are about equal in size, and at this time of the year both fordable in certain places. We crossed the lower, or eastern, which we found wide and exceedingly rapid; the water, however, not reaching above the saddle-girth. The villagers raised the luggage and supported the horses against the current, which, rushing over loose and slippery stones affording an uncertain footing, threatened to sweep the animals down the stream."—*Nineveh*, p. 49.

ποταμός· ἐπὶ τε τῆς κεφαλῆς τὰ ὄπλα εἶ τις φέροι, γυμνοὶ ἐγίνοντο πρὸς τὰ τοξεύματα καὶ τᾶλλα βέλη· ἀνεχώρησαν οὖν καὶ αὐτοῦ ἐστρατοπεδεύσαντο παρὰ τὸν ποταμόν. 7. ἐνθα δὲ αὐτοὶ τὴν πρόσθεν νύκτα ἦσαν ἐπὶ τοῦ ὄρους ἐώρων τοὺς Καρδούχους πολλοὺς συνειλεγμένους ἐν τοῖς ὄπλοις. ἐνταῦθα δὲ πολλὴ ἀθυμία ἦν τοῖς Ἑλλησιν, ὁρῶσι μὲν τοῦ ποταμοῦ τὴν δυσπορίαν, ὁρῶσι δὲ τοὺς διαβαίνειν κωλύοντας, ὁρῶσι δὲ τοῖς διαβαίνουσιν ἐπικεισομένους τοὺς Καρδούχους ὀπισθεν. 8. ταύτην μὲν οὖν τὴν ἡμέραν καὶ τὴν νύκτα ἔμειναν ἐν πολλῇ ἀπορίᾳ ὄντες. Ξενοφῶν δὲ ὄναρ εἶδεν· ἔδοξεν ἐν πέδαις δεδέσθαι, αὐταὶ δὲ αὐτῷ αὐτόμαται περιρῦνθαι, ὥστε λυθῆναι καὶ διαβαίνειν ὅποσον ἐβούλετο. ἐπεὶ δὲ ὄρθρος ἦν ἔρχεται πρὸς τὸν Χειρίσοφον καὶ λέγει ὅτι ἐλπίδας ἔχει καλῶς ἔσσεσθαι, καὶ διηγείται αὐτῷ τὸ ὄναρ. 9. ὁ δὲ ἦδετό τε καὶ ὡς τάχιστα ἕως ὑπέβαινον ἐθύοντο πάντες παρόντες οἱ στρατηγοὶ· καὶ τὰ ἱερά καλὰ ἦν εὐθύς ἀπὸ τοῦ πρώτου. καὶ ἀπιόντες ἀπὸ τῶν ἱερῶν οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοὶ παρήγγελλον τῇ στρατιᾷ ἀριστοποιεῖσθαι. 10. καὶ ἀριστῶντι τῷ Ξενοφῶντι προσέτρεχον δύο νεανίσκῳ· ἦδσαν γὰρ πάντες ὅτι ἐξείη αὐτῷ καὶ ἀριστῶντι καὶ δεικνῶντι προσελθεῖν, καὶ εἰ καθεύδοι ἐπεγείραντα εἰπεῖν εἶ τίς τι

6. εἰ δὲ μή. "The expression εἰ δὲ μή, but if not, should properly come after affirmative sentences; but it is so familiar as a consequence of contradiction to the preceding proposition, that it also occurs after negative sentences, and consequently affirms in such cases." — *Wittmann's Syntax*. Translate, but if they did: cf. VII.

ἔχοι τῶν πρὸς τὸν πόλεμον. 11. καὶ τότε ἔλεγον ὅτι τυγχάνοιεν φρύγανα συλλέγοντες ὡς ἐπὶ πῦρ, κᾶπειτα κατίδοιεν ἐν τῷ πέραν ἐν πέτραις καθηκούσαις ἐπ' αὐτὸν τὸν ποταμὸν γέροντά τε καὶ γυναικάς καὶ παιδίσκας ὥσπερ μαρσίπους ἱματίων κατατιθεμένους ἐν πέτρᾳ ἀντρώδει. 12. ἰδοῦσι δὲ σφισι δόξαι ἀσφαλὲς εἶναι διαβῆναι· οὐδὲ γὰρ τοῖς πολεμίοις ἰππεῦσι πρόσβατον εἶναι κατὰ τοῦτο. ἐκδύντες δ' ἔφασαν ἔχοντες τὰ ἐγχειρίδια γυμνοὶ ὡς νευσούμενοι διαβαίνειν, πορευόμενοι δὲ πρόσθεν διαβῆναι πρὶν βρέξαι τὰ αἰδοῖα, καὶ διαβάντες καὶ λαβόντες τὰ ἱμάτια πάλιν ἤκειν.

13. Εὐθύς οὖν ὁ Ξενοφῶν αὐτός τε ἔσπενδε καὶ τοῖς νεανίσκοις ἐγχεῖν ἐκέλευε, καὶ εὐχεσθαι τοῖς φήνασι θεοῖς τά τε ὀνείρατα καὶ τὸν πόρον καὶ τὰ λοιπὰ ἀγαθὰ ἐπιτελέσαι. σπείσας δ' εὐθύς ἤγε τοὺς νεανίσκους παρὰ τὸν Χειρίσοφον, καὶ διηγούνται ταῦτα. 14. ἀκούσας δὲ καὶ ὁ Χειρίσοφος σπονδὰς ἐποίει. σπείσαντες δὲ τοῖς μὲν ἄλλοις παρήγγελλον συσκευάζεσθαι, αὐτοὶ δὲ συγκαλέσαντες τοὺς στρατηγούς ἐβουλεύοντο ὅπως ἂν κάλλιστα διαβαίεν, καὶ τοὺς τε ἔμπροσθεν νικῶν καὶ ὑπὸ τῶν ὀπισθεν μηδὲν πάσχοιεν κακόν. 15. καὶ ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς Χειρίσοφον μὲν ἡγεῖσθαι καὶ διαβαίνειν ἔχοντα τὸ ἥμισυ τοῦ στρατεύματος, τὸ δ' ἥμισυ ἔτι ὑπομένειν σὺν Ξενοφῶντι, τὰ δὲ ὑποζύγια καὶ τὸν ὄχλον ἐν μέσῳ τούτων διαβαίνειν.

12. νευσούμενοι, fut. part. : see νέω.

13. φήνασι, part. aor. 1 act. dat. plur. : see φαίνω.

καὶ τὰ λοιπὰ. καὶ is here used for emphasis.

16. Ἐπεὶ δὲ καλῶς ταῦτα εἶχεν ἐπορεύοντο ἡγούντο δ' οἱ νεανίσκοι ἐν ἀριστερᾷ ἔχοντες τὸν ποταμόν· ὁδὸς δὲ ἦν ἐπὶ τὴν διάβασιν ὡς τέτταρες στάδιοι. 17. πορευομένων δ' αὐτῶν ἀντιπαρήσαν αἱ τάξεις τῶν ἰππέων. ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἦσαν κατὰ τὴν διάβασιν καὶ τὰς ὄχθας τοῦ ποταμοῦ, ἔθεντο τὰ ὄπλα, καὶ αὐτὸς πρῶτος Χειρίσοφος στεφανωσάμενος καὶ ἀποδὺς ἐλάμβανε τὰ ὄπλα καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις πᾶσι παρήγγελλε, καὶ τοὺς λοχαγοὺς ἐκέλευεν ἄγειν τοὺς λόχους ὀρθίους, τοὺς μὲν ἐν ἀριστερᾷ, τοὺς δ' ἐν δεξιᾷ ἑαυτοῦ. 18. καὶ οἱ μὲν μάντις ἐσφαγιάζοντο εἰς τὸν ποταμόν· οἱ δὲ πολέμιοι ἐτόξευόν τε καὶ ἐσφενδόνων· ἄλλ' οὐπω ἐξικνούντο. 19. ἐπεὶ δὲ καλὰ ἦν τὰ σφάλγια, ἐπαίνιζον πάντες οἱ στρατιῶται καὶ ἀνηλάλαζον, συνωλόλυζον δὲ καὶ αἱ γυναῖκες ἅπασαι. πολλαὶ γὰρ ἦσαν ἑταῖραι ἐν τῷ στρατεύματι. 20. καὶ Χειρίσοφος μὲν ἐνέβαινε καὶ οἱ σὺν ἐκείνῳ· ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν τῶν ὀπισθοφυλάκων λαβὼν τοὺς εὐζωνοτάτους ἔθει ἀνὰ κράτος πάλιν ἐπὶ τὸν πόρον τὸν κατὰ τὴν ἔκβασιν τὴν εἰς τὰ τῶν Ἀρμενίων ὄρη, προσποιούμενος ταύτῃ διαβὰς ἀποκλείσειν τοὺς παρὰ τὸν ποταμόν ἰππεῖς. 21. οἱ δὲ πολέμιοι ὀρώντες μὲν τοὺς ἀμφὶ Χειρίσοφον εὐπετῶς τὸ ὕδωρ περῶντας, ὀρώντες δὲ τοὺς ἀμφὶ Ξενοφῶντα θέοντας εἰς τοῦμπαλιν, δέισαντες μὴ ἀποκλεισθῆναι ἦσαν φεύγουσιν ἀνὰ κράτος ὡς πρὸς τὴν ἀπὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἄνω ἔκβασιν. ἐπεὶ δὲ κατὰ τὴν ὁδὸν ἐγένοντο, ἔτεινον ἄνω πρὸς τὸ ὄρος. 22. Δύκιος δ'

18. εἰς τὸν ποταμόν. see note, II. 2. 9.

ὁ τὴν τάξιν ἔχων τῶν ἰππέων καὶ Αἰσχίνης ὁ τὴν τάξιν ἔχων τῶν πελταστῶν τῶν ἀμφὶ Χειρίσοφον ἐπεὶ ἐώρων ἀνὰ κράτος φεύγοντας εἶποντο· οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται ἐβόων μὴ ἀπολείπεσθαι, ἀλλὰ συνεκβαίνειν ἐπὶ τὸ ὄρος. 23. Χειρίσοφος δ' αὖ ἐπεὶ διέβη, τοὺς μὲν ἰππέας οὐκ ἐδίωκεν, εὐθύς δὲ κατὰ τὰς προσηκούσας ὄχθας ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμὸν ἐξέβαιεν ἐπὶ τοὺς ἄνω πολεμίους. οἱ δὲ ἄνω, ὀρώντες μὲν τοὺς ἑαυτῶν ἰππέας φεύγοντας, ὀρώντες δ' ὀπλίτας σφίσιν ἐπιόντας, ἐκλείπουσι τὰ ὑπὲρ τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἄκρα.

24. Ξενοφῶν δ' ἐπεὶ τὰ πέραν ἐώρα καλῶς γυγνόμενα, ἀπεχώρει τὴν ταχίστην πρὸς τὸ διαβαίνειν στρατεύμα· καὶ γὰρ οἱ Καρδούχοι φανεροὶ ἤδη ἦσαν εἰς τὸ πεδίον καταβαίνοντες ὡς ἐπιθησόμενοι τοῖς τελευταίοις. 25. καὶ Χειρίσοφος μὲν τὰ ἄνω κατεῖχε, Λύκιος δὲ σὺν ὀλίγοις ἐπιχειρήσας ἐπιδιώξαι ἔλαβε τῶν σκευοφόρων τὰ ὑπολειπόμενα, καὶ μετὰ τούτων ἐσθῆτά τε καλὴν καὶ ἐκπώματα.

The Carduchians attack the rearguard as they are preparing to cross the river; but Xenophon by a skilful stratagem repulses them, and succeeds in leading his soldiers to the other side.

IV. Ἐπεὶ δὲ διέβησαν, συνταξάμενοι ἀμφὶ μέσον ἡμέρας ἐπορεύθησαν διὰ τῆς Ἀρμενίας πεδίον ἅπαν καὶ λείους γηλόφους οὐ μείον ἢ πέντε παρασάγγας· οὐ γὰρ ἦσαν ἐγγὺς τοῦ ποταμοῦ κῶμαι διὰ τοὺς πολέμους τοὺς πρὸς τοὺς Καρδούχους. 2. εἰς δὲ ἦν ἀφίκοντο κώμην μεγάλην τε ἦν καὶ

βασιλείον εἶχε τῷ σατράπῃ, καὶ ἐπὶ ταῖς πλείσταις οἰκίαις τύρσεις ἐπήσαν· ἐπιτήδεια δ' ἦν δαψιλῆ. 3. ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν σταθμούς δύο παρασύγγας δέκα μέχρι ὑπερήλθον τὰς πηγὰς τοῦ Τίγρητος ποταμοῦ. ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν σταθμούς τρεῖς παρασύγγας πεντεκαίδεκα ἐπὶ τὸν Τηλεβόαν ποταμόν. οὗτος δ' ἦν καλὸς μὲν, μέγας δ' οὐ· κῶμαι δὲ πολλαὶ περὶ τὸν ποταμόν ἦσαν. 4. ὁ δὲ τόπος οὗτος Ἀρμενία ἐκαλεῖτο ἢ πρὸς ἐσπέραν. ὑπαρχος δ' ἦν αὐτῆς Τηρίβαζος, ὁ καὶ βασιλεῖ φίλος γενόμενος, καὶ ὅποτε παρῆν, οὐδεὶς ἄλλος βασιλέα ἐπὶ τὸν ἵππον ἀνέβαλλεν. 5. οὗτος προσήλασεν ἱππέας ἔχων, καὶ προπέμψας ἐρμηνέα εἶπεν ὅτι βούλοιο διαλεχθῆναι τοῖς ἄρχουσι. τοῖς δὲ στρατηγοῖς ἔδοξεν ἀκοῦσαι. καὶ προσελθόντες εἰς ἐπήκοον ἡρώτων τί θέλοι. 6. ὁ δὲ εἶπεν ὅτι σπείσασθαι βούλοιο ἐφ' ᾧ μήτε αὐτὸς τοὺς Ἕλληνας ἀδικεῖν μήτε ἐκείνους καίειν τὰς οἰκίας, λαμβάνειν τε τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ὅσων δέοιτο. ἔδοξε ταῦτα τοῖς στρατηγοῖς καὶ ἐσπείσαντο ἐπὶ τούτοις.

7. Ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν σταθμούς τρεῖς διὰ πεδίου παρασύγγας πεντεκαίδεκα· καὶ Τηρίβαζος παρηκολούθει ἔχων τὴν ἑαυτοῦ δύναμιν ἀπέχων ὡς δέκα σταδίου· καὶ ἀφίκοντο εἰς βασιλεια καὶ κώμας περίξ πολλὰς πολλῶν τῶν ἐπιτη-

IV. 6. *αὐτός*. Although the subject of the infinitive sentence is not usually expressed in Greek when identical with the subject of the leading verb, it must be employed to mark *emphasis* or *contrast*. In such cases it is usually put in the *nominative case*.

δειῶν μεστάς. 8. στρατοπεδευομένων δ' αὐτῶν γίγνεται τῆς νυκτὸς χιῶν πολλή· καὶ ἔωθεν ἔδοξε διασκηῆσαι τὰς τάξεις καὶ τοὺς στρατηγούς κατὰ τὰς κόμας· οὐ γὰρ ἐώρων πολέμιον οὐδένα, καὶ ἀσφαλὲς ἐδόκει εἶναι διὰ τὸ πλῆθος τῆς χιῶνος. 9. ἐνταῦθα εἶχον τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ὅσα ἐστὶν ἀγαθὰ, ἱερεῖα, σῖτον, οἶνους παλαιούς εὐώδεις, ἀσταφίδας, ὄσπρια παντοδαπά. τῶν δὲ ἀποσκεδαννυμένων τινὲς ἀπὸ τοῦ στρατοπέδου ἔλεγον ὅτι κατίδοιεν στράτευμα καὶ νύκτωρ πολλὰ πυρὰ φαίνοντο. 10. ἐδόκει δὴ τοῖς στρατηγοῖς οὐκ ἀσφαλὲς εἶναι διασκηνοῦν, ἀλλὰ συναγαγεῖν τὸ στράτευμα πάλιν. ἐντεῦθεν συνήλθον· καὶ γὰρ ἐδόκει διαιθριάξιν. 11. νυκτερευόντων δ' αὐτῶν ἐνταῦθα ἐπιπίπτει χιῶν ἄπλετος, ὥστε ἀπέκρυσε καὶ τὰ ὄπλα καὶ τοὺς ἀνθρώπους κατακειμένους· καὶ τὰ ὑποζύγια συνεπόδισεν ἡ χιῶν· καὶ πολὺς ὄκνος ἦν ἀνίστασθαι· κατακειμένων γὰρ ἀλεινὸν ἦν ἡ χιῶν ἐπιπεπτωκίᾳ ὄφ' μὴ παραρῥυεῖη. 12. ἐπεὶ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἐτόλμησε γυμνὸς ἀναστὰς σχίζειν ξύλα, τάχ' ἂν ἀναστὰς τις καὶ ἄλλος ἐκείνου ἀφελόμενος ἔσχιζεν. ἐκ δὲ τούτου καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι ἀναστάντες πῦρ ἔκαιον καὶ ἐχρίοντο. 13. πολὺ γὰρ ἐνταῦθα εὐρίσ-

8. χιῶν. "I left the plains of Mesopotamia in the latter end of August 1839, when the mid-day heats were almost insupportable, and till we had crossed the 'Alí Tágh we slept always in the open air, on the grass or on the tops of houses, but on the plain of Músh were glad to take refuge by a fire; and on the road from thence to Erz-rúm, in the early part of September, it froze keenly every night, although the mid-day sun was still powerful."—*Ainsworth*, p. 174.

κετο χρίσμα, ᾧ ἐχρῶντο ἀντ' ἐλαίου, σύειον καὶ σησάμιον καὶ ἀμυγδάλιον ἐκ τῶν πικρῶν καὶ τερεβινθινον. ἐκ δὲ τῶν αὐτῶν τούτων καὶ μύρον εὕρισκετο.

The troops are quartered that night in the villages, and a trusty man is sent with a detachment to the mountains, where the stragglers had reported that they had seen fires. He brings in a prisoner, who gives them information of the army and movements of Teribazus. The Greeks, guided by the prisoner, attack and capture the camp of the Persian general.

V. Τῇ δ' ὑστεραίᾳ ἐδόκει πορευτέον εἶναι ὅπη δύναιντο τάχιστα πρὶν ἢ συλληγῆναι τὸ στράτευμα πάλιν καὶ καταλαβεῖν τὰ στενά. συσκευασάμενοι δ' εὐθὺς ἐπορεύοντο διὰ χιόνος πολλῆς ἡγεμόνας ἔχοντες πολλούς· καὶ αὐθημερὸν ὑπερβαλόντες τὸ ἄκρον ἐφ' ᾧ ἔμελλεν ἐπιτίθεσθαι Τηρίβαζος κατεστρατοπεδεύσαντο· 2. ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύθησαν σταθμοὺς ἐρήμους τρεῖς παρασάγγας πεντεκαίδεκα ἐπὶ τὸν Εὐφράτην ποταμόν, καὶ διέβαινον αὐτὸν βρεχόμενοι πρὸς τὸν ὀμφαλόν. ἐλέγοντο δὲ αὐτοῦ αἱ πηγαὶ οὐ πρόσω εἶναι. 3. ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύοντο διὰ χιόνος πολλῆς καὶ πεδίου σταθμοὺς τρεῖς παρασάγγας πεντεκαίδεκα. ὁ δὲ τρίτος ἐγένετο χαλεπός, καὶ ἄνεμος βορρῆς ἐναντίος ἔπνει παντάπασιν ἀποκαίων πάντα καὶ πηγνὺς τοὺς ἀνθρώπους. 4. ἔνθα δὴ τῶν μάντεων τις εἶπε σφαγιασασθαι τῷ ἀνέμῳ, καὶ σφαγιαῖζεται· καὶ πᾶσι δὴ περιφανῶς ἔδοξε λῆξαι τὸ χαλεπὸν τοῦ πνεύματος.

V. 4. εἶπε = *jussiv*, told them to

ἦν δὲ τῆς χιόνος τὸ βάθος ὀργυιὰ· ὥστε καὶ τῶν ὑποζυγίων καὶ τῶν ἀνδραπόδων πολλὰ ἀπώλετο, καὶ τῶν στρατιωτῶν ὡς τριάκοντα. 5. διεγέγοντο δὲ τὴν γύκτα πῦρ καίοντες· ξύλα δ' ἦν ἐν τῷ σταθμῷ πολλά· οἱ δὲ ὄψε προσιόντες ξύλα οὐκ εἶχον. οἱ οὖν πάλαι ἦκοντες καὶ τὸ πῦρ καίοντες οὐ προσίεσαν πρὸς τὸ πῦρ τοὺς ὄψίζοντας, εἰ μὴ μεταδοίεν αὐτοῖς πυρούς ἢ ἄλλο τι εἴτι ἔχοιεν βρωτόν. 6. ἔνθα δὴ μετεδίδοσαν ἀλλήλοις ὧν εἶχον ἕκαστοι. ἔνθα δὲ τὸ πῦρ ἐκαίετο διατηκομένης τῆς χιόνος βόθροι ἐγένοντο μεγάλοι ἔστε ἐπὶ τὸ δάπεδον, οὐ δὴ παρῆν μετρεῖν τὸ βάθος τῆς χιόνος.

7. Ἐντεῦθεν δὲ τὴν ἐπιούσαν ἡμέραν ὄλην ἐπορεύοντο διὰ χιόνος, καὶ πολλοὶ τῶν ἀνθρώπων ἐβουλιμίασαν. Ξενοφῶν δ' ὀπισθοφυλακῶν καὶ καταλαμβάνων τοὺς πίπτοντας τῶν ἀνθρώπων ἠγγόει ὅ,τι τὸ πάθος εἶη. 8. ἐπειδὴ δὲ εἶπέ τις αὐτῷ τῶν ἐμπείρων ὅτι σαφῶς βουλιμιῶσι, κἄν τι φάγωσιν ἀναστήσονται, περιῶν περὶ τὰ ὑποζύγια, εἴ πού τι ὀρώη βρωτὸν ἢ ποτόν, διεδίδου καὶ διέπεμπε διδόντας τοὺς δυναμένους παρατρέχειν τοῖς βουλιμιῶσιν. ἐπειδὴ δὲ τι ἐμφάγοιεν, ἀνίσταντο καὶ ἐπορεύοντο. 9. πορευομένων δὲ Χειρίσοφος μὲν ἀμφὶ κνέφας πρὸς κώμην ἀφικνεῖται, καὶ ὑδροφορούσας ἐκ τῆς κώμης πρὸς τῇ κρήνῃ γυναῖκας καὶ κόρας καταλαμβάνει ἔμπροσθεν τοῦ ἐρύματος. αὗται ἡρώτων αὐτοὺς τίνες εἶεν. 10. ὁ δ' ἐρμηνεὺς εἶπε Περσιιστὶ ὅτι παρὰ βασιλέως πορεύονται πρὸς τὸν σατράπην. αἱ δὲ ἔπε-

κρίναντο ὅτι οὐκ ἐνταῦθα εἶη, ἀλλ' ἀπέχει ὅσον παρασάγγην. οἱ δ', ἐπεὶ ὄψε ἦν, πρὸς τὸν κωμάρχην συνεισέρχονται εἰς τὸ ἔρυμα σὺν ταῖς ὑδροφόροις. 11. Χειρίσοφος μὲν οὖν καὶ ὅσοι ἐδυνήθησαν τοῦ στρατεύματος ἐνταῦθα ἐστρατοπεδεύσαντο, τῶν δ' ἄλλων στρατιωτῶν οἱ μὴ δυνάμενοι διατελέσαι τὴν ὁδὸν ἐνυκτέρευσαν ἄσιτοι καὶ ἄνευ πυρός· καὶ ἐνταῦθά τινες ἀπώλοντο τῶν στρατιωτῶν. 12. ἐφείποντο δὲ τῶν πολεμίων συνειλεγμένοι τινές, καὶ τὰ μὴ δυνάμενα τῶν ὑποζυγίων ἤρπαζον, καὶ ἀλλήλοις ἐμάχοντο περὶ αὐτῶν. ἐλείποντο δὲ καὶ τῶν στρατιωτῶν οἳ τε διεφθαρμένοι ὑπὸ τῆς χιόνος τοὺς ὀφθαλμούς, οἳ τε ὑπὸ τοῦ ψύχους τοὺς δακτύλους τῶν ποδῶν ἀποσεσηπότες. 13. ἦν δὲ τοῖς μὲν ὀφθαλμοῖς ἐπικούρημα τῆς χιόνος εἴ τις μέλαν τι ἔχων πρὸ τῶν ὀφθαλμῶν πορεύοιτο, τῶν δὲ ποδῶν, εἴ τις κινοῖτο καὶ μηδέποτε ἤσυχίαν ἔχοι, καὶ εἰ τὴν νύκτα ὑπολύοιτο. 14. ὅσοι δὲ ὑποδεδεμένοι ἐκοιμῶντο, εἰσεδύοντο εἰς τοὺς πόδας οἱ ἱμάντες καὶ τὰ ὑποδήματα περιεπήγνυντο· καὶ γὰρ ἦσαν ἐπειδὴ ἐπέλιπε τὰ ἀρχαῖα ὑποδήματα καρβάτιναι [αὐτοῖς] πεποιημένοι ἐκ τῶν νεοδάρτων βοῶν. 15. διὰ τὰς τοιαύτας οὖν ἀνάγκας ὑπελείποντό τινες τῶν στρατιωτῶν καὶ ἰδόντες μέλαν τι χωρίον διὰ τὸ ἐκλελοιπέναι αὐτόθι τὴν χιόνα εἴκαζον τετηκέναι· καὶ ἐτετήκει διὰ κρήνην τινὰ ἢ πλησίον ἦν ἀτμίζουσα ἐν νάπη. ἐνταῦθ' ἐκτραπόμενοι ἐκάθηντο καὶ οὐκ ἔφασαν πορεύεσθαι. 16. ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἔχων ὀπισθοφύλακας ὡς ἤσθητο, ἐδεῖτο αὐτῶν πάσῃ

τέχνη καὶ μηχανῇ μὴ ἀπολείπεσθαι, λέγων ὅτι ἔπονται πολλοὶ πολέμιοι συνειλεγμένοι, καὶ τελευτῶν ἐχαλέπαινε. οἱ δὲ σφάζειν ἐκέλευον· οὐ γὰρ ἂν δύνασθαι πορευθῆναι. 17. ἐνταῦθα ἔδοξε κράτιστον εἶναι τοὺς ἐπομένους πολέμιους φοβῆσαι, εἴ τις δύναιτο, μὴ ἐπιπέσοιεν τοῖς κάμνουσι. καὶ ἦν μὲν σκότος ἤδη, οἱ δὲ προσήεσαν πολλῶ θορύβῳ ἀμφὶ ὧν εἶχον διαφερόμενοι. 18. ἔνθα δὴ οἱ μὲν ὀπισθοφύλακες ἄτε ὑγιαίνοντες ἐξαναστάντες ἔδραμον εἰς τοὺς πολέμιους. οἱ δὲ κάμνοντες ἀνακραγόντες ὅσον ἠδύναντο μέγιστον τὰς ἀσπίδας πρὸς τὰ δόρατα ἔκρουσαν. οἱ δὲ πολέμιοι δείσαντες ἤκαν ἑαυτοὺς κατὰ τῆς χιόνης εἰς τὴν νάπην, καὶ οὐδεὶς ἔτι οὐδαμοῦ ἐφθέγγετο.

19. Καὶ Ξενοφῶν μὲν καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ εἰπόντες τοῖς ἀσθενοῦσιν ὅτι τῇ ὑστεραία ἤξουσί τινες ἐπ' αὐτούς, πορευόμενοι πρὶν τέτταρα στάδια διελθεῖν ἐντυγχάνουσιν ἐν τῇ ὁδῷ ἀναπαυομένοις ἐπὶ τῆς χιόνης τοῖς στρατιώταις ἐγκεκαλυμμένοις, καὶ οὐδὲ φυλακὴ οὐδεμία καθειστήκει· καὶ ἀνίστασαν αὐτούς. 20. οἱ δ' ἔλεγον ὅτι οἱ ἔμπροσθεν οὐχ ὑποχωροῖεν. ὁ δὲ παριῶν καὶ παραπέμπων τῶν πελταστῶν τοὺς ἰσχυροτάτους ἐκέλευε σκέψασθαι τί εἴη τὸ κωλύον. οἱ δὲ ἀπήγγελλον ὅτι ὄλον οὕτως ἀναπαύοιτο τὸ στράτευμα. 21. ἐνταῦθα καὶ οἱ ἀμφὶ Ξενοφῶντα ἠύλισθησαν αὐτοῦ ἄνευ πυρὸς καὶ ἄδειπνοι, φυλακὰς οἷας ἠδύναντο καταστησάμενοι. ἐπεὶ δὲ πρὸς ἡμέραν ἦν, ὁ μὲν Ξενοφῶν πέμψας πρὸς τοὺς ἀσθενοῦντας τοὺς νεωτάτους ἀναστή-

18. ἤκαν, voc. 1: see ἔημι.

σαντας ἐκέλευεν ἀναγκάζειν προίεσαι. 22. ἐν δὲ τούτῳ Χειρίσοφος πέμπει τῶν ἐκ τῆς κώμης σκεψομένους πῶς ἔχοιεν οἱ τελευταῖοι. οἱ δὲ ἄσμενοι ἰδόντες τοὺς μὲν ἀσθενούντας τούτοις παρέδοσαν κομίζειν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον, αὐτοὶ δὲ ἐπορεύοντο, καὶ πρὶν εἴκοσι στάδια διεληλυθέναι ἦσαν πρὸς τῇ κώμῃ ἔνθα Χειρίσοφος ἠύλλετο. 23. ἐπεὶ δὲ συνεγένοντο ἀλλήλοις, ἔδοξε κατὰ τὰς κώμας ἀσφαλὲς εἶναι τὰς τάξεις σκηνοῦν. καὶ Χειρίσοφος μὲν αὐτοῦ ἔμενεν, οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι διαλαχόντες ἄς ἐώρων κώμας ἐπορεύοντο ἕκαστοι τοὺς ἑαυτῶν ἔχοντες.

24. Ἐνθα δὴ Πολυβώτης Ἀθηναῖος λοχαγὸς ἐκέλευσεν ἀφίεσαι ἑαυτὸν καὶ λαβὼν τοὺς εὐζώνους, θέων ἐπὶ τὴν κώμην ἣν εἰλήχει Ξενοφῶν καταλαμβάνει πάντας ἔνδον τοὺς κωμήτας καὶ τὸν κωμάρχην, καὶ πῶλους εἰς δασμὸν βασιλεῖ τρεφομένους ἑπτακαίδεκα, καὶ τὴν θυγατέρα τοῦ κωμάρχου ἐνάτην ἡμέραν γεγαμημένην ὃ δ' ἀνήρ αὐτῆς λαγῶς ᾤχετο θηράσων καὶ οὐχ ἦλω ἐν ταῖς κώμαις. 25. αἱ δ' οἰκίαι ἦσαν κατὰ γαίαι, τὸ μὲν

22. τῶν ἐκ τῆς κώμης, *some of the villagers*: cf. οἱ ἐκ τῆς ἀγορᾶς, I. 2. 18; οἱ δὲ, *the party sent by Xenophon*; τούτοις, *the villagers*.

24. ἦλω. see I. 4. 7.

25. "This description of a village on the Armenian uplands applies itself to many that I visited in the present day. The descent by wells is now rare, but is still to be met with; but in exposed and elevated situations the houses are uniformly semi-subterraneous, and entered by as small an aperture as possible, to prevent the cold getting in. Whatever is the kind of cottage used, cows, sheep, goats, and fowls participate with the family in the

στόμα ὡσπερ φρέατος, κάτω δ' εὐρεῖαι. αἱ δὲ εἰσοδοὶ τοῖς μὲν ὑποζυγίοις ὀρυκταί, οἱ δὲ ἄνθρωποι κατέβαινον ἐπὶ κλίμακος. ἐν δὲ ταῖς οἰκίαις ἦσαν αἶγες, οἴες, βόες, ὄρνιθες, καὶ τὰ ἔκγονα τούτων· τὰ δὲ κτήνη πάντα χιλῶ ἔνδον ἐτρέφοντο. 26. ἦσαν δὲ καὶ πυροὶ καὶ κριθαὶ καὶ ὄσπρια, καὶ οἶνος κρίθινος ἐν κρατήρσιν· ἐνήσαν δὲ καὶ αὐταὶ αἱ κριθαὶ ἰσοχειλεῖς, καὶ κάλαμοι ἐνέκειντο, οἱ μὲν μείζους, οἱ δὲ ἐλάττους, γόνατα οὐκ ἔχοντες· 27. τούτους δ' ἔδει ὁπότε τις διψῶν λαβόντα εἰς τὸ στόμα μύζειν. καὶ πάνυ ἄκρατος ἦν, εἰ μὴ τις ὕδωρ ἐπιχέοι· καὶ πάνυ ἠδὺ συμμαθόντι τὸ πόμα ἦν.

Xenophon entertains the chief of the village, and promises to reward and protect him, if he will conduct the army faithfully to another tribe. Xenophon proceeds with the komarch to Cheirisophus, and finds the soldiers everywhere revelling at their quarters. They ascertain from the komarch that the country is called Armenia, that the horses (a small, spirited breed) were a tribute for the king, and that the adjoining people were the Chalybes.

VI. Ἐπεὶ δ' ἡμέρα ἦν ὀγδόη, τὸν μὲν ἡγεμόνα παραδίδωσι Χειρισόφῳ, τοὺς δ' οἰκέτας καταλείπει τῷ κωμάρχη, πλὴν τοῦ υἱοῦ τοῦ ἄρτι ἠβάσκοντος·

warmth and protection thereof; the summer is indeed occupied, in these inhospitable uplands, in laying in stores of fuel and provender for the winter, and corn and vegetables are found in them in abundance, but barley-wine I never met with; and time has entailed a new evil, that in many places the wandering Kurds force themselves upon the sedentary Armenians, to pass their winter by their scanty fires."—*Ainsworth*, p. 178.

τοῦτον δ' Ἐπισθένεια Ἀμφιπολίτη παραδίδωσι φυλάττειν, ὅπως εἰ καλῶς ἡγήσοιτο ἔχων καὶ τοῦτον ἀπίοι. καὶ εἰς τὴν οἰκίαν αὐτοῦ εἰσεφόρησαν ὡς ἐδύναντο πλείστα, καὶ ἀναζεύξαντες ἐπορεύοντο. 2. ἡγεῖτο δ' αὐτοῖς ὁ κωμάρχης λελυμένος διὰ χιόνος· καὶ ἤδη τε ἦν ἐν τῷ τρίτῳ σταθμῷ, καὶ Χειρίσοφος αὐτῷ ἐχαλεπάνθη ὅτι οὐκ εἰς κόμας ἦγεν. ὁ δ' ἔλεγεν ὅτι οὐκ εἶεν ἐν τῷ τόπῳ τούτῳ. ὁ δὲ Χειρίσοφος αὐτὸν ἔπαισε μὲν, ἔδῃσε δ' οὐ. 3. ἐκ δὲ τούτου ἐκείνος τῆς νυκτὸς ἀποδράς ὄχθητο καταλιπὼν τὸν υἱόν. τό τε δὲ Χειρισόφῳ καὶ Ξενοφῶντι μόνον διάφορον ἐν τῇ πορείᾳ ἐγένετο ἢ τοῦ ἡγεμόνος κάκωσις καὶ ἀμέλεια. Ἐπισθένης δὲ ἡράσθη τε τοῦ παιδὸς καὶ οἰκαδε κομίσας πιστοτάτῳ ἐχρήτη. 4. μετὰ τοῦτο ἐπορεύθησαν ἑπτὰ σταθμούς ἀνὰ πέντε παρασάγγας τῆς ἡμέρας παρὰ τὸν Φᾶσιν ποταμόν, εὖρος πλεθριαῖον. 5. ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύθησαν σταθμούς δύο παρασάγγας δέκα· ἐπὶ δὲ τῇ εἰς τὸ πεδίον ὑπερβολῇ, ἀπήντησαν αὐτοῖς Χάλυβες καὶ Ταόχοι καὶ Φασιανοί. 6. Χειρίσοφος δ' ἐπεὶ κατείδε τοὺς πολεμίους ἐπὶ τῇ ὑπερβολῇ, ἐπαύσατο πορευόμενος, ἀπέχων εἰς τριάκοντα σταδίους· ἵνα μὴ κατὰ κέρας ἄγων πλησιάσῃ τοῖς πολεμίους. παρήγγειλε δὲ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις παρὰ-

VI. 3. ἀποδράς, aor. 2. part. : see I. 4. 8.

4. ἀνά. see I. 8. 1.

6. κέρας = *cornu*; in a military sense the wing or extremity of an army. When an army is marching with a wing first, it is said to be in *column*, as opposed to ἐπὶ φάλαγγος or κατὰ φάλαγγα, in *line*.

γειν τοὺς λόχους, ὅπως ἐπὶ φάλαγγος γένοιτο τὸ στράτευμα.

When the rearguard came up, a council of war was held. Cleonor proposed to attack the enemy as soon as the soldiers had dined. Xenophon suggested that a detachment should be sent during the night to occupy the mountain-heights at some distance from where the enemy were posted, and volunteered to perform this duty with the rearguard. This suggestion is adopted; but Xenophon is advised to remain at his post with the rearguard, and to trust the execution of the plan to volunteers.

20. Ἐκ. τούτου Ἀριστώνυμος Μεθυδριεύς ἔρχεται ὀπλίτας ἔχων, καὶ Ἀριστέας Χίος γυμνήτας, καὶ Νικόμαχος Οἰταῖος γυμνήτας· καὶ σύνθημα ἐποιήσαντο ὅποτε ἔχοιεν τὰ ἄκρα πυρὰ καίειν πολλά. 21. ταῦτα συνθέμενοι ἥριστων· ἐκ δὲ τοῦ ἀρίστου προήγαγεν ὁ Χειρίσοφος τὸ στράτευμα πᾶν ὡς δέκα σταδίους πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους, ὅπως ὡς μάλιστα δοκοίη ταύτη προσάξειν.

22. Ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἐδείπνησαν καὶ νύξ ἐγένετο, οἱ μὲν ταχθέντες ὄχοντο, καὶ καταλαμβάνουσι τὸ ὄρος, οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι αὐτοῦ ἀνεπαύοντο. οἱ δὲ πολέμιοι ὡς ἤσθοντο ἐχόμενον τὸ ὄρος, ἐγρηγόρεσαν καὶ ἔκαιον πυρὰ πολλά διὰ νυκτός. 23. ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἡμέρα ἐγένετο, Χειρίσοφος μὲν θυσάμενος ἦγε κατὰ τὴν ὁδόν, οἱ δὲ τὸ ὄρος καταλαβόντες κατὰ τὰ ἄκρα ἐπήεσαν. 24. τῶν δὲ αὐτῶν πολεμίων τὸ μὲν πολὺ ἔμενον ἐπὶ τῇ ὑπερβολῇ τοῦ ὄρους, μέρος δ' αὐτῶν ἀπήντα τοῖς κατὰ τὰ ἄκρα. πρὶν δὲ ὁμοῦ εἶναι τοὺς πολλοὺς ἀλλήλους συμμίγνυσιν οἱ κατὰ τὰ ἄκρα, καὶ νικῶσιν οἱ Ἕλληνας καὶ διώκουσιν.

25. ἐν τούτῳ δὲ καὶ οἱ ἐκ τοῦ πεδίου οἱ μὲν πελτασταὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων δρόμῳ ἔθειον πρὸς τοὺς παρατεταγμένους, Χειρίσοφος δὲ βιάδην ταχὺ ἐφείπετο σὺν τοῖς ὀπλίταις. 26. οἱ δὲ πολέμοι οἱ ἐπὶ τῇ ὁδῷ, ἐπειδὴ τὸ ἄνω ἐώρων ἠττώμενον, φεύγουσι· καὶ ἀπέθανον μὲν οὐ πολλοὶ αὐτῶν. γέβρα δὲ πάμπολλα ἐλήφθη, ἃ οἱ Ἕλληνες ταῖς μαχαίραις κόπτοντες ἀχρεῖα ἐπόλουν. 27. ὡς δ' ἀνέβησαν, θύσαντες καὶ τρόπαιον στησάμενοι κατέβησαν εἰς τὸ πεδίον, καὶ εἰς κώμας πολλῶν καὶ ἀγαθῶν γεμούσας ἦλθον.

VII. Ἐκ δὲ τούτων ἐπορεύθησαν εἰς Ταόχους σταθμοὺς πέντε παρασάγγας τριάκοντα· καὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἐπέλιπε· χωρία γὰρ ἔκουν ἰσχυρὰ οἱ Ταόχοι, ἐν οἷς καὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια πάντα εἶχον ἀνακεκομισμένοι. 2. ἐπεὶ δ' ἀφίκοντο πρὸς χωρίον ὃ πόλιν μὲν οὐκ εἶχεν οὐδ' οἰκίας, συνεληλυθότες δ' ἦσαν αὐτόσε καὶ ἄνδρες καὶ γυναῖκες καὶ κτήνη πολλά, Χειρίσοφος μὲν πρὸς τοῦτο προσέβαλλεν εὐθύς ἤκων· ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἡ πρώτη τάξις ἀπέκαμνεν, ἄλλη προσῆι καὶ αὐθις ἄλλη· οὐ γὰρ ἦν ἀθρόοις περιστῆναι, ἀλλὰ ποταμὸς ἦν κύκλω. 3. ἐπειδὴ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἦλθε σὺν τοῖς ὀπισθοφύλαξι καὶ πελτασταῖς καὶ ὀπλίταις, ἐνταῦθα δὴ λέγει Χειρίσοφος, *Εἰς καλὸν ἤκετε*· τὸ γὰρ χωρίον αἰρετέον· τῇ γὰρ στρατιᾷ οὐκ ἔστι τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, εἰ μὴ ληψόμεθα τὸ χωρίον.

A council of war is held, in which Xenophon points out the most advantageous method of conducting the attack.

VII. 3. *eis kalon*, in good time.

8. Ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύοντο Χειρίσοφος καὶ Ξενοφῶν καὶ Καλλιμάχος Παρράσιος λοχαγός· τούτου γὰρ ἡ ἡγεμονία ἦν τῶν ὀπισθοφυλάκων λοχαγῶν ἐκείνη τῇ ἡμέρᾳ· οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι λοχαγοὶ ἔμενον ἐν τῷ ἀσφαλεῖ. μετὰ τοῦτο οὖν ἀπῆλθον ὑπὸ τὰ δένδρα ἄνθρωποι ὡς ἑβδομήκοντα, οὐκ ἀθροοὶ ἀλλὰ καθ' ἕνα, ἕκαστος φυλαττόμενος ὡς ἐδύνατο. 9. Ἀγασίας δὲ ὁ Στυμφάλιος καὶ Ἀριστῶνυμος Μεθυδριεύς καὶ οὗτοι τῶν ὀπισθοφυλάκων λοχαγοὶ ὄντες, καὶ ἄλλοι δέ, ὑφίστασαν ἔξω τῶν δένδρων· οὐ γὰρ ἦν ἀσφαλῶς ἐν τοῖς δένδροις ἐστάναι πλεῖον ἢ τὸν ἕνα λόχον. 10. ἔνθα δὴ Καλλιμάχος μηχανᾶται τι προέτρεχεν ἀπὸ τοῦ δένδρου ὑφ' ᾧ ἦν αὐτὸς δύο ἢ τρία βήματα· ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ λίθοι φέροντο, ἀνεχάζετο εὐπετῶς· ἐφ' ἐκάστης δὲ προδρομῆς πλεόν ἢ δέκα ἄμαξαι πετρῶν ἀνηλίσκοντο. 11. ὁ δὲ Ἀγασίας ὡς ὄρᾳ τὸν Καλλιμάχον ἅ ἐποίει, καὶ τὸ στράτευμα πᾶν θεώμενον, δείσας μὴ οὐ πρῶτος παραδράμοι εἰς τὸ χωρίον, οὐδὲ τὸν Ἀριστῶνυμον πλησίον ὄντα παρακαλέσας, οὐδὲ Εὐρύλοχον τὸν Λουσιέα ἐταίρους ὄντας, οὐδὲ ἄλλον οὐδένα, χωρεῖ αὐτὸς καὶ παρέρχεται πάντας. 12. ὁ δὲ Καλλιμάχος ὡς ἑώρα αὐτὸν παριόντα, ἐπιλαμβάνεται αὐτοῦ τῆς ἴτυος· ἐν δὲ τούτῳ παρέθει αὐτοὺς Ἀριστῶνυμος Μεθυδριεύς, καὶ μετὰ τοῦτον Εὐρύλοχος Λουσιεύς. πάντες γὰρ οὗτοι ἀντεποιοῦντο ἀρετῆς καὶ διηγωνίζοντο πρὸς ἀλλήλους· καὶ οὕτως ἐρίζοντες αἰρούσι τὸ χωρίον. ὡς γὰρ ἄπαξ εἰσέδραμον, οὐδεὶς πέτρος ἄνωθεν ἠνέχθη. 13. ἐνταῦθα δὴ δεινὸν ἦν θέαμα.

12. cf. IV. 1. 27.

αἱ γὰρ γυναῖκες ῥίπτουσαι τὰ παιδιά εἶτα καὶ ἑαυτὰς ἐπικατεῖρῥίπτουν, καὶ οἱ ἄνδρες ὡσαύτως. ἔνθα δὴ καὶ Αἰνείας Στυμφάλιος λοχαγὸς ἰδὼν τινα θέοντα ὡς ῥίψοντα ἑαυτὸν στολὴν ἔχοντα καλὴν ἐπιλαμβάνεται ὡς κωλύσων 14. ὁ δὲ αὐτὸν ἐπισπάται, καὶ ἀμφότεροι ᾤχοντο κατὰ τῶν πετρῶν φερόμενοι καὶ ἀπέθανον. ἐντεῦθεν ἄνθρωποι μὲν πάνυ ὀλίγοι ἐλήφθησαν, βόες δὲ καὶ ὄνοι πολλοὶ καὶ πρόβατα.

15. Ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύθησαν διὰ Χαλύβων σταθμοὺς ἑπτὰ παρασάγγας πενήκοντα. οὗτοι ἦσαν ὦν διήλθον ἀλκιμώτατοι, καὶ εἰς χεῖρας ἦσαν. εἶχον δὲ θώρακας λινοῦς μέχρι τοῦ ἦτρου, ἀντὶ δὲ τῶν πτερύγων σπάρτα πυκνὰ ἔστραμμένα. 16. εἶχον δὲ καὶ κνημίδας, καὶ κράνη, καὶ παρὰ τὴν ζώνην μαχαίριον ὅσον ξυλήην Λακωνικὴν, ᾧ ἔσφαττον ὦν κρατεῖν δύναιντο, καὶ ἀποτέμνοντες ἂν τὰς κεφαλὰς ἔχοντες ἐπορεύοντο, καὶ ἦδον καὶ ἐχόρευον ὁπότε οἱ πολέμιοι αὐτοὺς ὄψεσθαι ἐμελλον. εἶχον δὲ καὶ δόρυ ὡς πεντεκαίδεκα πηχῶν μίαν λόγχην ἔχον. 17. οὗτοι ἐνέμενον ἐν τοῖς πολίσμασιν. ἐπεὶ δὲ παρέλθοιεν οἱ Ἕλληνας, εἶποντο αἰεὶ μαχόμενοι. ᾤκουν δὲ ἐν τοῖς ὄχυροῖς, καὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἐν τούτοις ἀνακεκομισμένοι ἦσαν ὥστε μηδὲν λαμβάνειν αὐτόθεν τοὺς Ἕλληνας, ἀλλὰ διετράφησαν τοῖς κτήνεσιν ἃ ἐκ τῶν Ταόχων ἔλαβον. 18. ἐκ τούτου οἱ Ἕλληνας ἀφίκοντο ἐπὶ Ἄρπασον ποταμόν, εὖρος τεττάρων πλέθρων. ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύθησαν διὰ Σκυθινῶν σταθμοὺς τέταρας παρασάγγας εἴκοσι διὰ πεδίου εἰς κόμας,

ἐν αἷς ἔμειναν ἡμέρας τρεῖς καὶ ἐπεσιτίσαντο. 19. ἐντεῦθεν δὲ ἦλθον σταθμοὺς τέτταρας παρασάγγας εἴκοσι πρὸς πόλιν μεγάλην καὶ εὐδαίμονα καὶ οἰκουμένην ἢ ἐκαλεῖτο Γυμνίας· ἐκ ταύτης τῆς χώρας ὁ ἄρχων τοῖς Ἑλλησιν ἡγεμόνα πέμπει, ὅπως διὰ τῆς ἑαυτῶν πολεμίας χώρας ἄγοι αὐτούς. 20. ἔλθων δ' ἐκεῖνος λέγει ὅτι ἄξει αὐτοὺς πέντε ἡμερῶν εἰς χωρίον ὅθεν ὄψονται θάλατταν· εἰ δὲ μὴ, τεθνάναι ἐπηγγέλλετο. καὶ ἡγούμενος ἐπειδὴ ἐνέβαλεν εἰς τὴν ἑαυτοῖς πολεμίαν, παρεκελεύετο αἰθεῖν καὶ φθειρεῖν τὴν χώραν· ὃ καὶ δῆλον ἐγένετο ὅτι τούτου ἕνεκα ἔλθοι, οὐ τῆς τῶν Ἑλλήνων εὐνοίας. 21. καὶ ἀφικνοῦνται ἐπὶ τὸ ὄρος τῆ πέμπτη ἡμέρᾳ· ὄνομα δὲ τῷ ὄρει ἦν Θήχης. ἐπειδὴ δὲ οἱ πρῶτοι ἐγένοντο ἐπὶ τοῦ ὄρους καὶ κατείδον τὴν θάλατταν, κραυγὴ πολλὴ ἐγένετο. 22. ἀκούσας δὲ ὁ Ξενοφῶν καὶ οἱ ὀπισθοφύλακες ᾤθησαν ἄλλους ἔμπροσθεν ἐπιτίθεσθαι πολεμίους· εἶποντο γὰρ ὀπισθεν ἐκ τῆς καιομένης χώρας, καὶ αὐτῶν οἱ ὀπισθοφύλακες ἀπέκτεινάν τέ τινας καὶ ἐξώγησαν ἐνέδραν ποιησάμενοι, καὶ γέρρα ἔλαβον δασειῶν βοῶν ὠμοβόεια ἀμφὶ τὰ εἴκοσιν.

23. Ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἡ βοῆ πλείων τε ἐγίγνετο καὶ ἐγγύτερον, καὶ οἱ αἰεὶ ἐπιόντες ἔθεον δρόμῳ ἐπὶ τοὺς αἰεὶ βοῶντας, καὶ πολλῷ μείζων ἐγίγνετο ἡ βοῆ ὅσῳ δὴ πλείους ἐγίγνοντο, ἐδόκει δὴ μείζον τι εἶναι τῷ Ξενοφῶντι. 24. καὶ ἀναβάς ἐφ' ἵππον καὶ Δύκιον καὶ τοὺς ἱππέας ἀναλαβὼν παρεβοήθει· καὶ τάχα δὴ ἀκούουσι βοῶντων τῶν στρατιωτῶν θάλαττα, θάλαττα, καὶ παρεγγυώντων. ἔνθα δὴ

ἔθεον ἅπαντες καὶ οἱ ὀπισθοφύλακες, καὶ τὰ ὑποζύγια ἠλαύνετο καὶ οἱ ἵπποι. 25. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀφίκοντο πάντες ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον, ἐνταῦθα δὴ περιέβαλλον ἀλλήλους καὶ στρατηγοὺς καὶ λοχαγοὺς δακρύοντες. καὶ ἐξαπίνης ὅτου δὴ παρεγγυήσαντος οἱ στρατιῶται φέρουσι λίθους καὶ ποιοῦσι κολωνὸν μέγαν. 26. ἐνταῦθα ἀνετίθεσαν δερμάτων πλήθος ὠμοβοείων καὶ βακτηρίας καὶ τὰ αἰχμάλωτα γέβρα, καὶ ὁ ἡγεμὼν αὐτὸς τε κατέτεμνε τὰ γέβρα καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις διεκελεύετο. 27. μετὰ ταῦτα τὸν ἡγεμόνα οἱ Ἕλληνες ἀποπέμπουσι δῶρα δόντες ἀπὸ κοινοῦ ἵππον καὶ φιάλην ἀργυρᾶν καὶ σκευὴν Περσικὴν καὶ δαρεικοὺς δέκα· ἤτει δὲ μάλιστα τοὺς δακτυλίους, καὶ ἔλαβε πολλοὺς παρὰ τῶν στρατιωτῶν. κώμην δὲ δεῖξας αὐτοῖς οὐ σκηψουσιν καὶ τὴν ὁδὸν ἣν πορεύονται εἰς Μάκρωνας, ἐπεὶ ἐσπέρα ἐγένετο, ἔρχετο τῆς νυκτὸς ἀπίων.

VIII. Ἐπιτεύθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν οἱ Ἕλληνες διὰ Μάκρωνων σταθμοὺς τρεῖς παρασάγγας δέκα. τῇ πρώτῃ δὲ ἡμέρῃ ἀφίκοντο ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμὸν ὃς ἄριζε τῆν τῶν Μάκρωνων καὶ τῆν τῶν Σκυθῶν. 2. εἶχον δ' ἱπερδέξιον χωρίον οἷον χαλεπώτατον καὶ ἐξ ἀριστερᾶς ἄλλον ποταμὸν, εἰς ὃν ἐρέβαλλεν ὁ ἀνῆξων δι' οὗ ἔκει δασύφαι. ἦν δὲ οὗτος δασὺς δένδρεσι παχέσι μὲν οὐκ ὀκτοῖς δέ. ταῦτα ἐπεὶ προσήλθον οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐσπετον σπεύδοντες εἰς τὸ χωρίον ὅς τι μάλιστα ἐφέλλετο. 3. οἱ δὲ Μάκρωνες ἔχοντες γέβρα καὶ λόγχας καὶ τρεχίους χιτῶνας αὐτοτεκέραι τῆς δεξιᾶς τῆς αὐτοτεκέραι ἦσαν, καὶ ἀλλήλους διεκελεύοντο καὶ λίθους εἰς τὸν ποτα-

μὸν ἔρριπτον, ἐξικνούντο δὲ οὐ, οὐδ' ἔβλαπτον οὐδέν.

4. Ἐνθα δὴ προσέρχεται τῷ Ξενοφῶντι τῶν πελταστῶν τις ἀνὴρ Ἀθήνησι φάσκων δεδουλευκέναι, λέγων ὅτι γινώσκαι τὴν φωνὴν τῶν ἀνθρώπων· καὶ οἶμαι, ἔφη, ἐμὴν ταύτην πατρίδα εἶναι· καὶ εἰ μὴ τι κωλύει ἐθέλω αὐτοῖς διαλεχθῆναι. 5. Ἄλλ' οὐδὲν κωλύει, ἔφη, ἀλλὰ διαλέγου, καὶ μάθε πρῶτον τίνες εἰσίν. οἱ δ' εἶπον ἐρωτήσαντος ὅτι Μάκρωνες. Ἐρώτα τοίνυν, ἔφη, αὐτοὺς τί ἀντιτετάχεται καὶ χρήζουσιν ἡμῖν πολέμιοι εἶναι. 6. οἱ δ' ἀπεκρίναντο· Ὅτι καὶ ὑμεῖς ἐπὶ τὴν ἡμετέραν χώραν ἔρχεσθε. λέγειν ἐκέλευον οἱ στρατηγοὶ ὅτι οὐ κακῶς γε ποιήσοντες, ἀλλὰ βασιλεῖ πολεμήσαντες ἀπερχόμεθα εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα, καὶ ἐπὶ θάλατταν βουλόμεθα ἀφικέσθαι. 7. ἡρώτων ἐκεῖνοι εἰ δοῖεν ἂν τούτων τὰ πιστά. οἱ δ' ἔφασαν καὶ δοῦναι καὶ λαβεῖν ἐθέλειν. ἐντεῦθεν διδῶσιν οἱ Μάκρωνες βαρβαρικὴν λόγῃην τοῖς Ἕλλησιν, οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες ἐκείνοις Ἑλληνικὴν. ταῦτα γὰρ ἔφασαν πιστὰ εἶναι· θεοὺς δὲ ἐπεμαρτύραντο ἀμφότεροι.

8. Μετὰ δὲ τὰ πιστὰ εὐθύς οἱ Μάκρωνες τὰ δένδρα συνεξέκοπτον, τὴν τε ὁδὸν ᾠδοποιοῦν ὡς διαβιβάσοντες ἐν μέσοις ἀναμειγμένοι τοῖς Ἕλλησι, καὶ ἀγορὰν οἷαν ἐδύναντο παρεῖχον, καὶ παρήγαγον ἐν τρισὶν ἡμέραις ἕως ἐπὶ τὰ Κόλχων ὄρια κατέστησαν τοὺς Ἕλληνας. 9. ἐνταῦθα ἦν

VIII. 5. ἀντιτετάχεται, a form of the 3 plur. pass. pres. perf. : see ἀντιτάττω.

ὄρος μέγα, προσβατὸν δέ· καὶ ἐπὶ τούτου οἱ Κόλχοι παρατεταγμένοι ἦσαν. καὶ τὸ μὲν πρῶτον οἱ Ἕλληνες ἀντιπαρετάξαντο κατὰ φάλαγγα ὡς οὕτως ἄξοντες πρὸς τὸ ὄρος· ἔπειτα δὲ ἔδοξε τοῖς στρατηγοῖς βουλευσασθαι συλλεγείσιν ὅπως ὡς κάλλιστα ἀγωνιούνται.

Xenophon points out the disadvantage of the present disposition of the troops, and proposes that the attack should be made by companies in column, and that sufficient space should be left between each company to allow the extreme columns to outflank the enemy's line.

14. Ταῦτα ἔδοξε, καὶ ἐπόουν ὀρθίους τοὺς λόχους. Ξενοφῶν δὲ ἀπιὼν ἐπὶ τὸ εὐώνυμον ἀπὸ τοῦ δεξιῦ ἔλεγε τοῖς στρατιώταις, Ἄνδρες, οὗτοί εἰσιν οὓς ὀράτε μόνοι ἔτι ἡμῖν ἐμποδὼν τὸ μὴ ἦδη εἶναι ἔνθα παλαι ἐσπεύδομεν· τούτους ἦν πως δυνώμεθα καὶ ὤμους δεῖ καταφαγεῖν.

15. Ἐπεὶ δ' ἐν ταῖς χώραις ἕκαστοι ἐγένοντο καὶ τοὺς λόχους ὀρθίους ἐποιήσαντο, ἐγένοντο μὲν λόχοι τῶν ὀπλιτῶν ἀμφὶ τοὺς ὀγδοήκοντα, ὁ δὲ λόχος ἕκαστος σχεδὸν εἰς τοὺς ἑκατὸν· τοὺς δὲ πελταστὰς καὶ τοὺς τοξότας τριχῆ ἐποιήσαντο, τοὺς μὲν τοῦ εἰωπίμου ἕξω, τοὺς δὲ τοῦ δεξιῦ, τοὺς δὲ κατὰ μέσον, σχεδὸν ἑξακοσίους ἑκάστους. 16. ἐκ τούτου κερηγήσαν οἱ στρατηγοὶ εὐχεσθαι· εἰζήμενοι δὲ καὶ καιαγίσαντες ἐπορεύοντο. καὶ Ξενοφῶν μὲν καὶ Ξενοφῶν καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτοῖς πελτασταὶ τῆς τῶν πολεμίων φάλαγγος ἕξω γένεσθαι ἐπορεύοντο· 17. οἱ δὲ πολέμιοι ὡς εἶδον αὐτοὺς ἀντιπαρετάξαντες οἱ μὲν ἐπὶ τὸ δεξιὸν οἱ δὲ

ἐπὶ τὸ εὐώνυμον διεσπάρσθησαν, καὶ πολὺ τῆς
 ἑαυτῶν φάλαγγος ἐν τῷ μέσῳ κενὸν ἐποίησαν.
 18. ἰδόντες δὲ αὐτοὺς διαχάζοντας οἱ κατὰ τὸ
 Ἀρκαδικὸν πελτασταί, ὧν ἦρχεν Αἰσχίνης ὁ Ἀκαρ-
 νάν, νομίσαντες φεύγειν ἀνακραγόντες ἔθεον καὶ
 οὗτοι πρῶτοι ἐπὶ τὸ ὄρος ἀναβαίνουσι· συνεφείπετο
 δὲ αὐτοῖς καὶ τὸ Ἀρκαδικὸν ὀπλιτικόν, ὧν ἦρχε
 Κλεάνωρ ὁ Ὀρχομένιος. 19. οἱ δὲ πολέμιοι, ὡς
 ἤρξαντο θεῖν, οὐκέτι ἔστησαν, ἀλλὰ φυγῇ ἄλλος
 ἄλλῃ ἐτράπετο. οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες ἀναβάντες ἐστρα-
 τοπεδεύοντο ἐν πολλαῖς κώμαις καὶ τὰπιτήδεια
 πολλὰ ἐχούσαις. 20. καὶ τὰ μὲν ἄλλα οὐδὲν ἦν
 ὅ,τι καὶ ἐθαύμασαν· τὰ δὲ σμήνη πολλὰ ἦν αὐτόθι,
 καὶ τῶν κηρίων ὅσοι ἔφαγον τῶν στρατιωτῶν πάν-
 τες ἄφρονές τε ἐγίγοντο καὶ ἤμουν καὶ κάτω διε-
 χῶρει αὐτοῖς καὶ ὀρθὸς οὐδεὶς ἠδύνατο ἵστασθαι,
 ἀλλ' οἱ μὲν ὀλίγον ἐδηδοκότες σφόδρα μεθύουσιν
 ἐφόκεσαν, οἱ δὲ πολὺ μαινομένοις, οἱ δὲ καὶ ἀπο-
 θνήσκουσιν. 21. ἔκειντο δὲ οὕτω πολλοὶ ὥσπερ
 τροπῆς γεγεννημένης, καὶ πολλὴ ἦν ἡ ἀθυμία. τῇ
 δ' ὑστεραία ἀπέθανε μὲν οὐδεὶς, ἀμφὶ δὲ τὴν αὐτήν

20. κάτω διεχώρει αὐτοῖς, *it passed through them downwards*,
 i. e. they were purged.

ἐδηδοκότες, perf. part. : see I. 5. 6.

“This fact of the honey of Asia Minor being in certain places
 and at certain seasons of a poisonous nature was known to all an-
 tiquity, and is very common in the present day ; so much so that
 I have known the peasants inquire if we would prefer the bitter
 or the sweet honey, for the honey so qualified has a slight but not
 unpleasant bitterness, and is preferred by many, from producing,
 when taken in moderate quantities, the effect of slight intoxica-
 tion.”—*Ainsworth*, p. 190.

που ὄραν ἀνεφρόνου· τρίτη δὲ καὶ τετάρτη ἀνίσταντο ὡσπερ ἐκ φαρμακοποσίας.

22. Ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν δύο σταθμούς παρασάγγας ἑπτά, καὶ ἦλθον ἐπὶ θάλατταν εἰς Τραπεζοῦντα πόλιν Ἑλληνίδα οἰκουμένην ἐν τῷ Εὐξείνῳ Πόντῳ Σινωπέων ἀποικίαν ἐν τῇ Κόλχων χώρα. ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν ἡμέρας ἀμφὶ τὰς τριάκοντα ἐν ταῖς τῶν Κόλχων κώμαις· 23. κἀντεῦθεν ὀρμώμενοι ἐληίζοντο τὴν Κολχίδα. ἀγορὰν δὲ παρείχον τῷ στρατοπέδῳ Τραπεζοῦντιοι, καὶ ἐδέξαντό τε τοὺς Ἑλληνας, καὶ ξένια ἔδωσαν βούς καὶ ἄλφιστα καὶ οἶνον. 24. συνδιεπράττοντο δὲ καὶ ὑπὲρ τῶν πλησίον Κόλχων τῶν ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ μάλιστα οἰκούντων, καὶ ξένια καὶ παρ' ἐκείνων ἦλθον βόες.

The Greeks offer sacrifices to the gods for having conducted them safely, and amuse themselves with athletic exercises and horse-racing.

E.

I. Ὅσα μὲν δὴ ἐν τῇ ἀναβάσει τῇ μετὰ Κύρου ἔπραξαν οἱ Ἑλληνες, καὶ ὅσα ἐν τῇ πορείᾳ τῇ μέχρι ἐπὶ θάλατταν τὴν ἐν τῷ Εὐξείνῳ Πόντῳ, καὶ ὡς εἰς Τραπεζοῦντα πόλιν Ἑλληνίδα ἀφίκοντο, καὶ ὡς ἀπέθυσαν ἃ εὔξαντο σωτήρια θύσειν ἔνθα πρῶτον εἰς φιλίαν γῆν ἀφίκοντο, ἐν τῷ πρόσθεν λόγῳ δεδήλωται.

A general assembly was held to discuss their future course. Antileon, a Thurian, intimated that he was tired of the incessant marching, marshalling, guarding, fighting, &c., and expressed a wish, in which the soldiers joined, to pursue the remainder of the journey by sea. Cheirisophus informs them that the Lacedæmonian admiral Anaxibius is his friend, and offers to proceed to him to obtain vessels. To this the soldiers gladly assented. Xenophon then proposes several precautionary measures to be adopted by the army during the time they are waiting for the ships, and suggests that they should procure galleys from the Trapezuntians, detain all the coasting-vessels that passed, maintain the crews as long as they were required, and pay them their freight. In case the transports thus procured prove insufficient, he recommends that instructions should be given to the adjoining maritime towns to repair the roads, which were almost impassable.

14. Ἐνταῦθα δὲ ἀνέκραγον ὡς οὐ δέοι ὁδοιπορεῖν. ὁ δὲ ὡς ἔγνω τὴν ἀφροσύνην αὐτῶν, ἐπέψήφισε μὲν οὐδέν, τὰς δὲ πόλεις ἐκούσας ἐπίεισεν ὁδοποιεῖν λέγων ὅτι θάττον ἀπαλλάξονται, ἢν εὐποροὶ γένωνται αἱ ὁδοί. 15. ἔλαβον δὲ καὶ πεντηκόντορον παρὰ τῶν Τραπεζουντίων, ἧ ἐπέστησαν Δέξιππον Δάκωνα περιόικον. οὗτος ἀμε-

I. 15. *περίοικος*. "This word properly denotes the inhabitants of a district lying around some particular locality, but is generally used to describe a dependent population, living without the walls or in the country provinces of a dominant city, and although personally free, deprived of the enjoyment of citizenship and the political rights conferred by it"—*Dict. Ant.* It is used to distinguish the inhabitants of Laconia from the Spartans on the one hand, and the Helots or slaves on the other. "The most distinguished among them were admitted to offices of trust, and sometimes invested with naval command."—*Dict. Ant.*

λήσας τοῦ ξυλλέγειν πλοῖα ἀποδράς ἔχτο ἐξω τοῦ Πόντου ἔχων τὴν ναῦν. οὗτος μὲν οὖν δίκαια ἔπαθεν ὕστερον· ἐν Θράκῃ γὰρ παρὰ Σεύθῃ πολυπραγμονῶν τι ἀπέθανεν ὑπὸ Νικάνδρου τοῦ Δίκωνος. 16. ἔλαβον δὲ καὶ τριακόντορον, ἣ ἐπεστάθη Πολυκράτης Ἀθηναῖος, ὃς ὅποσα λαμβάνοι πλοῖα κατῆγεν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον. καὶ τὰ μὲν ἀγώγιμα εἶ τι ἦγον ἐξαιρούμενοι φύλακας καθίστασαν ὅπως σῶα εἶη, τοῖς δὲ πλοίοις χρῆσαιτο εἰς παραγωγὴν. 17. ἐν ᾧ δὲ ταῦτα ἦν ἐπὶ λείαν ἐξήεσαν οἱ Ἕλληνες, καὶ οἱ μὲν ἐλάμβανον, οἱ δὲ καὶ οὐ. Κλεαίνετος δ' ἐξαγαγὼν καὶ τὸν ἑαυτοῦ καὶ ἄλλον λόχον πρὸς χωρίον χαλεπὸν αὐτὸς τε ἀπέθανε καὶ ἄλλοι πολλοὶ τῶν σὺν αὐτῷ.

II. Ἐπεὶ δὲ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια οὐκέτι ἦν λαμβάνειν ὥστε ἀπαυθημερίζειν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον, ἐκ τούτου λαβὼν Ξενοφῶν ἡγεμόνας τῶν Τραπεζουντίων ἐξάγει εἰς Δρίλας τὸ ἥμισυ τοῦ στρατεύματος, τὸ δὲ ἥμισυ κατέλιπε φυλάττειν τὸ στρατόπεδον· οἱ γὰρ Κόλχοι, ἅτε ἐκπεπτωκότες τῶν οἰκιῶν, πολλοὶ ἦσαν ἀθρόοι καὶ ὑπερεκάθητο ἐπὶ τῶν ἄκρων. 2. οἱ δὲ Τραπεζούντιοι ὀπόθεν μὲν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ῥάδιον ἦν λαβεῖν οὐκ ἦγον· φίλοι γὰρ αὐτοῖς ἦσαν εἰς τοὺς Δρίλας δὲ προθύμως ἦγον, ὑφ' ὧν κακῶς ἔπασχον, εἰς χωρία τε ὄρεινὰ καὶ δύσβατα καὶ ἀνθρώπους πολεμικωτάτους τῶν ἐν τῷ Πόντῳ.

3. Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦσαν ἐν τῇ ἄνω χώρᾳ οἱ Ἕλληνες, ὅποια τῶν χωρίων τοῖς Δρίλαις ἀλώσιμα εἶναι ἐδόκει ἐμπιπράντες ἀπήεσαν· καὶ οὐδὲν ἦν λαμ-

II. 3. ἐμπιπράντες, imp. part.: see ἐμπίρημι.

βάγειν εἰ μὴ ὕς ἢ βοῦς ἢ ἄλλο τι κτήνος τὸ πῦρ διαπεφευγός.

The provisions in the immediate neighbourhood of the camp being exhausted, Xenophon, under the conduct of Trapezuntian guides, leads out one half of the army against the Drilæ, leaving the other half to guard the camp. After burning several of the villages, the soldiers proceed to attack the chief town, a stronghold well fortified, to which most of the mountaineers had fled. The place is assaulted with more courage than discretion, and the army finds itself in a highly dangerous position, unable either to take the town, or to retreat. At length, by placing a huge pile of wood between themselves and the enemy and igniting it, the Greek troops were with difficulty withdrawn from their perilous position. The next day they return to the camp, pursued and harassed by the warlike Drilæ during their descent from the mountains.

III. Ἐπεὶ δὲ οὔτε Χειρίσοφος ἤκεν οὔτε πλοῖα ἱκανὰ ἦν οὔτε τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἦν λαμβάνειν ἔτι, ἐδόκει ἀπιτέον εἶναι. καὶ εἰς μὲν τὰ πλοῖα τοὺς τε ἀσθενούντας ἐνεβίβασαν, καὶ τοὺς ὑπὲρ τετραράκοντα ἔτη καὶ παῖδας καὶ γυναῖκας, καὶ τῶν σκευῶν ὅσα μὴ ἀνάγκη ἦν ἔχειν· καὶ Φιλήσιον καὶ Σοφαίνετον τοὺς πρεσβυτάτους τῶν στρατηγῶν εἰσβιβάσαντες τούτων ἐκέλευον ἐπιμελείσθαι· οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι ἐπορεύοντο· ἡ δὲ ὁδὸς ὠδοπεποιημένη ἦν. 2. καὶ ἀφικνοῦνται πορευόμενοι εἰς Κερασούντα τριταῖοι πόλιν Ἑλληνίδα ἐπὶ θαλάττῃ Σινοπέων ἄποικον ἐν τῇ Κολχίδι χώρα. 3. ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν ἡμέρας δέκα· καὶ ἐξέτασις ἐν τοῖς ὄπλοις ἐγένετο καὶ ἀριθμός, καὶ ἐγένοντο ὀκτακισχίλιοι καὶ ἑξακόσιοι. οὗτοι ἐσώθησαν ἐκ τῶν ἀμφὶ τοὺς μυρίους· οἱ δὲ

ἄλλοι ἀπόλοντο ὑπὸ τε τῶν πολεμίων καὶ χιόνος καὶ εἴτις νόσφ.

4. Ἐνταῦθα καὶ διαλαμβάνουσι τὸ ἀπὸ τῶν αἰχμαλώτων ἀργύριον γενόμενον. καὶ τὴν δεκάτην ἦν τῷ Ἀπόλλωνι ἐξείλον καὶ τῇ Ἐφεσίᾳ Ἀρτέμιδι διέλαβον οἱ στρατηγοὶ τὸ μέρος ἕκαστος φυλάττει τοῖς θεοῖς· ἀντὶ δὲ Χειρισόφου Νέων ὁ Ἀσιναιὸς ἔλαβε. 5. Ξενοφῶν οὖν τὸ μὲν τοῦ Ἀπόλλωνος ἀνάθημα ποιησάμενος ἀνατίθησιν εἰς τὸν ἐν Δελφοῖς τῶν Ἀθηναίων θησαυρόν, καὶ ἐπέγραψε τὸ τε αὐτοῦ ὄνομα καὶ τὸ Προξένου ὃς σὺν Κλεάρχῳ ἀπέθανε· ξένος γὰρ ἦν αὐτοῦ. 6. τὸ δὲ τῆς Ἀρτέμιδος τῆς Ἐφεσίας ὅτε ἀπῆει σὺν Ἀγησιλάῳ ἐκ τῆς Ἀσίας τὴν εἰς Βοιωτοὺς ὁδόν, καταλείπει παρὰ Μεγαβύζῳ τῷ τῆς Ἀρτέμιδος νεωκόρῳ, ὅτι αὐτὸς κινδυνεύσων ἐδόκει ἰέναι, καὶ ἐπέστειλεν, ἦν μὲν αὐτὸς σωθῆ, αὐτῷ ἀποδοῦναι· ἦν δέ τι πάθη, ἀναθεῖναι ποιησάμενον τῇ Ἀρτέμιδι ὅ,τι οἶοιτο χαρεῖσθαι τῇ θεῷ. 7. ἐπεὶ δ' ἔφευγεν ὁ Ξενοφῶν, κατοικοῦντος ἤδη αὐτοῦ ἐν Σκιλλοῦντι ὑπὸ τῶν Λακεδαιμονίων οἰκισθέντος παρὰ τὴν Ὀλυμπίαν ἀφικνεῖται Μεγάβυζος εἰς Ὀλυμπίαν θεωρήσων, καὶ ἰποδίδωσι τὴν παρακαταθήκην αὐτῷ. Ξενοφῶν δὲ λαβῶν χωρίον ὠνεῖται τῇ θεῷ ὅπου ἀνεῖλεν ὁ θεός. 8. ἔτυχε δὲ διὰ μέσου ῥέων τοῦ χωρίου ποταμὸς Σελινοῦς. καὶ ἐν Ἐφέσῳ δὲ παρὰ τὸν τῆς Ἀρτέμιδος νεῶν Σελινοῦς ποταμὸς παραρρεῖ, καὶ ἰχθυῖες δὲ ἐν ἀμφοτέροις ἔνεισι καὶ κόγχαι· ἐν δὲ τῷ ἐν Σκιλλοῦντι χωρίῳ καὶ θῆραι πάντων ὁπόσα

ἐστὶν ἀγρευόμενα θηρία. 9. ἐποίησε δὲ καὶ βωμὸν καὶ ναὸν ἀπὸ τοῦ ἱεροῦ ἀργυρίου, καὶ τὸ λοιπὸν δὲ αἰὲ δεκατεύων τὰ ἐκ τοῦ ἀγροῦ ὠραία θυσίαν ἐποίει τῇ θεῷ, καὶ πάντες οἱ πολῖται καὶ οἱ πρόσχωροι ἄνδρες καὶ γυναῖκες μετείχον τῆς ἐορτῆς. παρείχε δὲ ἡ θεὸς τοῖς σκηνώσιν ἄλφιστα, ἄρτους, οἶνον, τραγήματα, καὶ τῶν θυομένων ἀπὸ τῆς ἱερᾶς νομῆς λάχος, καὶ τῶν θηρευομένων δέ. 10. καὶ γὰρ θήραν ἐποιούντο εἰς τὴν ἐορτὴν οἳ τε Ξενοφώντος παῖδες καὶ οἱ τῶν ἄλλων πολιτῶν, οἱ δὲ βουλόμενοι καὶ ἄνδρες ξυνεθήρων· καὶ ἠλίσκετο τὰ μὲν ἐξ αὐτοῦ τοῦ ἱεροῦ χῶρον, τὰ δὲ καὶ ἐκ τῆς Φολῆς, σύες καὶ δορκάδες καὶ ἔλαφοι. 11. ἔστι δὲ ἡ χώρα ἧ ἐκ Λακεδαιμόνος εἰς Ὀλυμπίαν πορεύονται ὡς εἴκοσι στάδιοι ἀπὸ τοῦ ἐν Ὀλυμπίᾳ Διὸς ἱεροῦ. ἐνὶ δ' ἐν τῷ ἱερῷ χῶρῳ· καὶ λειμῶν καὶ ἄλση καὶ ὄρη δένδρων μεστά, ἱκανὰ καὶ σῦς καὶ αἰγας καὶ βούς τρέφειν καὶ ἵππους, ὥστε καὶ τὰ τῶν εἰς τὴν ἐορτὴν ἰόντων ὑποζύγια εὐωχεῖσθαι. 12. περὶ δὲ αὐτὸν τὸν ναὸν ἄλσος ἡμέρων δένδρων ἐφυτεύθη ὅσα ἐστὶ τρωκτὰ ὠραία. ὁ δὲ ναὸς ὡς μικρὸς μεγάλῳ τῷ ἐν Ἐφέσῳ εἴκασται, καὶ τὸ ξόανον ἔοικεν ὡς κυπαρίττινον χρυσῷ ὄντι τῷ ἐν Ἐφέσῳ. καὶ στήλη ἔστηκε παρὰ τὸν ναὸν γράμματα ἔχουσα· ΙΕΡΟΣ Ο ΧΩΡΟΣ ΤΗΣ ΑΡΤΕΜΙΔΟΣ. ΤΟΝ ΔΕ ΕΧΟΝΤΑ ΚΑΙ ΚΑΡΠΟΥΜΕΝΟΝ ΤΗΝ ΜΕΝ ΔΕΚΑΤΗΝ ΚΑΤΑΘΥΕΙΝ ΕΚΑΣΤΟΥ ΕΤΟΥΣ. ΕΚ ΔΕ ΤΟΥ ΠΕΡΙΤΤΟΥ ΤΟΝ ΝΑΟΝ ΕΠΙΣΚΕΤΑΖΕΙΝ. ΑΝ ΔΕ ΤΙΣ ΜΗ ΠΟΙΗΙ ΤΑΥΤΑ ΤΗΙ ΘΕΩΙ ΜΕΛΗΣΕΙ.

IV. Ἐκ Κερασούντος δὲ κατὰ θάλατταν μὲν ἐκομίζοντο οἵπερ καὶ πρόσθεν, οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι κατὰ γῆν ἐπορεύοντο. 2. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦσαν ἐπὶ τοῖς Μοσσυνοίκων ὀρίοις, πέμπουσιν εἰς αὐτοὺς Τιμησίθεον τὸν Τραπεζούντιον πρόξενον ὄντα τῶν Μοσσυνοίκων, ἐρωτῶντες πότερον ὡς διὰ φιλίας ἢ ὡς διὰ πολεμίας πορεύονται τῆς χώρας. οἱ δὲ εἶπον ὅτι οὐ διήσοιεν· ἐπίστευον γὰρ τοῖς χωρίοις. 3. ἐντεῦθεν λέγει ὁ Τιμησίθεος ὅτι πολέμοι εἰσιν αὐτοῖς οἱ ἐκ τοῦ ἐπέκεινα. καὶ ἐδόκει καλέσαι ἐκείνους, εἰ βούλοιντο ξυμμαχίαν ποιήσασθαι καὶ πεμφθεῖς ὁ Τιμησίθεος ἦκεν ἄγων τοὺς ἄρχοντας. 4. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀφίκοντο, συνήλθον οἱ τῶν Μοσσυνοίκων ἄρχοντες καὶ οἱ στρατηγοὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων· καὶ ἔλεξε μὲν Ξενοφῶν, ἡρμῆνευε δὲ Τιμησίθεος.

Xenophon offers the Mossynœci the assistance of the Greek force in subduing their common enemy. The offer is accepted, and the Mossynœci promise to supply the Greeks with vessels, auxiliaries, and guides, and to cooperate with them by a simultaneous attack on another part of the enemy's territory.

11. Ἐπὶ τούτοις πιστὰ δόντες καὶ λαβόντες ὄχοντο. καὶ ἦγον τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ἄγοντες τριακόσια πλοῖα μονόξυλα καὶ ἐν ἐκάστῳ τρεῖς ἄνδρας, ὧν οἱ μὲν δύο ἐκβάντες εἰς τάξιν ἔθεντο τὰ ὄπλα, ὁ δὲ εἰς ἔμνε. 12. καὶ οἱ μὲν λαβόντες τὰ πλοῖα ἀπέπλευσαν, οἱ δὲ μένοντες ἐξετάξαντο ὧδε. ἔστησαν ἀνὰ ἑκατὸν μάλιστα ὥσπερ χοροὶ ἀντιστοιχοῦντες

ἀλλήλοις, ἔχοντες γέρρα πάντες λευκῶν βοῶν
 δασέα, εἰκασμένα κιττοῦ πετάλω, ἐν δὲ τῇ δεξιᾷ
 παλτὸν ὡς ἐξάπηχυ, ἔμπροσθεν μὲν λόγχην ἔχον,
 ὀπισθεν δὲ αὐτοῦ τοῦ ξύλου σφαιροειδές. 13. χι-
 τωνίσκους δὲ ἐνεδεδύκεσαν ὑπὲρ γονάτων, πάχος
 ὡς λινοῦ στρωματοδέσμου, ἐπὶ τῇ κεφαλῇ δὲ κρά-
 νη σκύτινα οἰαπερ τὰ Παφλαγονικά, κρώβυλον
 ἔχοντα κατὰ μέσον, ἐγγύτατα τιαροειδῆ· εἶχον δὲ
 καὶ σαγάρεις σιδηρᾶς. 14. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξήρχε μὲν
 αὐτῶν εἰς, οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι πάντες ἐπορεύοντο ἄδοντες
 ἐν ῥυθμῷ, καὶ διελθόντες διὰ τῶν τάξεων καὶ διὰ
 τῶν ὄπλων τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐπορεύοντο εὐθύς πρὸς
 τοὺς πολεμίους ἐπὶ χωρίον ὃ ἐδόκει ἐπιμαχώτατον
 εἶναι. 15. ὥκειτο δὲ τοῦτο πρὸ τῆς πόλεως τῆς
 μητροπόλεως καλουμένης αὐτοῖς καὶ ἐχούσης τὸ
 ἀκρότατον τῶν Μοσσυνοίκων. καὶ περὶ τούτου
 ὁ πόλεμος ἦν· οἱ γὰρ αἰεὶ τοῦτ' ἔχοντες ἐδόκουν
 ἐγκρατεῖς εἶναι καὶ πάντων Μοσσυνοίκων, καὶ
 ἔφασαν τούτους οὐ δικαίως ἔχειν τοῦτο, ἀλλὰ
 κοινὸν ὃν καταλαβόντας πλεονεκτεῖν.

16. εἶποντο δ' αὐτοῖς καὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων τινές,
 οὐ ταχθέντες ὑπὸ τῶν στρατηγῶν ἀλλὰ ἀρπαγῆς
 ἔνεκεν. οἱ δὲ πολέμιοι προσιόντων τέως μὲν ἡσύ-
 χαζον· ἐπεὶ δ' ἐγγὺς ἐγένοντο τοῦ χωρίου, ἐκδρα-
 μόντες τρέπονται αὐτούς, καὶ ἀπέκτειναν συχνοὺς
 τῶν βαρβάρων καὶ τῶν ξυναναβάντων Ἑλλήνων
 τινάς, καὶ ἐδίωκον μέχρι οὐ εἶδον τοὺς Ἑλληνας
 βοηθοῦντας· 17. εἶτα δὲ ἀποτραπόμενοι ᾤχοντο,
 καὶ ἀποτεμόντες τὰς κεφαλὰς τῶν νεκρῶν ἐπεδείκ-

12. ξύλου is governed by σφαιροειδές.

νυσαν τοῖς τε Ἑλλησι καὶ τοῖς ἑαυτῶν πολεμίοις, καὶ ἅμα ἐχόρευον νόμφ τινὶ ἄδοντες. 18. οἱ δὲ Ἑλληνες μάλα ἤχθοντο ὅτι τοὺς τε πολεμίους ἐπεποιήκεσαν θρασυτέρους, καὶ ὅτι οἱ ἐξελθόντες Ἑλληνες σὺν αὐτοῖς ἐπεφεύγεσαν μάλα ὄντες συχνοί, δ' οὐπω πρόσθεν ἐπεποιήκεσαν ἐν τῇ στρατείᾳ.

Xenophon in a brief speech reassures the soldiers, and points out the necessity of cooperation among the Greeks in their military expeditions.

22. Ταύτην μὲν οὖν τὴν ἡμέραν οὕτως ἔμειναν τῇ δ' ὑστεραία θύσαντες ἐπεὶ ἐκαλλιερήσαντο, ἀριστήσαντες, ὀρθίους τοὺς λόχους ποιησάμενοι, καὶ τοὺς βαρβάρους ἐπὶ τὸ εὐώνυμον κατὰ ταῦτὰ ταξάμενοι ἐπορεύοντο, τοὺς τοξότας μεταξὺ τῶν λόχων [ὀρθίων ὄντων] ἔχοντες, ὑπολειπομένους δὲ μικρὸν τοῦ στόματος τῶν ὀπλιτῶν. 23. ἦσαν γὰρ τῶν πολεμίων οἱ εὐζωνοὶ κατατρέχοντες τοῖς λίθοις ἔβαλλον, τούτους ἀνέστελλον οἱ τοξόται καὶ πελτασταί. οἱ δ' ἄλλοι βάδην ἐπορεύοντο πρῶτον μὲν ἐπὶ τὸ χωρίον ἀφ' οὗ τῇ προτεραίᾳ οἱ βάρβαροι ἐτρέφθησαν καὶ οἱ ξὺν αὐτοῖς· ἐνταῦθα γὰρ οἱ πολέμοι ἦσαν ἀντιτεταγμένοι. 24. τοὺς μὲν οὖν πελταστὰς ἐδέξαντο οἱ βάρβαροι καὶ ἐμάχοντο, ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἐγγὺς ἦσαν οἱ ὀπλίται ἐτράποντο. καὶ οἱ μὲν πελτασταὶ εὐθὺς εἶποντο διώκοντες ἄνω πρὸς τὴν μητρόπολιν, οἱ δὲ ὀπλίται ἐν τάξει εἶποντο. 25. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἄνω ἦσαν πρὸς ταῖς τῆς μητροπόλεως οἰκίαις, ἐνταῦθα δὴ οἱ πολέμοι ὁμοῦ δὴ πάντες γενόμενοι ἐμάχοντο καὶ

ἐξηκόντιζον τοῖς παλτοῖς, καὶ ἄλλα δόρατα ἔχοντες παχέα μακρά, ὅσα ἀνὴρ ἂν φέροι μόλις, τούτοις ἐπειρῶντο ἀμύνεσθαι ἐκ χειρός. 26. ἐπεὶ δὲ οὐχ ὑφίεντο οἱ Ἕλληνες, ἀλλ' ὁμόσε ἐχώρουν, ἔφευγον οἱ βάρβαροι καὶ ἐντεῦθεν ἔλιπον ἅπαντες τὸ χωρίον. ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς αὐτῶν ὁ ἐν τῷ μόσσυι τῷ ἐπ' ἄκρου ὑποδομημένῳ, ὃν τρέφουσι πάντες κοινῇ αὐτοῦ μένοντα καὶ φυλάττουσιν, οὐκ ἤθελεν ἐξελθεῖν, οὐδὲ οἱ ἐν τῷ πρότερον αἰρεθέντι χωρίῳ, ἀλλ' αὐτοῦ σὺν τοῖς μοσσύνοις κατεκαύθησαν. 27. οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες διαρπάζοντες τὰ χωρία εὕρισκον θησαυροὺς ἐν ταῖς οἰκίαις ἄρτων νενημένων πατρίους, ὡς ἔφασαν οἱ Μοσσύνοικοι, τὸν δὲ νέον σίτον ξὺν τῇ καλάμῃ ἀποκείμενον ἦσαν δὲ ζειαὶ αἱ πλείσται. 28. καὶ δελφίνων τεμάχῃ ἐν ἀμφορεύσειν εὕρισκετο τεταριχευμένα καὶ στέαρ ἐν τεύχεσι τῶν δελφίνων, ᾧ ἐχρῶντο οἱ Μοσσύνοικοι καθάπερ οἱ Ἕλληνες τῷ ἐλαίῳ. 29. κάρυα δὲ ἐπὶ τῶν ἀνωγαίων ἦν πολλὰ τὰ πλατέα οὐκ ἔχοντα διαφυὴν οὐδεμίαν. τούτῳ καὶ πλείστῳ σίτῳ ἐχρῶντο ἔψοντες καὶ ἄρτους ὀπτῶντες. οἶνος δὲ ἠύρισκετο ὃς ἄκρατος μὲν ὄξυς ἐφαίνετο εἶναι ὑπὸ τῆς αὐστηρότητος, κερασθεῖς δὲ εὐώδης τε καὶ ἠδύς.

30. Οἱ μὲν δὴ Ἕλληνες ἀριστήσαντες ἐνταῦθα ἐπορεύοντο εἰς τὸ πρόσω, παραδόντες τὸ χωρίον τοῖς ξυμμαχήσασι τῶν Μοσσυνοίκων. ὅποσα δὲ

25. ἐκ χειρός = *eminus*.

29. κάρυα, *chestnuts*, "which fruit still abounds along the coast."—*Ainsworth*, p. 201.

καὶ ἄλλα παρήσαν χωρία τῶν ξὺν τοῖς πολεμίοις ὄντων, τὰ εὐπροσοδώτατα οἱ μὲν ἔλειπον, οἱ δὲ ἐκόντες προσεχώρουν. 31. τὰ δὲ πλείστα τοιάδε ἦν τῶν χωρίων. ἀπεῖχον αἱ πόλεις ἀπ' ἀλλήλων στάδια ὄγδοήκοντα, αἱ δὲ πλείον, αἱ δὲ μείον· ἀναβοώντων δὲ ἀλλήλων ξυνήκουον εἰς τὴν ἑτέραν ἐκ τῆς ἑτέρας πόλεως· οὕτως ὑψηλὴ τε καὶ κοίλη ἡ χώρα ἦν. 32. ἐπεὶ δὲ πορευόμενοι ἐν τοῖς φίλοις ἦσαν, ἐπεδείκνυσαν αὐτοῖς παῖδας τῶν εὐδαιμόνων σιτευτούς, τεθραμμένους καρύοις ἐφθοῖς, ἀπαλοὺς καὶ λευκοὺς σφόδρα, καὶ οὐ πολλοῦ δέοντας ἴσους τὸ μῆκος καὶ τὸ πλάτος εἶναι, ποικίλους δὲ τὰ νῶτα καὶ τὰ ἔμπροσθεν πάντα ἐστιγμένους ἀνθέμιον. 33. λευκοὶ δὲ πάντες οἱ ἄνδρες καὶ αἱ γυναῖκες. 34. τούτους ἔλεγον οἱ στρατευσάμενοι βαρβαρωτάτους διελθεῖν καὶ πλείστον τῶν Ἑλληνικῶν νόμων κεχωρισμένους.

V. Διὰ ταύτης τῆς χώρας οἱ Ἕλληνες, διὰ τε τῆς πολεμίας καὶ τῆς φιλίας, ἐπορεύθησαν ὀκτῶ σταθμούς, καὶ ἀφικνοῦνται εἰς Χάλυβας. οὗτοι ὀλίγοι ἦσαν καὶ ὑπήκοοι τῶν Μοσσυνοίκων, καὶ ὁ βίος ἦν τοῖς πλείστοις αὐτῶν ἀπὸ σιδηρείας. ἐντεῦθεν ἀφικνοῦνται εἰς Τιβαρηνοὺς. 2. ἡ δὲ τῶν Τιβαρηνῶν χώρα πολὺ ἦν πεδινωτέρα, καὶ χωρία εἶχεν ἐπὶ θαλάττῃ ἦττον ἐρυμνά. καὶ οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἔχρηζον πρὸς τὰ χωρία προσβύλλειν καὶ τὴν στρατιὰν ὀνηθῆναί τι, καὶ τὰ ξένια ἃ ἦκε παρὰ Τιβαρηνῶν οὐκ ἐδέχοντο, ἀλλ' ἐπιμείναι κελεύσαντες ἔστε βουλευσάμενοι ἐθύοντο. 3. καὶ πολλὰ καταθυσάντων τέλος ἀπεδείξαντο οἱ μάντιες πάν-

τες γνώμην ὅτι οὐδαμῇ προσίοιντο οἱ θεοὶ τὸν πόλεμον. ἐντεῦθεν δὴ τὰ ξένια ἐδέξαντο, καὶ ὡς διὰ φιλίας πορευόμενοι δύο ἡμέρας ἀφίκοντο εἰς Κοτύωρα πόλιν Ἑλληνίδα, Σινωπέων ἀποίκους, ὄντας δ' ἐν τῇ Τιβαρηνῶν χώρα.

4. Μέχρι ἐνταῦθα ἐπέξενσεν ἡ στρατιὰ. πλήθος τῆς καταβάσεως τῆς ὁδοῦ ἀπὸ τῆς ἐν Βαβυλῶνι μάχης ἄχρι εἰς Κοτύωρα σταθμοὶ ἑκατὸν εἴκοσι δύο, παρασάγγαι ἑξακόσιοι καὶ εἴκοσι, στάδιοι μύριοι καὶ ὀκτακισχίλιοι καὶ ἑξακόσιοι, χρόνου πλήθος ὀκτὼ μῆνες. 5. ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν ἡμέρας τετταράκοντα πέντε. ἐν δὲ ταύταις πρώτον μὲν τοῖς θεοῖς ἔθυσαν, καὶ πομπὰς ἐποίησαν κατὰ ἔθνος ἕκαστοι τῶν Ἑλλήνων, καὶ ἀγῶνας γυμνικούς. 6. τὰ δ' ἐπιτήδεια ἐλάμβανον τὰ μὲν ἐκ τῆς Παφλαγονίας, τὰ δ' ἐκ τῶν χωρίων τῶν Κοτυωριτῶν οὐ γὰρ παρεῖχον ἀγοράν, οὐδ' εἰς τὸ τεῖχος τοὺς ἀσθενοῦντας ἐδέχοντο.

7. Ἐν τούτῳ ἔρχονται ἐκ Σινώπης πρέσβεις, φοβούμενοι περὶ τῶν Κοτυωριτῶν τῆς τε πόλεως, ἣν γὰρ ἐκείνων καὶ φόρους ἐκείνοις ἔφερον, καὶ περὶ τῆς χώρας, ὅτι ἤκουον δηουμένην. καὶ ἐλθόντες εἰς τὸ στρατόπεδον ἔλεγον προηγόρει δὲ Ἑκατόνυμος δεινὸς νομιζόμενος εἶναι λέγειν.

After congratulating the Greeks on their safe arrival, Hecatonymus complains of their conduct to the inhabitants of Cotyora, and hints that the Sinopians will form an alliance with Corylas and the Paphlagonians to redress their wrongs. Xenophon explains that the Cotyorians brought these inconveniences upon themselves by refusing to furnish the Greeks with a market for provisions or shelter for the

sick, and intimates that the Paphlagonians are eager to gain possession of Sinope and the sea-coast towns, and that the Greeks might possibly assist them.

24. Ἐκ τούτου μάλα μὲν δῆλοι ἦσαν οἱ ξυμπρέσβεις τῷ Ἐκατωνύμφῳ χαλεπαίνοντες τοῖς εἰρημένους· παρελθὼν δ' αὐτῶν ἄλλος εἶπεν ὅτι οὐ πόλεμον ποιησόμενοι ἤκοιεν, ἀλλὰ ἐπιδείξοντες ὅτι φίλοι εἰσὶ. καὶ ξενίοις, ἦν μὲν ἔλθητε πρὸς τὴν Σινωπέων πόλιν, ἐκεῖ δεξόμεθα, νῦν δὲ τοὺς ἐνθάδε κελεύσομεν διδόναι ἃ δύνανται· ὀρώμεν γὰρ πάντα ἀληθῆ ὄντα ἃ λέγετε. 25. ἐκ τούτου ξενία τε ἔπεμπον οἱ Κοτυωρίται καὶ οἱ στρατηγοὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐξένιζον τοὺς τῶν Σινωπέων πρέσβεις, καὶ πρὸς ἀλλήλους πολλά τε καὶ φιλικὰ διελέγοντο, τά τε ἄλλα καὶ περὶ τῆς λοιπῆς πορείας ἐπυθάνοντο ὧν ἑκάτεροι ἐδέοντο.

VI. Ταύτη μὲν τῇ ἡμέρᾳ τοῦτο τὸ τέλος ἐγένετο. τῇ δὲ ὑστεραίᾳ ξυνέλεξαν οἱ στρατηγοὶ τοὺς στρατιώτας, καὶ ἐδόκει αὐτοῖς περὶ τῆς λοιπῆς πορείας παρακάλεσαντας τοὺς Σινωπέας βουλευέσθαι. εἴτε γὰρ πεζῇ δέοι πορεύεσθαι, χρήσιμοι ἂν ἐδόκουν εἶναι οἱ Σινωπεῖς· ἔμπειροι γὰρ ἦσαν τῆς Παφλαγονίας· εἴτε κατὰ θάλατταν, προσδεῖν ἐδόκει Σινωπέων· μόνοι γὰρ ἂν ἐδόκουν ἱκανοὶ εἶναι πλοῖα παρασχεῖν ἀρκούντα τῇ στρατιᾷ.

Having invited the Sinopian ambassadors to meet them, the generals solicited their advice. Hecatonymus, after explaining and apologising for his allusion to an alliance with the Paphlagonians, proceeded to point out the difficulties and dangers that must be encountered by the Greeks if they pursued their course by land—a route which he pronounced

impracticable. The disinterestedness of his motives in recommending the passage by sea was questioned by some. The soldiers, however, resolved to follow his advice; and Xenophon announces to the ambassadors that the army will proceed by sea, provided a sufficient number of vessels can be obtained to convey them all.

14. Ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα οἱ πρέσβεις ἐκέλευον πέμπειν πρέσβεις. καὶ πέμπουσι Καλλιμαχον Ἀρκάδα, καὶ Ἀρίστωνα Ἀθηναῖον, καὶ Σαμόλαν Ἀχαιόν. καὶ οἱ μὲν ὄχοντο.

15. Ἐν δὲ τούτῳ τῷ χρόνῳ Ξενοφῶντι, ὄρωντι μὲν ὀπίστας πολλοὺς τῶν Ἑλλήνων, ὄρωντι δὲ καὶ πελταστὰς πολλοὺς καὶ τοξότας καὶ σφενδονήτας καὶ ἵππείας δέ, καὶ μάλα ἤδη διὰ τὴν τριβῆν ἱκανοὺς, ὄντας δ' ἐν τῷ Πόντῳ, ἔνθα οὐκ ἂν ἀπ' ὀλίγων χρημάτων τσαύτη δύναμις παρεσκευάσθη, καλὸν αὐτῷ ἐδόκει εἶναι καὶ χώραν καὶ δύναμιν τῇ Ἑλλάδι προσκτήσασθαι πόλιν κατοικίσαντας. 16. καὶ γενέσθαι ἂν αὐτῷ ἐδόκει μεγάλη, καταλογιζομένῳ τό τε αὐτῶν πλήθος καὶ τοὺς περιοικοῦντας τὸν Πόντον. καὶ ἐπὶ τούτοις ἐθύετο πρὶν τι εἰπεῖν τῶν στρατιωτῶν Σιλανὸν καλέσας τὸν Κύρου μάντιν γενόμενον τὸν Ἀμβρακιώτην. 17. ὁ δὲ Σιλανὸς δεδιὼς μὴ γένηται ταῦτα καὶ καταμείνη που ἢ στρατιά, ἐκφέρει εἰς τὸ στράτευμα λόγον ὅτι Ξενοφῶν βούλεται καταμείναι τὴν στρατιὰν καὶ πόλιν οἰκίσει καὶ ἑαυτῷ ὄνομα καὶ δύναμιν περιποιήσασθαι. 18. αὐτὸς δ' ὁ Σιλανὸς ἐβούλετο ὅτι τάχιστα εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα ἀφικέσθαι· οὐς γὰρ

παρὰ Κύρου ἔλαβε τρισχιλίους δαρεικοὺς ὅτε τὰς δέκα ἡμέρας ἠλήθευσε θυόμενος Κύρῳ, διεσώκει. 19. τῶν δὲ στρατιωτῶν, ἐπεὶ ἤκουσαν, τοῖς μὲν ἐδόκει βέλτιστον εἶναι καταμεῖναι, τοῖς δὲ πολλοῖς οὐ.

The inhabitants of Sinope and Heraclea having been informed that Xenophon is endeavouring to persuade the army to settle in their neighbourhood, bribe Timasion to induce the soldiers to depart. Accordingly he and others hold out peculiar advantages to the troops, promising them pay and plunder if they will return to Greece, and accuse Xenophon of privately offering sacrifice without communicating with the rest of the army. Xenophon explains and justifies his conduct, but adds that, since the neighbouring towns will send them ships, and these men will furnish them with pay, he is decidedly of opinion that the army should return to Greece, and that any man who stays behind, or leaves the army before it has reached a place of safety, should be adjudged a traitor and punished. To this the soldiers unanimously assented.

34. Ὁ δὲ Σιλανὸς ἐβόα καὶ ἐπεχείρει λέγειν ὡς δίκαιον εἶη ἀπιέναι τὸν βουλόμενον. οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται οὐκ ἠνείχοντο, ἀλλ' ἠπειλοῦν αὐτῷ ὅτι εἰ λήψονται ἀποδιδράσκοντα, τὴν δίκην ἐπιθήσοιεν. 35. ἐντεῦθεν ἐπεὶ ἔγνωσαν οἱ Ἡρακλεῶται ὅτι ἐκπλεῖν δεδογμένον εἶη καὶ Ξενοφῶν αὐτὸς ἐπεψηφικῶς εἶη, τὰ μὲν πλοῖα πέμπουσι, τὰ δὲ χρήματα ἃ ὑπέσχοντο Τιμασίῳ καὶ Θώρακι ἐψευσμένοι ἦσαν τῆς μισθοφορίας. 36. ἐναυθὰ δὲ ἐκπεπληγμένοι ἦσαν καὶ ἐδεδοίκεσαν τὴν στρατιὰν οἱ τὴν μισθοφορίαν ὑπεσχημένοι. παροαλα-

βόντες οὖν οὗτοι καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους στρατηγούς οἷς ἀνεκοινοῦντο ἂ πρόσθεν ἔπραττον, πάντες δ' ἦσαν πλὴν Νέωνος τοῦ Ἀσιναίου, ὃς Χειρισόφῳ ὑπεστρατήγει· Χειρισόφος δὲ οὐπω παρήν· ἔρχονται πρὸς Ξενοφῶντα, καὶ λέγουσιν ὅτι μεταμέλοι αὐτοῖς, καὶ δοκοίη κράτιστον εἶναι πλεῖν εἰς Φᾶσιν, ἐπεὶ πλοῖα ἔστι, καὶ κατασχεῖν τὴν Φασιανῶν χώραν. 37. Αἰήτου δὲ υἱοῦς ἐτύγχανε βασιλεύων αὐτῶν. Ξενοφῶν δὲ ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι οὐδὲν ἂν τούτων εἴποι εἰς τὴν στρατιάν· ὑμεῖς δὲ ξυλλέξαντες, ἔφη, εἰ βούλεσθε, λέγετε. ἐνταῦθα ἀποδείκνυται Τιμασιῶν ὁ Δαρδανεύς γνῶμην οὐκ ἐκκλησιάζειν, ἀλλὰ τοὺς αὐτοῦ ἕκαστον λοχαγούς πρῶτον πειρᾶσθαι πείθειν. καὶ ἀπελθόντες ταῦτ' ἐποιοῦν.

VII. Ταῦτα οὖν οἱ στρατιῶται ἀνεπύθοντο [τὰ] πραττόμενα. καὶ ὁ Νέων λέγει, ὡς Ξενοφῶν ἀναπεπεικῶς τοὺς ἄλλους στρατηγούς διανοεῖται ἄγειν τοὺς στρατιώτας ἐξαπατήσας πάλιν εἰς Φᾶσιν. 2. ἀκούσαντες δ' οἱ στρατιῶται χαλεπῶς ἔφερον, καὶ ξύλλογοι ἐγίγοντο καὶ κύκλοι ξυνίσταντο, καὶ μάλα φοβεροὶ ἦσαν μὴ ποιήσειαν οἶα καὶ τοὺς τῶν Κόλχων κήρυκας ἐποίησαν καὶ τοὺς ἀγορανόμους· ὅσοι γὰρ μὴ εἰς τὴν θάλατταν κατέφυγον κατελεύσθησαν. 3. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦσθάνετο Ξενοφῶν, ἔδοξεν αὐτῷ ὡς τάχιστα ξυναγαγεῖν αὐτῶν ἀγοράν, καὶ μὴ εἶσαι ξυλληγῆναι αὐτομάτους· καὶ ἐκέλευσε τὸν κήρυκα ξυλλέγειν ἀγοράν. 4. οἱ δ' ἐπεὶ τοῦ κήρυκος ἤκουσαν, ξυνέδραμον καὶ μάλα

VII. 2. τοὺς τῶν κόλχων, &c. : see following summary.

ἐτοίμως. ἐνταῦθα Ξενοφῶν τῶν μὲν στρατηγῶν οὐ κατηγορεῖ, ὅτι ἦλθον πρὸς αὐτόν, λέγει δὲ ὧδε.

Xenophon ably exposes the absurdity of the charge which had been brought against him of endeavouring to deceive the army with regard to the direction of their course, and to lead them back to Phasis. He then proceeds to disclose and emphatically denounce certain acts of unjustifiable violence which had recently occurred: viz. a wanton attack upon a friendly people; the murder of the ambassadors who came to complain of the outrage; the illegal exercise of authority by private men; and the consequent hostility of the Kerazuntians. He points out the necessity of checking these iniquitous proceedings, and removing the dishonourable blot from their name.

34. Ἐκ τούτου ἀνιστάμενοι πάντες ἔλεγον τοὺς μὲν τούτων ἄρξαντας δοῦναι δίκην, τοῦ δὲ λοιποῦ μηκέτι ἐξεῖναι ἀνομίας ἄρξαι· ἐὰν δὲ τις ἄρξῃ, ἄγεσθαι αὐτοὺς ἐπὶ θανάτῳ· τοὺς δὲ στρατηγούς εἰς δίκας πάντας καταστήσαι· εἶναι δὲ δίκας καὶ εἴ τι ἄλλο τις ἠδίκητο ἐξ οὗ Κύρος ἀπέθανε· δικαστὰς δὲ τοὺς λοχαγούς ἐποίησαντο. 35. παραινοῦντος δὲ Ξενοφώντος καὶ τῶν μάντεων συμβουλευόντων, ἔδοξε καὶ καθῆραι τὸ στράτευμα. καὶ ἐγένετο καθαρμός.

It was decided that the past conduct of the generals also should undergo an investigation. Philesius, Xanthicles, and Sophænetus, are fined. Xenophon is accused by certain of the soldiers of having struck them during the retreat. He enters into an elaborate and detailed justification of his conduct, and is honourably acquitted.

5.

1. Ἐκ τούτου δὲ ἐν τῇ διατριβῇ οἱ μὲν ἀπὸ τῆς ἀγορᾶς ἕζων, οἱ δὲ καὶ ληιζόμενοι ἐκ τῆς Παφλαγονίας. ἐκλώπευον δὲ καὶ οἱ Παφλαγῶνες εὖ μάλα τοὺς ἀποσκευασμένους, καὶ τῆς νυκτὸς τοὺς πρόσω σκηνοῦντας ἐπειρῶντο κακουργεῖν· καὶ πολεμικώτατα πρὸς ἀλλήλους εἶχον ἐκ τούτων.

2. ὁ δὲ Κορύλας, ὃς ἐτύγχανε τότε Παφλαγονίας ἄρχων, πέμπει παρὰ τοὺς Ἕλληνας πρέσβεις ἔχοντας ἵππους καὶ στολὰς καλὰς, λέγοντας ὅτι Κορύλας ἔτοιμος εἶη τοὺς Ἕλληνας μῆτε ἀδικεῖν μῆτε ἀδικεῖσθαι.

3. οἱ δὲ στρατηγοὶ ἀπεκρίναντο ὅτι περὶ μὲν τούτων σὺν τῇ στρατιᾷ βουλευσούντο, ἐπὶ ξενίᾳ δὲ ἐδέχοντο αὐτούς· παρεκάλεσαν δὲ καὶ τῶν ἄλλων ἀνδρῶν οὓς ἐδόκουν δικαιοτάτους εἶναι.

4. θύσαντες δὲ βοῦς τῶν αἰχμαλώτων καὶ ἄλλα ἱερεῖα εὐωχίαν μὲν ἀρκοῦσαν παρέϊχον, κατακείμενοι δὲ ἐν σκίμποσιν ἐδειπνοῦν, καὶ ἔπινον ἐκ κερατίνων ποτηρίων, οἷς ἐνετύγχανον ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ.

5. Ἐπεὶ δὲ σπονδαὶ τ' ἐγένοντο καὶ ἐπαίνισαν, ἀνέστησαν πρῶτον μὲν Θράκες καὶ πρὸς αὐτὸν ὠρχήσαντο σὺν τοῖς ὅπλοις, καὶ ἤλλοντο ὑψηλά τε καὶ κούφως καὶ ταῖς μαχαίραις ἐχρῶντο· τέλος δὲ ὁ ἕτερος τὸν ἕτερον παίει, ὡς πᾶσιν ἐδόκει πεπληγένοι τὸν ἄνδρα· ὁ δ' ἔπεσε τεχνικῶς πῶς.

6. καὶ ἀνέκραγον οἱ Παφλαγῶνες. καὶ ὁ μὲν σκυλεύ-

σας τὰ ὄπλα τοῦ ἐτέρου ἐξήκει ἄδων τὸν Σιτ
 ἄλλοι δὲ τῶν Θρακῶν τὸν ἕτερον ἐξέφερον
 νηκότα· ἦν δὲ οὐδὲν πεπονωτός. 7. μετὰ
 Αἰνιᾶνες καὶ Μάγνητες ἀνέστησαν, οἱ ὦρ
 τὴν καρπαίαν καλουμένην ἐν τοῖς ὄπλοις.
 τρόπος τῆς ὀρχήσεως ἦν [ὅδε]· ὁ μὲν παρα
 τὰ ὄπλα σπείρει καὶ ζευγηλατεῖ πυκνὰ μετ
 φόμενος ὡς φοβούμενος, ληστής δὲ προσέ
 ὁ δ' ἐπειδὴν προῖδηται, ἀπαντᾷ ἀρπάσας τ
 καὶ μάχεται πρὸ τοῦ ζεύγους· καὶ οὔτοι ταῦ
 ουν ἐν ῥυθμῷ πρὸς τὸν αὐλόν· καὶ τέλος ὁ
 δήσας τὸν ἄνδρα καὶ τὸ ζεῦγος ἀπάγει· ἐν
 καὶ ὁ ζευγηλάτης τὸν ληστήν· εἶτα παρ
 βούς ζεύξας ὀπίσω τῷ χεῖρι δεδεμένον ἔλαι
 μετὰ τοῦτο Μυσοὺς εἰσήλθεν ἐν ἑκατέρᾳ τ
 ἔχων πέλτην, καὶ τοτὲ μὲν ὡς δύο ἀντιτατ
 μιμούμενος ὠρχεῖτο, τοτὲ δὲ ὡς πρὸς ἓνα
 ταῖς πέλταις, τοτὲ δ' ἐδινεῖτο καὶ ἐξεκυβίστ
 τὰς πέλτας, ὥστε ὄψιν καλὴν φαίνεσθαι.
 λος δὲ τὸ περσικὸν ὠρχεῖτο κρούων τὰς ἰ
 καὶ ὠκλαζε καὶ ἐξανίστατο· καὶ ταῦτα πι
 ῥυθμῷ ἐποίει πρὸς τὸν αὐλόν. 11. ἐπὶ δι
 ἐπιόντες οἱ Μαντινεῖς καὶ ἄλλοι τινὲς τῶν Ἀ
 ἀναστάντες ἐξοπλισάμενοι ὡς ἐδύναντο κά
 ῆσαν τε ἐν ῥυθμῷ πρὸς τὸν ἐνόπλιον ῥυθ
 λούμενοι, καὶ ἐπαιάνισαν καὶ ὠρχήσαντο
 ἐν ταῖς πρὸς τοὺς θεοὺς προσόδοις. ὁρῶντι
 Παφλαγόνες δεινὰ ἐποιοῦντο πάσας τὰς ὁ
 ἐν ὄπλοις εἶναι. 12. ἐπὶ τούτοις ὁρῶν ὁ
 ἐκπεπληγμένους αὐτούς, κείσας τῶν Ἀρκάδ

πεπαμένον ὄρχηστρίδα εἰσάγει σκευάσας ὡς ἐδύνατο κάλλιστα καὶ ἀσπίδα δούς κούφην αὐτῇ. ἡ δὲ ὄρχησατο πυρρὴν ἐλαφρῶς. 13. ἐνταῦθα κρότος ἦν πολὺς, καὶ οἱ Παφλαγῶνες ἤροντο εἰ καὶ γυναῖκες συνεμάχοντο αὐτοῖς. οἱ δ' ἔλεγον ὅτι αὐταὶ καὶ αἱ τρεψάμεναι εἶεν βασιλέα ἐκ τοῦ στρατοπέδου. τῇ μὲν οὖν νυκτὶ ταύτῃ τοῦτο τὸ τέλος ἐγένετο.

14. Τῇ δὲ ὑστεραία προσῆγον αὐτοὺς εἰς τὸ στρατεύμα· καὶ ἔδοξε τοῖς στρατιώταις μῆτε ἀδικεῖν Παφλαγῶνας μῆτε ἀδικεῖσθαι. μετὰ τοῦτο οἱ μὲν πρέσβεις ᾤχοντο. οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες, ἐπειδὴ πλοῖα ἱκανὰ ἐδόκει παρεῖναι, ἀναβάντες ἔπλεον ἡμέραν καὶ νύκτα πνεύματι καλῶ ἐν ἀριστερᾷ ἔχοντες τὴν Παφλαγονίαν. 15. τῇ δ' ἄλλῃ ἀφικνούνται εἰς Σινώπην καὶ ὠρμίσαντο εἰς Ἀρμήνην τῆς Σινώπης. Σινωπεῖς δὲ οἰκοῦσι μὲν ἐν τῇ Παφλαγονικῇ, Μιλησίων δὲ ἄποικοί εἰσιν. οὗτοι δὲ ξένια πέμπουσι τοῖς Ἕλλησιν ἀλφίτων μὲν μεδίμνους τρισχιλίους, οἴνου δὲ κεράμια χίλια καὶ πεντακόσια. καὶ Χειρίσοφος ἐνταῦθα ἦλθε τριήρη ἔχων. 16. καὶ οἱ μὲν στρατιῶται προσεδόκων ἄγοντά τί σφισιν ἦκειν· ὁ δ' ἦγε μὲν οὐδέν, ἀπήγγελλε δὲ ὅτι ἐπαινοῖ αὐτοὺς καὶ Ἀναξίβιος ὁ ναύαρχος καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι, καὶ ὅτι ὑπισχνεῖτο Ἀναξίβιος, εἰ ἀφικνοῖντο ἔξω τοῦ Πόντου, μισθοφορίαν αὐτοῖς ἔσεσθαι.

17. Καὶ ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ Ἀρμήνῃ ἔμειναν οἱ στρατιῶται ἡμέρας πέντε. ὡς δὲ τῆς Ἑλλάδος ἐδόκουν ἐγγὺς γίγνεσθαι, ἤδη μᾶλλον ἢ πρόσθεν εἰσῆει

αὐτοὺς ὅπως ἂν καὶ ἔχοντές τι οἴκαδε ἀφίκωνται. 18. ἤγγισαντο οὖν, εἰ ἓνα ἔλοιντο ἄρχοντα, μᾶλλον ἂν ἢ πολυαρχίας οὔσης δύνασθαι τὸν ἓνα χρήσθαι τῷ στρατεύματι καὶ νυκτὸς καὶ ἡμέρας, καὶ εἴ τι δέου λανθάνειν, μᾶλλον ἂν κρύπτεσθαι, καὶ εἴ τι αὐτὸ δέου φθάνειν, ἦττον ἂν ὑστερίζειν· οὐ γὰρ ἂν λυγῶν δεῖν πρὸς ἀλλήλους, ἀλλὰ τὸ δόξαν τῷ ἐνὶ περαινουσῶν ἂν τὸν δ' ἔμπροσθεν χρόνον ἐκ τῆς κικωτικῆς ἔπραττον πάντα οἱ στρατηγοί. 19. ὡς δὲ ταῦτα διενουῶντο, ἐτάρανον ἐπὶ τὸν Ξενοφῶντα· καὶ οἱ λυγαροὶ ἔλεγον προσιόντες αὐτῷ ὅτι ἢ νηματαὶ οὕτω γιγνώσκεις, καὶ εὐνοίαν ἐνδεικνύμενος ἑαυτοὺς ἐπεισέν αὐτὸν ὑποστήναι τὴν ἀρχήν. 20. ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν πῆ μὲν ἐβούλετο ταῦτα, νομίζων καὶ τῆν τι αὐτῷ μείζων οὕτως ἑαυτῷ γίγνεσθαι πρὸς τοὺς φίλους καὶ εἰς τὴν πόλιν τοῦνομα μείζων ἀφίξεσθαι αὐτῷ. τυχὸν δὲ καὶ ἀγαθοῦ τινος ἂν αἴτιος τῆ νηματαὶ γινεύσθαι. 21. τὰ μὲν δὴ τοιαῦτα ἐνθυμησάμενος ἐτόνεν αὐτὸν ἐπιθυμεῖν αὐτοκράτορα γενεσθαι ἄρχοντα. ὅποτε δ' αὐτὸ ἐνθυμοῖτο ὅτι ἄδηλον αὐτὸ πικρῶ ἀνθυμῶν ἦν τὸ μέλλον ἔξει, διὰ τοῦτο ἦν καὶ οὐδέποτε εἶη καὶ τὴν προειργασμένην δόξαν ἀποκλείσειν. ἴτηνεῖτα. 22. διαπορουμένη δὲ αὐτῷ ἡσυχία ἐβύξε κωπιαστὸν εἶναι τοῖς θεοῖς ἀνακοινῶντα· καὶ παρατηρησάμενος δύο ἱερεῖα ἐθύετο τῷ θεῷ τὸν ἀποκλεισθέντα αὐτῷ μαντευτὸς ἦν ἐκ Δελφῶν· καὶ τὸ ἀποκλεισθέντα αὐτῷ ἐνόμικεν ἀνακοινῶντα ὅτι ἠμῶν ἐπὶ τὸ συνεπιμελείσθαι τῷ θεῷ, according to the prevailing (opinion) :

θαι τῆς στρατιᾶς καθίστασθαι. 23. καὶ ὅτε ἐξ Ἐφέσου ὤρμᾶτο Κύρῳ συσταθησόμενος ἀετὸν ἀνεμιμνήσκετο ἑαυτῷ δεξιὸν φθεγγόμενον, καθήμενον μέντοι, ὥσπερ ὁ μάντις προπέμπων αὐτὸν ἔλεγεν ὅτι μέγας μὲν οἰωνὸς εἶη καὶ οὐκ ἰδιωτικὸς καὶ ἔνδοξος, ἐπίπνονος μέντοι· τὰ γὰρ ὄρνεα μάλιστα ἐπιτίθεσθαι τῷ ἀετῷ καθημένῳ· οὐ μέντοι χρηματιστικὸν εἶναι τὸν οἰωνόν· τὸν γὰρ ἀετὸν πετόμενον μᾶλλον λαμβάνειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. 24. οὕτω δὴ θυομένῳ αὐτῷ διαφανῶς ὁ θεὸς σημαίνει μῆτε προσδεῖσθαι τῆς ἀρχῆς μῆτε εἰ αἰροῦντο ἀποδέχεσθαι. 25. τοῦτο μὲν δὴ οὕτως ἐγένετο. ἡ δὲ στρατιὰ συνήλθε, καὶ πάντες ἔλεγον ἓνα αἰρεῖσθαι· καὶ ἐπεὶ τοῦτο ἔδοξε, προεβάλλοντο αὐτόν. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐδόκει δῆλον εἶναι ὅτι αἰρήσονται αὐτὸν εἴ τις ἐπιψηφίζοι, ἀνέστη καὶ ἔλεξε τάδε.

Xenophon expresses the gratification he feels at the nomination, but declines the appointment on the ground that, since the Lacedæmonians are the acknowledged masters of Athens and the rest of Greece, it would be inexpedient to select an Athenian, when a Lacedæmonian was present. He promises to obey whatever commander they select. He is again urgently solicited to accept the command, but informs the assembly that, on sacrificing to ascertain the will of the gods, he had been emphatically warned to decline the office.

32. Οὕτω δὴ Χειρίσοφον αἰροῦνται. Χειρίσοφος δ' ἐπεὶ ἤρέθη, παρελθὼν εἶπεν, Ἄλλ', ὦ ἄνδρες, τούτο μὲν ἴστε ὅτι οὐδ' ἂν ἔγωγε ἐστασίαζον, εἰ ἄλλον εἴλεσθε· Ξενοφῶντα υἱέντοι, ἔφη, ὠνήσατε

οὐχ ἐλόμενοι· ὡς καὶ νῦν Δέξιππος ἤδη διέβαλλεν αὐτὸν πρὸς Ἀναξίβιον ὅ,τι ἐδύνατο καὶ μάλα ἐμοῦ αὐτὸν σιγάζοντος. ὁ δ' ἔφη νομίζειν αὐτὸν Τιμασίῳνι μᾶλλον συνάρχειν ἐθελήσαι Δαρδανεῖ ὄντι τοῦ Κλεάρχου στρατεύματος ἢ ἑαυτῷ Λάκωνι ὄντι. 33. ἐπεὶ μέντοι ἐμὲ εἴλεσθε, ἔφη, καὶ ἐγὼ πειράσομαι ὅ,τι ἂν δύνωμαι ὑμᾶς ἀγαθὸν ποιεῖν. καὶ ὑμεῖς οὕτω παρασκευάζεσθε ὡς αὔριον ἐὰν πλοῦς ἢ ἀναξόμενοι· ὁ δὲ πλοῦς ἔσται εἰς Ἡράκλειαν ἅπαντας οὖν δεῖ ἐκεῖσε πειρᾶσθαι κατασχεῖν· τὰ δ' ἄλλα ἐπειδὴν ἐκεῖσε ἔλθωμεν βουλευσόμεθα.

II. Ἐντεῦθεν τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ἀναγόμενοι πνεύματι ἔπλεον καλῶ ἡμέρας δύο παρὰ γῆν. καὶ παραπλέοντες ἐθεώρουν τὴν τε Ἰασονίαν ἀκτὴν, ἔνθα ἡ Ἀργῶ λέγεται ὀρμίσασθαι, καὶ τῶν ποταμῶν τὰ στόματα, πρῶτον μὲν τοῦ Θερμώδοντος, ἔπειτα δὲ τοῦ Ἴριος, ἔπειτα δὲ τοῦ Ἄλως, μετὰ δὲ τοῦτον τοῦ Παρθενίου· τοῦτον δὲ παραπλεύσαντες ἀφίκοντο εἰς Ἡράκλειαν πόλιν Ἑλληνίδα Μεγαρέων ἀποικον, οὐσαν δ' ἐν τῇ Μαρνανδυνῶν χώρᾳ. 2. καὶ ὀρμίσαντο παρὰ τῇ Ἀχερουσιᾷδι Χερρόνησφ, ἔνθα λέγεται ὁ Ἡρακλῆς ἐπὶ τὸν Κέρβερον κίνα καταβῆναι ἢ νῦν τὰ σημεῖα δεικνύσι τῆς καταβάσεως τὸ βάθος πλέον ἢ ἐπὶ δύο στάδια. 3. ἐνταῦθα τοῖς Ἑλλησιν οἱ Ἡρακλεῶται ξένια πέμπουσιν

32. ὁ δε = Δέξιππος, αὐτόν = Ξενοφῶν, ἑαυτῷ = Δέξιππος.

II. 1. Ἰασονία ἀκτὴ, Θέρμωνον, Ἴρις, and Ἄλως, are to the east of Σινώπη, although by an error (most unusual) of the author they are stated to be on the west.

2. δεικνύσι 3 plur., δεικνύσι 3 sing.

ἐπὶ τὸν κίνα. see I. 1. 3.

ἀλφίτων μεδίμνους τρισχιλίους καὶ οἴνου κεράμια
 δισχιλία καὶ βούς εἴκοσι καὶ οἷς ἑκατόν. ἐνταῦθα
 διὰ τοῦ πεδίου ρεῖ ποταμὸς Λύκος ὄνομα, εὖρος
 ὡς δύο πλέθρων.

4. Οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται συλλεγόντες ἐβουλευόντο
 τὴν λοιπὴν πορείαν πότερον κατὰ γῆν ἢ κατὰ θά-
 λατταν χρῆ πορευθῆναι ἐκ τοῦ Πόντου. ἀναστὰς
 δὲ Λύκος Ἀχαιὸς εἶπε, Θαυμάζω μὲν, ὦ ἄνδρες,
 τῶν στρατηγῶν ὅτι οὐ πειρῶνται ἡμῖν ἐκπορίζειν
 σιτηρέσιον· τὰ μὲν γὰρ ξένια οὐ μὴ γένηται τῇ
 στρατιᾷ τριῶν ἡμερῶν σίτα· ὑπόθεν δ' ἐπισιτισά-
 μενοι πορευσόμεθα οὐκ ἔστιν, ἔφη. ἐμοὶ οὖν δοκεῖ
 αἰτεῖν τοὺς Ἡρακλεώτας μὴ ἔλαττον ἢ τρισχιλίους
 κυζικηνοὺς· 5. ἄλλος δ' εἶπε μὴ ἔλαττον ἢ μυρίους·
 καὶ ἐλομένους πρέσβεις αὐτίκα μάλα ἡμῶν καθη-
 μένων πέμπειν πρὸς τὴν πόλιν, καὶ εἰδέναί ὅ,τι ἂν
 ἀπαγγέλλωσι, καὶ πρὸς ταῦτα βουλευέσθαι. 6.
 ἐντεῦθεν προὔβαλλοντο πρέσβεις πρῶτον μὲν Χει-
 ρίσοφον, ὅτι ἄρχων ἦρητο· ἔστι δ' οὐ καὶ Ξενο-
 φῶντα. οἱ δὲ ἰσχυρῶς ἀπεμάχοντο· ἀμφοῖν γὰρ
 ταῦτά ἐδόκει μὴ ἀναγκάζειν πόλιν Ἑλληνίδα καὶ
 φιλίαν ὅ,τι μὴ αὐτοὶ ἐθέλοντες διδοῖεν. 7. ἐπεὶ
 δ' οὗτοι ἐδόκουν ἀπρόθυμοι εἶναι, πέμπουσι Λύ-
 κωνα Ἀχαιὸν καὶ Καλλίμαχον Παρράσιον καὶ
 Ἀγασίαν Στυμφάλιον. οὗτοι ἐλθόντες ἔλεγον τὰ

4. οὐ μὴ. see II. 2. 12.

κυζικηνοὺς. "The στατήρ of Cyzicus was common in Greece,
 especially at Athens."—*Dict. Ant.* Its value was twenty-eight
 Attic drachmas=1*l.* 2*s.* 9*d.*

5. αὐτίκα μάλα=instantly, on the very spot.

δεδογμένα. τὸν δὲ Λύκωνα ἔφασαν καὶ ἐπαπειλεῖν, εἰ μὴ ποιήσοιεν ταῦτα. 8. ἀκούσαντες δ' οἱ Ἑρακλεῶται βουλευέσθαι ἔφασαν· καὶ εὐθύς τά τε χρήματα ἐκ τῶν ἀγρῶν συνήγον καὶ τὴν ἀγορὰν εἴσω ἀνεσκέυασαν, καὶ αἱ πύλαι ἐκέκλειντο, καὶ ἐπὶ τῶν τειχῶν ὄπλα ἐφαίνετο.

9. Ἐκ τούτου οἱ ταραξάντες ταῦτα τοὺς στρατηγούς ἠτιῶντο διαφθεῖρειν τὴν πρῶξιν· καὶ συνίσταντο οἱ Ἀρκάδες καὶ οἱ Ἀχαιοί· προειστήκει δὲ μάλιστα αὐτῶν Καλλίμαχος τε ὁ Παρῤῥάσιος καὶ Λύκων ὁ Ἀχαιός. 10. οἱ δὲ λόγοι ἦσαν αὐτοῖς ὡς αἰσχροὺς εἶη ἄρχειν Ἀθηναίων Πελοποννησίων καὶ Λακεδαιμονίων, μηδεμίαν δύναμιν παρεχόμενον εἰς τὴν στρατιάν, καὶ τοὺς μὲν πόνους σφᾶς ἔχειν τὰ δὲ κέρδη ἄλλους, καὶ ταῦτα τὴν σωτηρίαν σφῶν κατειργασμένων· εἶναι γὰρ τοὺς κατειργασμένους Ἀρκάδας καὶ Ἀχαιούς, τὸ δ' ἄλλο στράτευμα οὐδὲν εἶναι· καὶ ἦν δὲ τῇ ἀληθείᾳ ὑπὲρ ἡμισυ τοῦ δλου στρατεύματος Ἀρκάδες καὶ Ἀχαιοί. 11. εἰ οὖν σωφρονοῖεν, αὐτοὶ συστάντες καὶ στρατηγούς ἐλόμενοι ἑαυτῶν καθ' ἑαυτοὺς ἂν τὴν πορείαν ποιοῖντο καὶ πειρῶντο ἀγαθὸν τι λαμβάνειν. 12. ταῦτ' ἔδοξε· καὶ ἀπολιπόντες Χειρισόφον, εἰ τινες ἦσαν παρ' αὐτῷ Ἀρκάδες ἢ Ἀχαιοί, καὶ Ξενοφῶντα, συνέστησαν καὶ στρατηγούς αἰροῦνται ἑαυτῶν δέκα· τούτους δὲ ἐψηφίσαντο ἐκ τῆς νικώσης ὅ,τι δοκοίη τοῦτο ποιεῖν. ἡ μὲν οὖν τοῦ παντὸς ἀρχὴ Χειρισόφῳ ἐνταῦθα κατελύθη ἡμέρᾳ ἕκτη ἢ ἑβδόμῃ ἀφ' ἧς ἤρέθη.

13. Ξενοφῶν μέντοι ἐβούλετο κοινῇ μετ' αὐτῶν

τὴν πορείαν ποιείσθαι, νομίζων οὕτως ἀσφαλεστέραν εἶναι ἢ ἰδίᾳ ἕκαστον στέλλεσθαι· ἀλλὰ Νέων ἔπειθεν αὐτὸν καθ' αὐτὸν πορεύεσθαι, ἀκούσας τοῦ Χειρισόφου ὅτι Κλέανδρος ὁ ἐν Βυζαντίῳ ἄρμοστῆς φαίη τριήρεις ἔχων ἤξειν εἰς Κάλπησι λιμένα· 14. ὅπως οὖν μηδεὶς μετάσχοι, ἀλλ' αὐτοὶ καὶ οἱ αὐτῶν στρατιῶται ἐκπλεύσειαν ἐπὶ τῶν τριήρων, διὰ ταῦτα συνεβούλευε. καὶ Χειρισόφος, ἅμα μὲν ἀθυμῶν τοῖς γεγενημένοις, ἅμα δὲ μισῶν ἐκ τούτου τὸ σπράτευμα, ἐπιτρέπει αὐτῷ ποιεῖν ὅ,τι βούλεται. 15. Ξενοφῶν δὲ ἔτι μὲν ἐπεχειρήσεν ἀπαλλαγεῖν τῆς στρατιᾶς ἐκπλεύσαι· θυομένῳ δὲ αὐτῷ τῷ ἡγεμόνι Ἡρακλεῖ καὶ κοινουμένῳ πότερα λῶν καὶ ἄμεινον εἶη στρατεύεσθαι ἔχοντι τοὺς παραμείναντας τῶν στρατιωτῶν ἢ ἀπαλλάττεσθαι ἐσήμηνεν ὁ θεὸς τοῖς ἱεροῖς συστρατεύεσθαι. 16. οὕτω γίγνεται τὸ σπράτευμα τριχῆ· Ἀρκάδες μὲν καὶ Ἀχαιοὶ πλείους ἢ τετρακισχίλιοι, ὀπλίται πάντες· Χειρισόφῳ δ' ὀπλίται μὲν εἰς τετρακοσίους καὶ χιλίους, πελτασταὶ δὲ εἰς ἑκτακοσίους, οἱ Κλεάρχου Θρᾶκες· Ξενοφῶντι δὲ ὀπλίται μὲν εἰς ἑπτακοσίους καὶ χιλίους, πελτασταὶ δὲ εἰς τριακοσίους· ἵππικὸν δὲ μόνος οὗτος εἶχεν ἀμφὶ τετταράκοντα ἵππείας.

17. Καὶ οἱ μὲν Ἀρκάδες διαπραξάμενοι πλοῖα

13. ἄρμοστῆς “was the name of the governors whom the Lacedæmonians, after the Peloponnesian war, sent into their subject or conquered towns, partly to keep them in submission, and partly to abolish the democratical form of government, and establish in its stead one similar to their own.”—*Dict. Ant.*

παρὰ τῶν Ἡρακλεωτῶν πρῶτοι πλέουσιν, ὅπως ἐξαίφνης ἐπιπεσόντες τοῖς Βιθυνοῖς λάβοιεν ὅτι πλείστα· καὶ ἀποβαίνουσιν εἰς Κάλπης λιμένα κατὰ μέσον πῶς τῆς Θράκης. 18. Χειρίσοφος δ' εὐθύς ἀπὸ τῆς πόλεως τῶν Ἡρακλεωτῶν ἀρξάμενος πεξῆ ἐπορεύετο διὰ τῆς χώρας· ἐπεὶ δὲ εἰς τὴν Θράκην ἐνέβαλε, παρὰ τὴν θάλατταν ἦεν· καὶ γὰρ ἡσθένει. 19. Ξενοφῶν δὲ πλοῖα λαβὼν ἀποβαίνει ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρια τῆς Θράκης καὶ τῆς Ἡρακλεώτιδος, καὶ διὰ μεσογαίας ἐπορεύετο.

III. [Ὅν μὲν οὖν τρόπον ἢ τε Χειρισόφου ἀρχὴ τοῦ παντὸς κατελύθη καὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων τὸ στράτευμα ἐσχίσθη ἐν τοῖς ἐπάνω εἴρηται.] 2. Ἐπραξαν δ' αὐτῶν ἕκαστοι τάδε. οἱ μὲν Ἀρκάδες ὡς ἀπέβησαν νυκτὸς εἰς Κάλπης λιμένα, πορεύονται εἰς τὰς πρῶτας κόμας, στάδια ἀπὸ θαλάττης ὡς τριάκοντα. ἐπεὶ δὲ φῶς ἐγένετο ἤγεν ἕκαστος στρατηγὸς τὸν ἑαυτοῦ λόχον ἐπὶ κώμην· ὅποια δὲ μείζων ἐδόκει εἶναι σύνδυο λόχους ἤγον οἱ στρατηγοί. 3. συνεβάλλοντο δὲ καὶ λόφον εἰς ἃν δέοι πάντας ἀλίξεσθαι· καὶ ἅτε ἐξαίφνης ἐπιπεσόντες ἀνδράποδά τε πολλὰ ἔλαβον καὶ πρόβατα πολλὰ περιεβάλλοντο.

4. Οἱ δὲ Θράκες ἠθροίζοντο οἱ διαφεύγοντες· πολλοὶ δὲ διέφευγον πελτασταὶ ὄντες ὀπλίτας ἐξ

III. 2. λόχον. λόχος is here used for a division of the Arcadian army, not, as in other passages, for a company of a hundred men. So also their commanders are called indifferently στρατηγοί or λοχαγοί.

3. συνεβάλλοντο, they agreed upon.

αὐτῶν τῶν χειρῶν. ἐπεὶ δὲ συνελέγησαν, πρῶτον μὲν τῷ Σμίκρητος λόχῳ ἐνὸς τῶν Ἀρκάδων στρατηγῶν ἀπιόντι ἤδη εἰς τὸ συγκείμενον καὶ πολλὰ χρήματα ἄγοντι ἐπιτίθενται. 5. καὶ τέως μὲν ἐμάχοντο ἅμα πορευόμενοι οἱ Ἕλληνες. ἐπὶ δὲ διαβάσει χαράδρας τρέπονται αὐτούς, καὶ αὐτὸν τε τὸν Σμίκρητα ἀποκτινύασιν καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους πάντας· ἄλλου δὲ λόχου τῶν δέκα στρατηγῶν τοῦ Ἡγησάνδρου ὀκτὼ μόνους κατέλιπον· καὶ αὐτὸς Ἡγησάνδρος ἐσώθη. 6. καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι δὲ λοχαγοὶ συνήλθον, οἱ μὲν σὺν πράγμασιν, οἱ δὲ ἄνευ πραγμάτων· οἱ δὲ Θρᾶκες ἐπεὶ εὐτύχησαν τοῦτο τὸ εὐτύχημα, συνεβίων τε ἀλλήλους καὶ συνελέγοντο ἐβρώμενως τῆς νυκτός. καὶ ἅμα ἡμέρα κύκλῳ περὶ τὸν λόφον ἔνθα οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐστρατοπεδεύοντο ἐτάττοντο καὶ ἵππεῖς πολλοὶ καὶ πελτασταί, καὶ αἰὲ πλείονες συνέβρεον. 7. καὶ προσέβαλλον πρὸς τοὺς ὀπλίτας ἀσφαλῶς· οἱ μὲν γὰρ Ἕλληνες οὔτε τοξότην εἶχον οὔτε ἀκοντιστὴν οὔτε ἵππέα. οἱ δὲ προσθέοντες καὶ προσελαύνοντες ἠκόντιζον· ὅποτε δὲ αὐτοῖς ἐπίοιεν, ῥαδίως ἀπέφευγον. ἄλλοι δὲ ἄλλη ἐπετίθεντο. 8. καὶ τῶν μὲν πολλοὶ ἐτιτρώσκοντο, τῶν δὲ οὐδεῖς· ὥστε κινήθηναι οὐκ ἐδύναντο ἐκ τοῦ χωρίου, ἀλλὰ τελευτώντες καὶ ἀπὸ τοῦ ὕδατος εἶργον αὐτοὺς οἱ Θρᾶκες. 9. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀπορία πολλὴ ἦν, διελέγοντο περὶ σπονδῶν· καὶ τὰ μὲν ἄλλα ὠμολόγητο αὐτοῖς, ὁμήρους δὲ οὐκ ἔδιδον· οἱ Θρᾶκες αἰτούντων τῶν Ἑλλήνων, ἄλλ'

6. πράγμασιν. see I. 1. 11.

7. οὔτε τοξότην, &c.: cf. VI. 2. 16.

ἐν τούτῳ ἴσχετο· τὰ μὲν δὴ τῶν Ἀρκάδων οὕτως εἶχε.

10. Χειρίσοφος δὲ ἀσφαλῶς πορευόμενος παρὰ θάλατταν ἀφικνεῖται εἰς Κάλπης λιμένα. Ξενοφῶντι δὲ διὰ τῆς μεσογαίας πορευομένων οἱ ἰππεῖς προκαταθέοντες ἐντυγχάνουσι πρεσβύταις πορευομένοις ποι. καὶ ἐπεὶ ἤχθησαν παρὰ Ξενοφῶντα, ἐρωτᾷ αὐτοὺς εἴ που ἦσθηται ἄλλου στρατεύματος ὄντος Ἑλληνικοῦ. 11. οἱ δὲ ἔλεγον πάντα τὰ γεγενημένα, καὶ νῦν ὅτι πολιορκοῦνται ἐπὶ λόφου, οἱ δὲ Θρᾶκες πάντες περικεκυκλωμένοι εἶεν αὐτοῦς. ἐνταῦθα τοὺς μὲν ἀνθρώπους τούτους ἐφύλαττεν ἰσχυρῶς, ὅπως ἡγεμόνες εἶεν ὅπου δέου σκοποῦς δὲ καταστήσας συνέλεξε τοὺς στρατιώτας καὶ ἔλεξεν.

He informs the soldiers of the disasters and perilous position of the Arcadians, and urges them to march immediately to the rescue of their countrymen. The horse and light troops are sent a-head to reconnoitre, and ravage the country as they advance.

19. Ταῦτ' εἰπὼν ἡγεῖτο. οἱ δ' ἰππεῖς διασπείρομενοι ἐφ' ὅσον καλῶς εἶχεν ἔκαιον, καὶ οἱ πελτασταὶ ἐπιπαριόντες κατὰ τὰ ἄκρα ἔκαιον πάντα ὅσα καύσιμα ἐώρων, καὶ ἡ στρατιὰ δέ, εἴ τι παραλειπομένων ἐντυγχάνοιεν ὥστε πᾶσα ἡ χώρα αἰθεσθαι ἐδόκει καὶ τὸ στράτευμα πολὺ εἶναι. 20. ἐπεὶ δὲ ὥρα ἦν κατεστρατοπεδεύσαντο ἐπὶ

10. Ξενοφῶντι. "We find, though but very seldom, the dative in the absolute construction with a participle, as expressing the notion of *when* defined by some action or state."—*Jelf*, § 699.

λόφον ἐκβάντες, καὶ τὰ τε τῶν πολεμίων πυρὰ ἐώρων, ἀπείχον δὲ ὡς τετταράκοντα σταδίους, καὶ αὐτοὶ ὡς ἐδύναντο πλείστα πυρὰ ἔκαιον. 21. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐδείπνησαν τάχιστα, παρηγγέλθη τὰ πυρὰ κατασβεννύναι πάντα. καὶ τὴν μὲν νύκτα φυλακὰς ποιησάμενοι ἐκάθευδον· ἅμα δὲ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ προσευξάμενοι τοῖς θεοῖς καὶ συνταξάμενοι ὡς εἰς μάχην ἐπορεύοντο ἢ ἐδύναντο τάχιστα. 22. Τιμασιῶν δὲ καὶ οἱ ἵππεις ἔχοντες τοὺς ἡγεμόνας καὶ προελαύνοντες ἐλάνθανον αὐτοὺς ἐπὶ τῷ λόφῳ γενόμενοι ἔνθα ἐπολιορκοῦντο οἱ Ἕλληνας. καὶ οὐχ ὀρώσιν οὔτε φίλιον στράτευμα οὔτε πολέμιον, καὶ ταῦτα ἀπαγγέλλουσι πρὸς τὸν Ξενοφῶντα καὶ τὸ στράτευμα, γραῖδια δὲ καὶ γερόντια καὶ πρόβατα ὀλίγα καὶ βοῦς καταλελειμμένους. 23. καὶ τὸ μὲν πρῶτον θαῦμα ἦν τί εἶη τὸ γεγενημένον, ἔπειτα δὲ καὶ τῶν καταλελειμμένων ἐπυνθάνοντο ὅτι οἱ μὲν Θρᾷκες εὐθύς ἀφ' ἑσπέρας ᾤχοντο ἀπίοντες, ἔωθεν δὲ καὶ τοὺς Ἕλληνας ἔφασαν οἴχεσθαι· ὅπου δὲ οὐκ εἶδέναι.

24. Ταῦτα ἀκούσαντες οἱ ἀμφὶ Ξενοφῶντα, ἐπεὶ ἠρίστησαν, συσκευασάμενοι ἐπορεύοντο, βουλόμενοι ὡς τάχιστα συμμίξαι τοῖς ἄλλοις εἰς Κάλπης λιμένα. καὶ πορευόμενοι ἐώρων τὸν στίβον τῶν Ἀρκάδων καὶ Ἀχαιῶν κατὰ τὴν ἐπὶ Κάλπης ὁδόν. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀφίκοντο εἰς τὸ αὐτό, ἄσμενοι τε εἶδον ἀλλήλους καὶ ἠσπάζοντο ὥσπερ ἀδελφούς. 25. καὶ ἐπυνθάνοντο οἱ Ἀρκάδες τῶν περὶ Ξενοφῶντα τί τὰ πυρὰ κατασβέσειαν· ἡμεῖς μὲν γάρ,

22. ἐλάνθανον αὐτοὺς γενόμενοι, found the same lines unexplicatedly.

ἔφασαν, ῥόμεθα ὑμᾶς τὸ μὲν πρῶτον, ἐπειδὴ τὰ πυρὰ οὐχ ἑωρῶμεν, τῆς νυκτὸς ἤξειν ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους· καὶ οἱ πολέμιοι δέ, ὡς γε ἡμῖν ἐδόκουν, τοῦτο δεισαντες ἀπήλθον· σχεδὸν γὰρ ἀμφὶ τοῦτον τὸν χρόνον ἀπήεσαν. 26. ἐπεὶ δὲ οὐκ ἀφίκεσθε, ὁ δὲ χρόνος ἐξήκεν, ῥόμεθα ὑμᾶς πυθομένους τὰ παρ' ἡμῖν φοβηθέντας οἴχεσθαι ἀποδράντας ἐπὶ θάλατταν· καὶ ἐδόκει ἡμῖν μὴ ἀπολείπεσθαι ὑμῶν. οὕτως οὖν καὶ ἡμεῖς δεῦρο ἐπορεύθημεν.

IV. Ταύτην μὲν οὖν τὴν ἡμέραν αὐτοῦ ἠυλίζοντο ἐπὶ τοῦ αἰγιαλοῦ πρὸς τῷ λιμένι. τὸ δὲ χωρίον τοῦτο ὃ καλεῖται Κάλπης λιμὴν ἔστι μὲν ἐν τῇ Θράκῃ τῇ ἐν τῇ Ἀσίᾳ· ἀρξαμένη δὲ ἡ Θράκη αὕτη ἔστιν ἀπὸ τοῦ στόματος τοῦ Πόντου μέχρι Ἡρακλείας ἐπὶ δεξιὰ εἰς τὸν Πόντον εἰσπλέοντι. 2. καὶ τριῆρι μὲν ἔστιν εἰς Ἡράκλειαν ἐκ Βυζαντίου κώπαις ἡμέρας μάλα μακρᾶς πλοῦς· ἐν δὲ τῷ μέσῳ ἄλλη μὲν πόλις οὐδεμία οὔτε φιλία οὔτε Ἑλληνίς, ἀλλὰ Θρᾶκες Βιθυνοί· καὶ οὐδ' ἂν λάβωσι τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐκπίπτοντας ἢ ἄλλως πῶς δεινὰ ὑβρίζειν λέγονται [τοὺς Ἑλληνας]. 3. ὁ δὲ Κάλπης λιμὴν ἐν μέσῳ μὲν κεῖται ἑκατέρωθεν πλεόντων ἐξ Ἡρακλείας καὶ Βυζαντίου· ἔστι δ' ἐν τῇ θαλάττῃ προκείμενον χωρίον, τὸ μὲν εἰς τὴν θάλατταν καθῆκον αὐτοῦ πέτρα ἀπορρώξ, ὕψος ὄψη ἐλάχιστον οὐ μείον εἴκοσιν ὀργυιῶν, ὁ δὲ αὐχὴν ὁ εἰς τὴν γῆν ἀνήκων τοῦ χωρίου μάλιστα τεττάρων πλέθρων τὸ εὖρος· τὸ δ' ἐντὸς τοῦ αὐχένος χωρίον ἱκανὸν μυριοῖς ἀνθρώποις οἰκῆσαι.

IV. 2. ἐκπίπτοντας, cast ashore. see also VII. 5. 13.

4. λιμὴν δ' ὑπ' αὐτῇ τῇ πέτρᾳ τὸ πρὸς ἐσπέραν αἰγιαλὸν ἔχων. κρήνη δὲ ἠδέος ὕδατος καὶ ἀφθονος ῥέουσα ἐπ' αὐτῇ τῇ θαλάττῃ ὑπὸ τῇ ἐπικρατεῖα τοῦ χωρίου. ξύλα δὲ πολλὰ μὲν καὶ ἄλλα, πάνυ δὲ πολλὰ καὶ καλὰ ναυπηγήσιμα ἐπ' αὐτῇ τῇ θαλάττῃ. 5. τὸ δὲ ὄρος [τὸ ἐν τῷ λιμένι] εἰς μεσόγαιαν μὲν ἀνήκει ὅσον ἐπὶ εἴκοσι σταδίους, καὶ τοῦτο γεώδες καὶ ἄλιθον· τὸ δὲ παρὰ θάλατταν πλέον ἢ ἐπὶ εἴκοσι σταδίους δασὺ πολλοῖς καὶ παντοδαποῖς καὶ μεγάλοις ξύλοις. 6. ἡ δὲ ἄλλη χώρα καλὴ καὶ πολλή, καὶ κῶμαι ἐν αὐτῇ εἰσι πολλαὶ καὶ οἰκούμεναι· φέρει γὰρ ἡ γῆ καὶ κριθὰς καὶ πυροὺς καὶ ὄσπρια πάντα καὶ μελίνας καὶ σήσαμα καὶ σῦκα ἀρκούντα καὶ ἀμπέλους πολλὰς καὶ ἠδυοίνους, καὶ τᾶλλα πάντα πλὴν ἐλαιῶν. ἡ μὲν χώρα ἦν τοιαύτη. 7. ἐσκήνουν δὲ ἐν τῷ αἰγιαλῷ πρὸς τῇ θαλάττῃ· εἰς δὲ τὸ πόλισμα ἂν γενόμενον οὐκ ἐβούλοντο στρατοπεδεύεσθαι, ἀλλὰ ἐδόκει καὶ τὸ ἐλθεῖν ἐνταῦθα ἐξ ἐπιβουλῆς εἶναι, βουλομένων τινῶν κατοικίσαι πόλιν. 8. τῶν γὰρ στρατιωτῶν οἱ πλεῖστοι ἦσαν οὐ σπάνει βίου ἐκπεπλευκότες ἐπὶ ταύτην τὴν μισθοφοράν, ἀλλὰ τὴν Κύρου ἀρετὴν ἀκούοντες, οἱ μὲν καὶ ἄνδρας ἄγοντες, οἱ δὲ καὶ προσανηλωκότες χρήματα, καὶ τούτων ἕτεροι ἀποδεδρακότες πατέρας καὶ μητέρας, οἱ δὲ καὶ τέκνα καταλιπόντες ὡς χρήματ' αὐτοῖς κτησάμενοι ἤξοντες πάλιν, ἀκούοντες καὶ τοὺς

5. "This is so much the case now, that it is designated by the Turks as the Aghaj Denizi, or 'sea of trees.'"—Ainsworth, p. 218.

7. ἂν γενόμενον. see I. 1. 10.

ἄλλους τοὺς παρὰ Κύρῳ πολλὰ καὶ ἀγαθὰ πράττειν. τοιοῦτοι ὄντες ἐπόθουν εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα σῶζεσθαι.

9. Ἐπειδὴ δὲ ὑστέρα ἡμέρα ἐγένετο τῆς εἰς ταῦτῶν συνόδου, ἐπ' ἐξόδῳ ἐθύετο Ξενοφῶν ἀνάγκη γὰρ ἦν ἐπὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἐξάγειν. ἐπενόει δὲ καὶ τοὺς νεκροὺς θάπτειν. ἐπεὶ δὲ τὰ ἱερά [καλὰ] ἐγένετο, εἶποντο καὶ οἱ Ἀρκάδες, καὶ τοὺς μὲν νεκροὺς τοὺς πλείστους ἔνθαπερ ἔπεσον ἐκάστους ἔθαψαν ἥδη γὰρ ἦσαν πεμπταῖοι καὶ οὐχ οἷόν τε ἀναιρεῖν ἔτι ἦν ἐνίους δὲ τοὺς ἐκ τῶν ὁδῶν συνενεγκόντες ἔθαψαν ἐκ τῶν ὑπαρχόντων ὡς ἐδύνατο κάλλιστα. οὓς δὲ μὴ εὔρισκον κενοτάφιον αὐτοῖς ἐποίησαν μέγα, καὶ στεφάνους ἐπέθεσαν. 10. ταῦτα δὲ ποιήσαντες ἀνεχώρησαν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον. καὶ τότε μὲν δειπνήσαντες ἐκοιμήθησαν. τῇ δὲ ὑστεραίᾳ συνήλθον οἱ στρατιῶται πάντες· συνήγε δὲ μάλιστα Ἀγασίας τε ὁ Στυμφάλιος λοχαγός, καὶ Ἱερώνυμος Ἡλείος λοχαγός, καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι οἱ πρεσβύτατοι τῶν Ἀρκάδων. 11. καὶ δόγμα ἐποίησαντο, εἴαν τις τοῦ λοιποῦ μνησθῆ διχα τὸ στράτευμα ποιεῖν, θανάτῳ αὐτὸν ζημιοῦσθαι, καὶ κατὰ χώραν ἀπιέναι ἢ περὶ πρόσθεν εἶχε τὸ στράτευμα, καὶ ἄρχειν τοὺς πρόσθεν στρατηγούς. καὶ Χειρίσοφος μὲν ἥδη τετελευτήκει

9. ἐξόδῳ, a military expedition; ἀφόδῳ (13.), a departure.

ἐκ τῶν ὑπαρχόντων, in accordance with their means. τὰ ὑπάρχοντα = one's property, all one has.

11. κατὰ χώραν, in their (proper) place, i. e. their usual station.

φάρμακον πιών πυρέττων· τὰ δ' ἐκείνου Νέων Ἀσιναῖος παρέλαβε.

12. Μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα ἀναστὰς εἶπε Ξενοφῶν, Ὡς ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, τὴν μὲν πορείαν, ὡς ἔοικε, δῆλον ὅτι περὶ ποιητέον· οὐ γὰρ ἔστι πλοῖα· ἀνάγκη δὲ πορεύεσθαι ἤδη· οὐ γὰρ ἔστι μένουσι τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. ἡμεῖς μὲν οὖν, ἔφη, θυσόμεθα· ὑμᾶς δὲ δεῖ παρασκευάζεσθαι ὡς μαχουμένους εἴ ποτε καὶ ἄλλοτε· οἱ γὰρ πολέμιοι ἀνατεθαρρήκασιν.

13. ἐκ τούτου ἐθύοντο οἱ στρατηγοί, μάντις δὲ παρῆν Ἀρηξίων Ἀρκάς· ὁ δὲ Σιλανὸς ὁ Ἀμβρακιώτης ἤδη ἀποδεδράκει πλοῖον μισθωσάμενος ἐξ Ἡρακλείας. θυομένοις δὲ ἐπὶ τῇ ἀφόδῳ οὐκ ἐγίνετο τὰ ἱερά.

14. ταύτην μὲν οὖν τὴν ἡμέραν ἐπαύσαντο. καὶ τινες ἐτόλμων λέγειν ὡς ὁ Ξενοφῶν βουλόμενος τὸ χωρίον οἰκίσαι πέπεικε τὸν μάντιν λέγειν ὡς τὰ ἱερά οὐ γίνεταί ἐπὶ ἀφόδῳ. 15. ἐντεῦθεν κηρύξας τῇ αὔριον παρῆναι ἐπὶ τὴν θυσίαν τὸν βουλόμενον, καὶ μάντις εἴ τις εἴη, παραγγείλας παρῆναι ὡς συνθεασόμενον τὰ ἱερά, ἔθυε· καὶ ἐνταῦθα παρῆσαν πολλοί. 16. θυομένων δὲ πάλιν εἰς τρεῖς ἐπὶ τῇ ἀφόδῳ οὐκ ἐγίνετο τὰ ἱερά. ἐκ τούτου χαλεπῶς εἶχον οἱ στρατιῶται· καὶ γὰρ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἐπέλιπεν ἃ ἔχοντες ἦλθον, καὶ ἀγορὰ οὐδεμία παρῆν.

17. Ἐκ τούτου ξυνελθόντων εἶπε πάλιν Ξενοφῶν, Ὡς ἄνδρες, ἐπὶ μὲν τῇ πορείᾳ, ὡς ὀράτε, τὰ ἱερά οὐπω γίνεταί· τῶν δ' ἐπιτηδείων ὀρῶ ὑμᾶς δεομένους· ἀνάγκη οὖν μοι δοκεῖ εἶναι θύεσθαι

12. εἴ ποτε καὶ ἄλλοτε, if ever you did so.

περὶ αὐτοῦ τούτου. 18. ἀναστὰς δέ τις εἶπε, Καὶ εἰκότως ἄρα ἡμῖν οὐ γίγνεται τὰ ἱερά· ὡς γὰρ ἐγὼ ἀπὸ τοῦ αὐτομάτου χθὲς ἤκοντος πλοίου ἤκουσά τινος ὅτι Κλέανδρος ὁ ἐκ Βυζαντίου ἀρμοστής μέλλει ἤξειν πλοῖα καὶ τριήρεις ἔχων. 19. ἐκ τούτου δὲ ἀναμένειν μὲν πᾶσιν ἐδόκει· ἐπὶ δὲ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἀνάγκη ἦν ἐξίεναι. καὶ ἐπὶ τούτῳ πάλιν ἐθύετο εἰς τρίς, καὶ οὐκ ἐγίνετο τὰ ἱερά. καὶ ἦδη καὶ ἐπὶ σκηνὴν ἰόντες τὴν Ξενοφῶντος ἔλεγον ὅτι οὐκ ἔχοιεν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. ὁ δ' οὐκ ἂν ἔφη ἐξαγαγεῖν μὴ γυγνομένων τῶν ἱερῶν.

20. Καὶ πάλιν τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ἐθύετο, καὶ σχεδόν τι πᾶσα ἡ στρατιὰ διὰ τὸ μέλειν ἅπασιν ἐκυκλοῦντο περὶ τὰ ἱερά· τὰ δὲ θύματα ἐπιλελοίπει. οἱ δὲ στρατηγοὶ ἐξῆγον μὲν οὐ, συνεκάλεσαν δέ. 21. εἶπεν οὖν Ξενοφῶν, Ἴσως οἱ πολέμοι συνειλεγμένοι εἰσὶ καὶ ἀνάγκη μάχεσθαι· εἰ οὖν καταλιπόντες τὰ σκεύη ἐν τῷ ἐρυμνῷ χωρίῳ ὡς εἰς μάχην παρεσκευασμένοι ἴοιμεν, ἴσως ἂν τὰ ἱερά προχωροῖη ἡμῖν. 22. ἀκούσαντες δ' οἱ στρατιῶται ἀνέκραγον ὡς οὐδὲν δέον εἰς τὸ χωρίον ἄγειν, ἀλλὰ θύεσθαι ὡς τάχιστα. καὶ πρόβατα μὲν οὐκέτι ἦν, βούς δὲ ὑπὸ ἀμάξης πριάμενοι ἐθύοντο· καὶ Ξενοφῶν Κλεάνορος ἐδεήθη τοῦ Ἀρκάδος προθυμείσθαι εἴ τι ἐν τούτῳ εἴη. ἀλλ' οὐδ' ὡς ἐγένετο.

23. Νέων δὲ ἦν μὲν στρατηγὸς κατὰ τὸ Χειρισόφου μέρος, ἐπεὶ δὲ ἑώρα τοὺς ἀνθρώπους ὡς εἶχον δεινῶς τῇ ἐνδείᾳ, βουλόμενος αὐτοῖς χαρῆ-

22. ὑπὸ ἀμάξης. see note on *ὅπί*, I. 1. 10.

23. *κατά*, see *κατά*, I. 1. 7.

ζεσθαι, εὐρών τινα ἄνθρωπον Ἡρακλεώτην ὃς ἔφη
 κώμας ἐγγὺς εἶδέναι ὅθεν εἶη λαβεῖν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια,
 ἐκήρυξε τὸν βουλόμενον ἰέναι ἐπὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ὡς
 ἡγεμόνος ἔσομένου. ἐξέρχονται δὴ σὺν δορατίοις
 καὶ ἄσκοις καὶ θυλάκοις καὶ ἄλλοις ἀγγείοις εἰς
 δισχιλίους ἀνθρώπους. 24. ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἦσαν ἐν ταῖς
 κώμαις καὶ διεσπείροντο ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ λαμβάνειν, ἐπι-
 πίπτουσιν αὐτοῖς οἱ Φαρναβάζου ἰππεῖς πρῶτοι·
 βεβοηθηκότες γὰρ ἦσαν τοῖς Βιθυνοῖς βουλόμενοι
 σὺν τοῖς Βιθυνοῖς εἰ δύναιτο ἀποκωλύσαι τοὺς
 Ἕλληνας μὴ ἐλθεῖν εἰς τὴν Φρυγίαν· οὗτοι οἱ
 ἰππεῖς ἀποκτείνουσι τῶν ἀνδρῶν οὐ μείον πεντα-
 κοσίου· οἱ δὲ λοιποὶ ἐπὶ τὸ ὄρος ἀνέφυγον. 25.
 ἐκ τούτου ἀπαγγέλλει τις ταῦτα τῶν ἀποφευγόν-
 των εἰς τὸ στρατόπεδον. καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν, ἐπεὶ οὐκ
 ἐγεγένητο τὰ ἱερὰ ταύτῃ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ, λαβὼν βοῦν ὑπὸ
 ἀμάξης, οὐ γὰρ ἦν ἄλλα ἱερεία, σφαγιασάμενος
 ἐβοήθει, καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι οἱ μέχρι τριάκοντα ἐτῶν
 ἅπαντες. 26. καὶ ἀναλαβόντες τοὺς λοιποὺς ἄν-
 δρας εἰς τὸ στρατόπεδον ἀφικνοῦνται. καὶ ἦδη
 μὲν ἀμφὶ ἡλίου δυσμᾶς ἦν καὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες μάλ'
 ἀθύμως ἔχοντες ἐδειπνοποιοῦντο, καὶ ἐξαπίνης
 διὰ τῶν λασίων τῶν Βιθυνῶν τινες ἐπιγεγόμενοι
 τοῖς προφύλαξι τοὺς μὲν κατέκανον, τοὺς δὲ ἐδίω-
 ξαν μέχρι εἰς τὸ στρατόπεδον. 27. καὶ κραυγῆς
 γενομένης εἰς τὰ ὄπλα πάντες ἔδραμον οἱ Ἕλληνες·
 καὶ διώκειν μὲν καὶ κινεῖν τὸ στρατόπεδον νυκτὸς
 οὐκ ἀσφαλὲς ἐδόκει εἶναι· δασέα γὰρ ἦν τὰ χω-
 ρία· ἐν δὲ τοῖς ὄπλοις ἐνυκτέρευον φυλαττόμενοι
 ἱκανοῖς φύλαξι.

V. Τὴν μὲν νύκτα οὕτω διήγαγον. ἅμα δὲ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ οἱ στρατηγοὶ εἰς τὸ ἐρυμνὸν χωρίον ἤγουντο· οἱ δὲ εἴποντο ἀναλαβόντες τὰ ὄπλα καὶ τὰ σκεύη. πρὶν δὲ ἀρίστου ὥραν εἶναι ἀπετάφρυσαν ἢ ἢ εἴσοδος ἦν εἰς τὸ χωρίον, καὶ ἀπεσταύρωσαν ἅπαν, καταλιπόντες τρεῖς πύλας. καὶ πλοῖον ἐξ Ἑρακλείας ἤκεν ἄλφιστα ἄγον καὶ ἱερεῖα καὶ οἶνον. 2. πρῶτ' ἄναστὰς Ξενοφῶν ἐθύετο ἐπεξόδια, καὶ γίνεται τὰ ἱερὰ ἐπὶ τοῦ πρώτου ἱεροῦ. καὶ ἦδη τέλος ἐχόντων τῶν ἱερῶν ὄρᾳ ἀετὸν αἴσιον ὁ μάντις Ἀρηξίων Παρράσιος, καὶ ἠγέσθαι κελεύει τὸν Ξενοφῶντα. 3. καὶ διαβάντες τὴν τάφρον τὰ ὄπλα τίθενται, καὶ ἐκήρυξαν ἀριστήσαντας ἐξιέναι τοὺς στρατιώτας σὺν τοῖς ὄπλοις, τὸν δὲ ὄχλον καὶ ἀνδράποδα αὐτοῦ καταλιπεῖν. 4. οἱ μὲν δὴ ἄλλοι πάντες ἐξῆσαν, Νέων δὲ οὐ· ἐδόκει γὰρ κάλλιστον εἶναι τοῦτον φύλακα καταλιπεῖν τῶν ἐπὶ τοῦ στρατοπέδου. ἐπεὶ δ' οἱ λοχαγοὶ καὶ οἱ στρατιῶται ἀπέλιπον αὐτούς, αἰσχυρόμενοι μὴ ἐφέπεσθαι τῶν ἄλλων ἐξιόντων, κατέλιπον αὐτοῦ τοὺς ὑπὲρ πέντε καὶ τετταράκοντα ἔτη. καὶ οὗτοι μὲν ἔμενον, οἱ δ' ἄλλοι ἐπορεύοντο. 5. πρὶν δὲ πεντεκαίδεκα στάδια διεληλυθέναι ἐνέτυχον ἦδη νεκροῖς· καὶ τὴν οὐρὰν τοῦ κέρατος ποιησάμενοι κατὰ τοὺς πρώτους φανέντας νεκροὺς ἔθαπτον πάντας ὁπόσους ἐπελάμβανε τὸ κέρασ. 6. ἐπεὶ δὲ τοὺς πρώτους ἔθαψαν, προαγαγόντες καὶ τὴν οὐρὰν αὐθις ποιησάμενοι κατὰ τοὺς πρώτους τῶν ἀτάφων ἔθαπτον τὸν αὐτὸν τρόπον ὁπόσους ἐπε-

V. 5. τὴν οὐρὰν τοῦ κέρατος, *the rear rank of the wing.*

λάμβανεν ἡ στρατιά. ἐπεὶ δὲ εἰς τὴν ὁδὸν ἤκον τὴν ἐκ τῶν κωμῶν, ἔνθα δὲ ἔκειντο ἀθρόοι, συννευγκόντες αὐτοὺς ἔθαψαν.

7. Ἦδη δὲ πέρα μεσοῦσης τῆς ἡμέρας προαγαγόντες τὸ στράτευμα ἔξω τῶν κωμῶν ἐλάμβανον τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ὅ,τι τις ὀρώψῃ ἐντὸς τῆς φάλαγγος, καὶ ἐξαίφνης ὀρώσι τοὺς πολεμίους ὑπερβάλλοντας κατὰ λόφους τινὰς ἐκ τοῦ ἐναντίου, τεταγμένους ἐπὶ φάλαγγος ἰππέας τε πολλοὺς καὶ πεζοῦς· καὶ γὰρ Σπιθριδάτης καὶ Ραθίνης ἤκον παρὰ Φαρναβάζου ἔχοντες τὴν δύναμιν. 8. ἐπεὶ δὲ κατεῖδον τοὺς Ἕλληνας οἱ πολέμιοι, ἔστησαν ἀπέχοντες αὐτῶν ὅσον πεντεκαίδεκα σταδίου. ἐκ τούτου εὐθὺς Ἀρηξίων ὁ μάντις τῶν Ἑλλήνων σφαγιάζεται, καὶ ἐγένετο ἐπὶ τοῦ πρώτου καλὰ τὰ σφάγια. 9. ἔνθα δὴ Ξενοφῶν λέγει, Δοκεῖ μοι, ὦ ἄνδρες στρατηγοί, ἐπιτάξασθαι τῇ φάλαγγι λόχους φύλακας, ἵνα ἂν που δέῃ ὧσιν οἱ ἐπιβοηθήσοντες τῇ φάλαγγι, καὶ οἱ πολέμιοι τεταραγμένοι ἐμπίπτωσιν εἰς τεταγμένους καὶ ἀκεραίους. 10. συνεδόκει ταῦτα πάντων. Ἔμεις μὲν τοίνυν, ἔφη, προηγείσθε τὴν πρὸς τοὺς ἐναντίους, ὡς μὴ ἐστήκωμεν ἐπεὶ ὤφθημεν καὶ εἶδομεν τοὺς πολεμίους· ἐγὼ δὲ ἤξω τοὺς τελευταίους λόχους καταχωρίσας ἥπερ ὑμῖν δοκεῖ.

11. Ἐκ τούτου οἱ μὲν ἥσυχοι προῆγον· ὁ δὲ τρεῖς ἀφελὼν τὰς τελευταίας τάξεις, ἀνὰ διακοσίους ἄνδρας, τὴν μὲν ἐπὶ τὸ δεξιὸν ἐπέτρεψεν ἐφέπεσθαι ἀπολιπόντας ὡς πλείθρον Σαμόλας Ἀχαιοὺς ταύτης ἤρχε τῆς τάξεως· τὴν δ' ἐπὶ τῷ μέσῳ ἐχώοισεν ἔπεσθαι Πυρρόλας Ἀρκὰς ταύτης

ἤρχε· τὴν δὲ μίαν ἐπὶ τῷ εὐωνύμῳ· Φρασίας Ἀθηναῖος ταύτῃ ἐφεστήκει. 12. προϊόντες δέ, ἐπεὶ ἐγένοντο οἱ ἡγούμενοι ἐπὶ νάπει μεγάλῃ καὶ δυσπόρῳ, ἔστησαν ἀγνοοῦντες εἰ διαβατέον εἶη τὸ νάπος. καὶ παρεγγυῶσι στρατηγούς καὶ λοχαγούς παριέναι ἐπὶ τὸ ἡγούμενον. 13. καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν θαυμάσας ὅ,τι τὸ ἴσχον εἶη τὴν πορείαν καὶ ταχὺ ἀκούων τὴν παρεγγυήν, ἐλαύνει ἢ ἐδύνατο τάχιστα. ἐπεὶ δὲ συνῆλθον, λέγει Σοφαίνετος πρεσβύτατος ὢν τῶν στρατηγῶν ὅτι βουλῆς οὐκ ἄξιον εἶη εἰ διαβατέον ἐστὶ τοιοῦτο[ν ὂν τὸ] νάπος.

Xenophon in a spirited speech encourages the officers to proceed.

22. Ἐντεῦθεν οἱ λοχαγοὶ ἠγείσθαι ἐκέλευον, καὶ οὐδεὶς ἀντέλεγε. καὶ ὃς ἠγείτο, παραγγείλας διαβαίνειν ἢ ἕκαστος ἐτύγχανε τοῦ νάπουσ ὢν θάπτον γὰρ ἀθρόον ἐδόκει ἂν οὕτω πέραν γενέσθαι τὸ στράτευμα ἢ εἰ κατὰ τὴν γέφυραν ἢ ἐπὶ τῷ νάπει ἢ ἐξεμηρύνοντο. 23. ἐπεὶ δὲ διέβησαν, παριὼν παρὰ τὴν φάλαγγα ἔλεγεν, Ἄνδρες, ἀναμιμνήσκεσθε ὅσας δὴ μάχας σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς ὁμοσεῖ ἰόντες νενικήκατε καὶ οἷα πάσχουσιν οἱ πολεμίουσ φεύγοντες, καὶ τοῦτο ἐννοήσατε ὅτι ἐπὶ ταῖς θύραισ τῆσ Ἑλλάδος ἐσμέν. 24. ἀλλ' ἔπεσθε ἠγεμόνι τῷ Ἡρακλεῖ, καὶ ἀλλήλουσ παρακαλεῖτε ὀνομαστί. ἡδύ τοι ἀνδρεῖόν τι καὶ καλόν νῦν εἰπόντα καὶ

22. ἀθρόον, in close array.

τὴν γέφυραν, the causeway.

24. ἡδύ is the predicate of the sentence. Begin the transla-

ποιήσαντα μνήμην ἐν οἷς ἐθέλει παρέχειν ἑαυτοῦ. 25. ταῦτα παρελαύνων ἔλεγε καὶ ἅμα ὑφηγεῖτο ἐπὶ φάλαγγος, καὶ τοὺς πελταστὰς ἑκατέρωθεν ποιησάμενοι ἐπορεύοντο ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους. παρηγγέλλετο δὲ τὰ μὲν δόρατα ἐπὶ τὸν δεξιὸν ὤμον ἔχειν, ἕως σημαῖνοι τῇ σάλπιγγι ἔπειτα δὲ εἰς προβολὴν καθέντας ἔπεσθαι βάδην καὶ μηδένα δρόμῳ διώκειν. ἐκ τούτου σύνθημα παρήει Ζεὺς σωτήρ, Ἡρακλῆς ἡγεμῶν. οἱ δὲ πολέμιοι ὑπέμενον νομίζοντες καλὸν ἔχειν τὸ χωρίον. 26. ἐπεὶ δ' ἐπλησίαζον, ἀλαλάξαντες οἱ Ἕλληνες πελτασταὶ ἔθειον ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους πρὶν τινα κελεύειν· οἱ δὲ πολέμιοι ἀντίοι ὤρμησαν οἷ θ' ἰππεῖς καὶ τὸ στίφος τῶν Βιθυνῶν· καὶ τρέπονται τοὺς πελταστὰς. 27. ἀλλ' ἐπεὶ ὑπηντίαζεν ἡ φάλαγξ τῶν ὀπλιτῶν ταχὺ πορευομένη καὶ ἅμα ἡ σάλπιγξ ἐφθέγγετο καὶ ἐπαιάνιζον καὶ μετὰ ταῦτα ἠλάλαζον καὶ ἅμα τὰ δόρατα καθίεσαν, ἐνταῦθα οὐκέτι ἐδέξαντο οἱ πολέμιοι, ἀλλὰ ἔφηνγον. 28. καὶ Τιμασίων μὲν ἔχων τοὺς ἰππεῖς ἐφέλιπετο, καὶ ἀπεκτίννυσαν ὅσους περ ἠδύναντο ὡς ὀλίγοι ὄντες. τῶν δὲ πολεμίων τὸ μὲν εὐώνυμον εὐθύς διεσπάρη, καθ' ὃ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἰππεῖς ἦσαν, τὸ δὲ δεξιὸν ἄτε οὐ σφόδρα διωκόμενον ἐπὶ λόφου συνέστη. 29. ἐπεὶ δὲ εἶδον οἱ Ἕλληνες ὑπομένοντας αὐτούς, ἐδόκει ῥᾶστόν τε καὶ ἀκινδυνότατον εἶναι ἰέναι ἐπ' αὐτούς. παιανίσαντες οὖν εὐθύς ἐπέκειντο· οἱ δ' οὐχ ὑπέ-

tion thus: pleasing indeed will it be for one who on this occasion has said and done, &c.

25. eis προβολήν. cf. I. 2. 17.

μειναν. καὶ ἐνταῦθα οἱ πελτασταὶ ἐδίωκον μέχρι τὸ δεξιὸν αὐτῶν διεσπάρη· ἀπέθανον δὲ ὀλίγοι· τὸ γὰρ ἵππικὸν φόβον παρείχε τὸ τῶν πολεμίων πολὺ ὄν. 30. ἐπεὶ δὲ εἶδον οἱ Ἕλληνες τὸ τε Φαρναβάζου ἵππικὸν ἔτι συνεστηκὸς καὶ τοὺς Βιθυνοὺς ἵππέας πρὸς ταῦτο συναθροισζομένους καὶ ἀπὸ λόφου τινὸς καταθεωμένους τὰ γινγόμενα, ἀπειρήκεσαν μὲν, ὁμῶς δὲ ἐδόκει καὶ ἐπὶ τούτους ἰτέον εἶναι οὕτως ὅπως δύναιτο, ὡς μὴ τεθαρρήκότες ἀναπαύσαιτο. συνταξάμενοι δὴ πορεύονται. 31. ἐντεῦθεν οἱ πολέμιοι ἵππεῖς φεύγουσι κατὰ τοῦ πρηνοῦς ὁμοίως ὥσπερ οἱ ὑπὸ ἵππέων διωκόμενοι· νάπος γὰρ αὐτοὺς ὑπεδέχετο, ὃ οὐκ ἦδεν οἱ Ἕλληνες, ἀλλὰ προαπετραύποντο διώκοντες· ὄψῃ γὰρ ἦν. 32. ἐπανελθόντες δὲ ἐνθα ἢ πρώτη συμβολὴ ἐγένετο στησάμενοι τρόπαιον ἀπήγεσαν ἐπὶ θάλατταν περὶ ἡλίου δυσμᾶς· στάδιοι δ' ἦσαν ὡς ἐξήκοντα ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον.

VI. Ἐντεῦθεν οἱ μὲν πολέμιοι εἶχον ἀμφὶ τὰ ἑαυτῶν, καὶ ἀπήγοντο καὶ τοὺς οἰκέτας καὶ τὰ χρήματα ὅποι ἐδύνατο προσωτάτω· οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες προσέμενον μὲν Κλέανδρον καὶ τὰς τριήρεις καὶ τὰ πλοῖα ὡς ἦξοντα· ἐξιόντες δ' ἐκάστης ἡμέρας σὺν τοῖς ὑποζυγίοις καὶ τοῖς ἀνδραπόδοις ἐφέροντο ἀδελῶς πυρούς, κριθάς, οἶνον, ὄσπρια, μελίνας, σῦκα· ἅπαντα γὰρ ἄγαθὰ εἶχεν ἡ χώρα πλὴν ἐλαίου. 2. καὶ ὁπότε μὲν καταμένοι τὸ στρατεύμα ἀναπαύο-

VI. 1. εἶχον ἀμφὶ τὰ ἑαυτῶν, *were occupied about their own affairs.*

μενον, ἐξῆν ἐπὶ λείαν ἰέναι, καὶ ἐλάμβανον ἐξιόν-
τες· ὁπότε δὲ ἐξίλοι πᾶν τὸ στράτευμα, εἴ τις χωρὶς
ἀπελθὼν λάβοι τι, δημόσιον ἔδοξεν εἶναι. 3. ἤδη
δὲ ἦν πάντων ἀφθονία· καὶ γὰρ ἀγοραὶ πάντοθεν
ἀφικνούντο ἐκ τῶν Ἑλληνίδων πόλεων, καὶ οἱ
παραπλέοντες ἄσμενοι κατῆγον, ἀκούοντες ὡς οἰ-
κίζοιτο πόλις καὶ λιμὴν εἶη. 4. ἔπεμπον δὲ καὶ
οἱ πολέμιοι ἤδη οἱ πλησίον ὤκουν πρὸς Ξενοφῶν-
τα, ἀκούοντες ὅτι οὗτος πολίζει τὸ χωρίον, ἐρω-
τῶντες ὅ,τι δέοι ποιούντας φίλους εἶναι. ὁ δ' ἐπε-
δείκνυεν αὐτοὺς τοῖς στρατιώταις.

5. Καὶ ἐν τούτῳ Κλεάνδρος ἀφικνεῖται δύο
τριήρεις ἔχων, πλοῖον δ' οὐδέν. ἐτύγχανε δὲ τὸ
στράτευμα ἕξω ὄν ὅτε ἀφίκετο καὶ ἐπὶ λείαν τινὲς
οἰχόμενοι ἄλλοι εἰς τὸ ὄρος, καὶ εἰλήφεσαν πρό-
βατα πολλά· ὀκνοῦντες δὲ μὴ ἀφαιρεθεῖεν τῷ Δε-
ξίππῳ λέγουσιν, ὅς ἀπέδρα τὴν πεντηκόντορον
ἔχων ἐκ Τραπεζοῦντος, καὶ κελεύουσι διασώσαντα
αὐτοῖς τὰ πρόβατα τὰ μὲν αὐτὸν λαβεῖν, τὰ δὲ
σφίσις ἀποδοῦναι. 6. εὐθύς δ' ἐκείνος ἀπελαύνει
τοὺς περιστῶτας τῶν στρατιωτῶν καὶ λέγοντας
ὅτι δημόσια εἶη, καὶ τῷ Κλεάνδρῳ ἐλθὼν λέγει
ὅτι ἀρπάζειν ἐπιχειροῦσιν. ὁ δὲ κελεύει τὸν ἀρ-
πάζοντα ἄγειν πρὸς αὐτόν. 7. καὶ ὁ μὲν λαβὼν
ἦγγε τινα· περιτυχὼν δ' Ἀγασίας ἀφαιρεῖται· καὶ
γὰρ ἦν αὐτῷ ὁ ἀγόμενος λοχίτης. οἱ δ' ἄλλοι οἱ
παρόντες τῶν στρατιωτῶν ἐπιχειροῦσι βάλλειν
τὸν Δέξιππον, ἀνακαλοῦντες τὸν προδότην. ἔδει-

2. ἐλάμβανον, kept what they took.

3. κατῆγον, brought to.

σαν δὲ καὶ τῶν τριηριτῶν πολλοὶ καὶ ἔφευγον εἰς τὴν θάλατταν, καὶ Κλέανδρος δ' ἔφευγε. 8. Ξενοφῶν δὲ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι στρατηγοὶ κατεκώλυνόν τε καὶ τῷ Κλεάνδρῳ ἔλεγον ὅτι οὐδὲν εἶη πρᾶγμα, ἀλλὰ τὸ δόγμα αἴτιον εἶη τὸ τοῦ στρατεύματος ταῦτα γενέσθαι. 9. ὁ δὲ Κλέανδρος ὑπὸ τοῦ Δεξιππου τε ἀνερειζόμενος καὶ αὐτὸς ἀχθεσθεὶς ὅτι ἐφοβήθη, ἀποπλευσεῖσθαι ἔφη καὶ κηρύξειν μηδεμίαν πόλιν δέχεσθαι αὐτούς, ὡς πολεμίους. ἦρχον δὲ τότε πάντων τῶν Ἑλλήνων οἱ Λακεδαιμόνιοι. 10. ἐνταῦθα πονηρὸν τὸ πρᾶγμα ἐδόκει εἶναι τοῖς Ἑλλησι, καὶ ἐδέοντο μὴ ποιεῖν ταῦτα. ὁ δ' οὐκ ἂν ἄλλως ἔφη γενέσθαι, εἰ μὴ τις ἐκδώσει τὸν ἄρξαντα βάλλειν καὶ τὸν ἀφελόμενον. 11. ἦν δὲ ὃν ἐζήτηε Ἀγασίας διὰ τέλους φίλος τῷ Ξενοφῶντι· ἐξ οὗ καὶ διέβαλεν αὐτὸν ὁ Δέξιππος. καὶ ἐντεύθεν ἐπειδὴ ἀπορία ἦν, συνήγαγον τὸ στράτευμα οἱ ἄρχοντες· καὶ ἔνιοι μὲν αὐτῶν παρ' ὀλίγον ἐποιούντο τὸν Κλέανδρον, τῷ δὲ Ξενοφῶντι οὐκ ἐδόκει φαῦλον εἶναι τὸ πρᾶγμα, ἀλλ' ἀναστὰς ἔλεξεν.

He demonstrates to the soldiers the extreme impolicy of offending Cleander, who might cause them to be excluded from all the Hellenic cities, for the Lacedæmonians were at that time possessed of the supreme power by land and sea. He then proposes to surrender himself (for Dexippus had accused him of instigating the assault), and that any other soldiers who might be accused by Cleander should do the same. Agasias volunteers to give himself up to the Lacedæ-

11. διὰ τέλους φίλος, a constant friend.
παρ' ὀλίγον ἐποιούντο, made light of.

monian general, and begs that some of the army will accompany him. Accordingly Agasias, the generals, and the man who had been rescued, repair to Cleander. Agasias and the soldiers vindicate their conduct, and are detained for punishment. The generals, captains, and others, again proceed to the Lacedæmonians to solicit their release. Cleander, being favourably impressed by Xenophon's address on the occasion, complies with the request of the deputation.

35. Ἐκ τούτου οἱ μὲν ἐπαινοῦντες ἀπήλθον, ἔχοντες τὸ ἄνδρε· Κλέανδρος δὲ ἐθύετο ἐπὶ τῇ πορείᾳ καὶ ξυνὴν Ξενοφῶντι φιλικῶς καὶ ξενίαν ξυμβάλλοντο. ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ ἑώρα αὐτοὺς τὸ παραγγελλόμενον εὐτάκτως ποιοῦντας, καὶ μᾶλλον ἔτι ἐπεθύμει ἡγεμῶν γενέσθαι αὐτῶν. 36. ἐπεὶ μέντοι θυομένη αὐτῷ ἐπὶ τρεῖς ἡμέρας οὐκ ἐγένετο τὰ ἱερά, συγκαλέσας τοὺς στρατηγούς εἶπεν, Ἔμοι μὲν οὐκ ἐτελέσθη τὰ ἱερά ἐξάγειν· ὑμεῖς μέντοι μὴ ἀθυμεῖτε τούτου ἕνεκα· ὑμῖν γάρ, ὡς ἔοικε, δέδονται ἐκκομίσαι τοὺς ἄνδρας· ἀλλὰ πορεύεσθε, ἡμεῖς δὲ ὑμᾶς, ἐπειδὴν ἐκείσε ἤκητε, δεξόμεθα ὡς ἂν δυνώμεθα κάλλιστα.

37. Ἐκ τούτου ἔδοξε τοῖς στρατιώταις δοῦναι αὐτῷ τὰ δημόσια πρόβατα· ὁ δὲ δεξάμενος πάλιν αὐτοῖς ἀπέδωκε. καὶ οὗτος μὲν ἀπέπλει. οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται διαθέμενοι τὸν σῖτον ὃν ἦσαν συγκομισμένοι καὶ τᾶλλα ἃ εἰλήφεσαν ἐξεπορεύοντο διὰ τῶν Βιθυνῶν. 38. ἐπεὶ δὲ οὐδενὶ ἐνέτυχον πορευόμενοι τὴν ὀρθὴν ὁδόν, ὥστε ἔχοντες τι εἰς τὴν φιλίαν ἐλθεῖν, ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς τοῦμπαλιν ὑπο-

37. διαθέμενοι, having disposed of, i. e. sold.

στρέψαντας ἐλθεῖν μίαν ἡμέραν καὶ νύκτα. τοῦτο δὲ ποιήσαντες ἔλαβον πολλὰ καὶ ἀνδράποδα καὶ πρόβατα· καὶ ἀφίκοντο ἑκταῖοι εἰς Χρυσόπολιν τῆς Καλχηδονίας, καὶ ἐκεῖ ἔμειναν ἡμέρας ἑπτὰ λαφυροπωλοῦντες.

Z.

I. Ὅσα μὲν δὴ ἐν τῇ ἀναβάσει τῇ μετὰ Κύρου ἔπραξαν οἱ Ἕλληνες μέχρι τῆς μάχης, καὶ ὅσα ἐπεὶ Κύρος ἐτελεύτησεν ἐν τῇ πορείᾳ μέχρι εἰς τὸν Πόντον ἀφίκοντο, καὶ ὅσα ἐκ τοῦ Πόντου πεζῇ ἐξιόντες καὶ ἐκπλέοντες ἐποίουν μέχρι ἕξω τοῦ στόματος ἐγένοντο ἐν Χρυσοπόλει τῆς Ἀσίας, ἐν τῷ πρόσθεν λόγῳ δεδήλωται. 2. ἐκ τούτου δὲ Φαρνάβαζος φοβούμενος τὸ στράτευμα μὴ ἐπὶ τὴν αὐτοῦ χώραν στρατεύηται, πέμψας πρὸς Ἀναξίβιον τὸν ναύαρχον, ὃ δ' ἔτυχεν ἐν Βυζαντίῳ ὢν, ἐδέετο διαβιβάσαι τὸ στράτευμα ἐκ τῆς Ἀσίας, καὶ ὑπισχνεῖτο πάντα ποιήσειν αὐτῷ ὅσα δέοι. 3. καὶ Ἀναξίβιος μετεπέμψατο τοὺς στρατηγούς καὶ λοχαγούς τῶν στρατιωτῶν εἰς Βυζάντιον, καὶ ὑπισχνεῖτο, εἰ διαβαῖεν, μισθοφορίαν ἔσσεσθαι τοῖς στρατιώταις. 4. οἱ μὲν δὴ ἄλλοι ἔφασαν βουλευσάμενοι ἀπαγγέλλειν, Ξενοφῶν δὲ εἶπεν αὐτῷ ὅτι ἀπαλλάξοιτο ἤδη ἀπὸ τῆς στρατιᾶς καὶ βούλοιο

ἀποπλεῖν. ὁ δὲ Ἀναξίβιος ἐκέλευσεν αὐτὸν συνδιαβάντα ἔπειτα οὕτως ἀπαλλάττεσθαι. ἔφη οὖν ταῦτα ποιήσειν.

5. Σεύθης δὲ ὁ Θραξ πέμπει Μηδοσάδην καὶ κελεύει Ξενοφῶντα συμπροθυμείσθαι ὅπως διαβῆ τὸ στράτευμα, καὶ ἔφη αὐτῷ ταῦτα συμπροθυμηθέντι ὅτι οὐ μεταμελήσει. 6. ὁ δ' εἶπεν, Ἄλλὰ τὸ μὲν στράτευμα διαβήσεται· τούτου ἕνεκα μηδὲν τελείτω μήτε ἐμοὶ μήτε ἄλλῳ μηδενί· ἐπειδὰν δὲ διαβῆ, ἐγὼ μὲν ἀπαλλάξομαι, πρὸς δὲ τοὺς διαμένοντας καὶ ἐπικαιρίους ὄντας προσφερέσθω ὡς ἂν αὐτῷ δοκῇ ἀσφαλές.

7. Ἐκ τούτου διαβαίνουσι πάντες εἰς τὸ Βυζάντιον οἱ στρατιῶται. καὶ μισθὸν μὲν οὐκ ἐδίδου ὁ Ἀναξίβιος, ἐκήρυξε δὲ λαβόντας τὰ ὄπλα καὶ τὰ σκεύη τοὺς στρατιώτας ἐξιέναι, ὡς ἀποπέμψων τε ἅμα καὶ ἀριθμὸν ποιήσων. ἐνταῦθα οἱ στρατιῶται ἤχθοντο, ὅτι οὐκ εἶχον ἀργύριον ἐπισιτίζεσθαι εἰς τὴν πορείαν, καὶ ὀκνηρῶς συνεσκευάζοντο. 8. καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν Κλεάνδρῳ τῷ ἄρμοστῇ ξένος γεγενημένος προσελθὼν ἠσπάζετο αὐτὸν ὡς ἀποπλευσούμενος ἤδη. ὁ δὲ αὐτῷ λέγει, Μὴ ποιήσης ταῦτα· εἰ δὲ μή, ἔφη, αἰτίαν ἔξεις, ἐπεὶ καὶ νῦν τινὲς ἤδη σὲ αἰτιῶνται ὅτι οὐ ταχὺ ἐξέρπει τὸ στράτευμα. 9. ὁ δ' εἶπεν, Ἄλλ' αἴτιος μὲν ἔγωγε οὐκ εἰμὶ τούτου, οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται αὐτοὶ ἐπισιτισμοῦ δεόμενοι διὰ τοῦτο ἀθυμοῦσι πρὸς τὴν ἔξοδον. 10. Ἄλλ' ὁμως, ἔφη, ἐγὼ σοὶ συμβουλεύω ἐξελθεῖν μὲν ὡς πορευσόμενον, ἐπειδὰν δ' ἔξω γένηται τὸ στρα-

I. 8. εἰ δὲ μή. see IV. 3. 6.

τευμα, τότε ἀπαλλάττεσθαι. Ταῦτα τοίνυν, ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, ἐλθόντες πρὸς Ἀναξίβιον διαπραξόμεθα. οὕτως ἐλθόντες ἔλεγον ταῦτα. 11. ὁ δὲ ἐκέλευσεν οὕτω ποιεῖν καὶ ἐξιέναι τὴν ταχίστην συνεσκευασμένους, καὶ προσανειπεῖν, ὃς ἂν μὴ παρῆ εἰς τὴν ἐξέτασιν καὶ εἰς τὸν ἀριθμόν, ὅτι αὐτὸς αὐτὸν αἰτιάσεται. 12. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξήεσαν οἷ τε στρατηγοὶ πρῶτοι καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι. καὶ ἄρδην πάντες πλὴν ὀλίγων ἔξω ἦσαν, καὶ Ἐτεόνικος εἰστήκει παρὰ τὰς πύλας ὡς ὅποτε ἔξω γένοιτο πάντες συγκλείσω τὰς πύλας καὶ τὸν μοχλὸν ἐμβαλῶν. 13. ὁ δὲ Ἀναξίβιος συγκαλέσας τοὺς στρατηγοὺς καὶ τοὺς λοχαγοὺς ἔλεξε, Τὰ μὲν ἐπιτήδεια, ἔφη, λαμβάνετε ἐκ τῶν Θρακίων κομῶν εἰσὶ δὲ αὐτόθι πολλαὶ κριθαὶ καὶ πυροὶ καὶ τᾶλλα τὰ ἐπιτήδεια· λαβόντες δὲ πορεύεσθε εἰς Χερρόνησον, ἐκεῖ δὲ Κυνίσκος ὑμῖν μισθοδοτήσει. 14. ἐπακούσαντες δὲ τινες τῶν στρατιωτῶν ταῦτα, ἢ καὶ τῶν λοχαγῶν τις διαγγέλλει εἰς τὸ στράτευμα. καὶ οἱ μὲν στρατηγοὶ ἐπυνθάνοντο περὶ τοῦ Σεύθου πότερα πολέμιος εἴη ἢ φίλος, καὶ πότερα διὰ τοῦ ἱεροῦ ὄρους δέοι πορεύεσθαι ἢ κύκλω διὰ μέσης τῆς Θράκης. 15. ἐν ᾧ δὲ ταῦτα διελέγοντο οἱ στρατιῶται ἀναρπάσαντες τὰ ὄπλα θέουσι

11. αὐτὸς αὐτὸν αἰτιάσεται, *he himself will blame himself*, i. e. he will repent of it.

12. ἄρδην . . . ἦσαν, καὶ, *hardly were they*, when = *no sooner were they*, than. "Many of these combinations (*sc.* conjunctions) came into common use even in Attic Greek: as, *τέ . . . καὶ* or *καὶ* alone, for *ὄτε*, of things that happened *at the same time*."—*Jeff*, § 752, 2.

δρόμῳ πρὸς τὰς πύλας ὡς πάλιν εἰς τὸ τεῖχος εἰσιόντες. ὁ δὲ Ἑτεόνικος καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ ὡς εἶδον προσθέοντας τοὺς ὀπλίτας, συγκλείουσι τὰς πύλας καὶ τὸν μοχλὸν ἐμβάλλουσιν. 16. οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται ἔκοπτόν τε τὰς πύλας καὶ ἔλεγον ὅτι ἀδικώτατα πάσχοιεν ἐκβαλλόμενοι εἰς τοὺς πολέμιους· καὶ κατασχίσειν τὰς πύλας ἔφασαν, εἰ μὴ ἐκόντες ἀνοίξουσιν. 17. ἄλλοι δὲ ἔθεον ἐπὶ θάλατταν καὶ παρὰ τὴν χηλὴν τοῦ τείχους ὑπερβαίνουσιν εἰς τὴν πόλιν, ἄλλοι δὲ οἱ ἐτύγχανον ἔνδον ὄντες τῶν στρατιωτῶν ὡς ὀρώσι τὰ ἐπὶ ταῖς πύλαις πράγματα, διακόπτοντες ταῖς ἀξίταις τὰ κλεῖθρα ἀναπετανῶσι τὰς πύλας, οἱ δ' εἰσπίπτουσιν.

18. Ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ὡς εἶδε τὰ γιγνόμενα, δέσας μὴ ἐφ' ἀρπαγὴν τράποιτο τὸ στράτευμα καὶ ἀνήκεστα κακὰ γένοιτο τῇ πόλει καὶ ἑαυτῷ καὶ τοῖς στρατιώταις, ἔθει καὶ συνεισπίπτει εἰσω τῶν πυλῶν σὺν τῷ ὄχλῳ. 19. οἱ δὲ Βυζάντιοι ὡς εἶδον τὸ στράτευμα βίᾳ εἰσπίπτον, φεύγουσιν ἐκ τῆς ἀγορᾶς, οἱ μὲν εἰς τὰ πλοῖα, οἱ δὲ οἴκαδε, ὅσοι δὲ ἔνδον ἐτύγχανον ὄντες ἔξω ἔθεον, οἱ δὲ καθεῖλλον τὰς τριήρεις ὡς ἐν ταῖς τριήρεσι σώζοιντο, πάντες δὲ ᾤοντο ἀπολωλέναι ὡς ἐαλωκυίας τῆς πόλεως. 20. ὁ δὲ Ἑτεόνικος εἰς τὴν ἄκραν ἀποφεύγει. ὁ δὲ Ἀναξίβιος καταδραμῶν ἐπὶ θάλατταν ἐν ἀλιευτικῷ πλοίῳ περιέπλει εἰς τὴν ἀκρόπολιν, καὶ εὐθὺς μεταπέμπεται ἐκ Καλληδόνοφ φρουρούς· οὐ γὰρ ἱκανοὶ ἐδόκουν εἶναι οἱ ἐν τῇ ἀκροπόλει σχεῖν τοὺς ἀνδρας. 21. οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται ὡς εἶδον τὸν

Ξενοφῶντα, προσπίπτουσιν αὐτῷ πολλοὶ καὶ λέγουσι, Νῦν σοι ἔξεστιν, ὦ Ξενοφῶν, ἀνδρὶ γενέσθαι. ἔχεις πόλιν, ἔχεις τριήρεις, ἔχεις χρήματα, ἔχεις ἀνδρας τοσούτους. νῦν ἄν, εἰ βούλοιο, σύ τε ἡμᾶς ὀνήσαιοι καὶ ἡμεῖς σὲ μέγαν ποιήσαιμεν. 22. ὁ δ' ἀπεκρίνατο, Ἄλλ' εὐ τε λέγετε καὶ ποιήσω ταῦτα· εἰ δὲ τούτων ἐπιθυμεῖτε, θέσθε τὰ ὄπλα ἐν τάξει ὡς τάχιστα· βουλόμενος αὐτοὺς κατηρεμίσαι καὶ αὐτὸς τε παρηγγύα ταῦτα καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους ἐκέλευε παρεγγυᾶν [καὶ] τίθεσθαι τὰ ὄπλα. 23. οἱ δὲ αὐτοὶ ὑφ' ἑαυτῶν ταττόμενοι οἷ τε ὀπλίται ἐν ὀλίγῳ χρόνῳ εἰς ὀκτῶ ἐγένοντο καὶ οἱ πελτασταὶ ἐπιτὸ κέρασ ἐκάτερον παραδεδραμήκεσαν. 24. τὸ δὲ χωρίον οἶον κάλλιστον ἐκτάξασθαι ἐστὶ τὸ Θράκιον καλούμενον, ἔρημον οἰκιῶν καὶ πεδιόνον. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἔκειτο τὰ ὄπλα καὶ κατηρεμίσθησαν, συγκαλεῖ Ξενοφῶν τὴν στρατιάν καὶ λέγει τάδε.

Xenophon explains that an attack upon the city will involve a declaration of hostilities against the Lacedæmonians and their numerous and powerful allies—a contest which must inevitably terminate in defeat,—and recommends that delegates should be sent to Anaxibius to inform him that they had entered the town with no hostile intention, but simply to secure protection and assistance, and that they are willing to abandon it and obey the acknowledged masters of Greece.

32. Ταῦτα ἔδοξε, καὶ πέμπουσιν Ἱερώνυμόν τε Ἡλείον ἐρῶντα ταῦτα καὶ Εὐρύλοχον Ἀρκάδα

23. αὐτοὶ ὑφ' ἑαυτῶν, of their own accord.
eis ὀκτῶ. see eis I. 1. 3.

καὶ Φιλήσιον Ἀχαιόν. οἱ μὲν ταῦτα ᾤχοντο ἐροῦντες.

33. Ἐτι δὲ καθημένων τῶν στρατιωτῶν προσέρχεται Κοιρατάδης Θηβαῖος, ὃς οὐ φεύγων τὴν Ἑλλάδα περιήει ἀλλὰ στρατηγιῶν καὶ ἐπαγγελ-λόμενος εἴ τις ἢ πόλις ἢ ἔθνος στρατηγοῦ δέοιτο καὶ τότε προσελθὼν ἔλεγεν ὅτι ἕτοιμος εἴη ἡγεῖσθαι αὐτοῖς εἰς τὸ Δέλτα καλούμενον τῆς Θράκης, ἔνθα πολλὰ καὶ ἀγαθὰ λήψοιντο· ἔστε δ' ἂν μόλωσιν, εἰς ἀφθονίαν παρέξειν ἔφη καὶ σῖτα καὶ ποτά. 34. ἀκούουσι ταῦτα τοῖς στρατιώταις καὶ τὰ παρὰ Ἀναξιβίου ἅμα ἀπαγγελλόμενα· ἀπεκρίνατο γὰρ ὅτι πειθομένοις αὐτοῖς οὐ μεταμελήσει, ἀλλὰ τοῖς τε οἴκοι τέλεσι ταῦτα ἀπαγγελεῖ καὶ αὐτὸς βουλεύσοιτο περὶ αὐτῶν ὅ,τι δύναιτο ἀγαθόν· 35. ἐκ τούτου οἱ στρατιῶται τὸν τε Κοιρατάδην δέχονται στρατηγὸν καὶ ἔξω τοῦ τείχους ἀπήλθον. ὁ δὲ Κοιρατάδης συντίθεται αὐτοῖς εἰς τὴν ὑστεραίαν παρέσεσθαι ἐπὶ τὸ στράτευμα ἔχων καὶ ἱερεῖα καὶ μάντιν καὶ σῖτα καὶ ποτὰ τῇ στρατιᾷ. 36. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐξῆλθον, ὁ Ἀναξίβιος ἔκλεισε τὰς πύλας καὶ ἐκήρυξεν ὃς ἂν ἀλφῶ ἔνδον ὦν τῶν στρατιωτῶν ὅτι πεπράσεται. 37. τῇ δ' ὑστεραία ὁ Κοιρατάδης μὲν ἔχων τὰ ἱερεῖα καὶ τὸν μάντιν ἦκε, καὶ ἄλφιστα φέροντες εἶποντο αὐτῷ εἴκοσιν ἄνδρες καὶ οἶνον ἄλλοι εἴκοσι καὶ ἐλαιῶν τρεῖς καὶ σκοροδῶν εἰς ἀνὴρ ὅσον ἐδύνατο μέγιστον φορτίον καὶ ἄλλος κρομμύων. ταῦτα δὲ καταθέμενος ὡς ἐπὶ δάσμευσιν ἐθύετο.

38. Ξενοφῶν δὲ μεταπεμφόμενος Κλέανδρον

ἐκέλευεν οἱ διαπρᾶξαι ὅπως εἰς τὸ τεῖχος τε εἰσέλθοι καὶ ἀποπλεύσαι ἐκ Βυζαντίου. 39. ἔλθων δ' ὁ Κλέανδρος, Μάλα μόλις, ἔφη, διαπραξάμενος ἤκω λέγειν γὰρ Ἀναξίβιον ὅτι οὐκ ἐπιτήδειον εἶη τοὺς μὲν στρατιώτας πλησίον εἶναι τοῦ τεύχους, Ξενοφῶντα δὲ ἔνδον· τοὺς Βυζαντίους δὲ στασιάζειν καὶ πονηροὺς εἶναι πρὸς ἀλλήλους· ὅμως δὲ εἰσιέναι, ἔφη, ἐκέλευεν, εἰ μέλλοι σὺν αὐτῷ ἐκπλεῖν. 40. ὁ μὲν δὴ Ξενοφῶν ἀσπασάμενος τοὺς στρατιώτας εἶσω τοῦ τεύχους ἀπῆει σὺν Κλεάνδρῳ. ὁ δὲ Κοιρατάδης τῇ μὲν πρώτῃ ἡμέρᾳ οὐκ ἐκαλλιέρει οὐδὲ διεμέτρησεν οὐδὲν τοῖς στρατιώταις. τῇ δ' ὑστεραίᾳ τὰ μὲν ἱερεῖα εἰστήκει παρὰ τὸν βωμὸν καὶ Κοιρατάδης ἐστεφανωμένος ὡς θύσων προσελθὼν δὲ Τιμασίῳ ὁ Δαρδανεὺς καὶ Νέων ὁ Ἀσιναῖος καὶ Κλεάνωρ ὁ Ὀρχομένιος ἔλεγον Κοιρατάδῃ μὴ θύειν, ὡς οὐχ ἡγησόμενον τῇ στρατιᾷ, εἰ μὴ δώσει τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. ὁ δὲ κελεύει διαμετρεῖσθαι. 41. ἐπεὶ δὲ πολλῶν ἐνέδει αὐτῷ ὥστε ἡμέρας σῖτον ἐκάστῳ γενέσθαι τῶν στρατιωτῶν, ἀναλαβὼν τὰ ἱερεῖα ἀπῆει καὶ τὴν στρατηγίαν ἀπειπῶν.

II. Νέων δὲ ὁ Ἀσιναῖος καὶ Φρυνίσκος ὁ Ἀχαιοὺς καὶ Φιλῆσιος ὁ Ἀχαιοὺς καὶ Ξανθικλῆς ὁ Ἀχαιοὺς καὶ Τιμασίῳ ὁ Δαρδανεὺς ἐπέμενον ἐπὶ τῇ στρατιᾷ, καὶ εἰς κώμας τῶν Θρακῶν προελθόντες τὰς κατὰ Βυζάντιον ἐστρατοπεδεύοντο. 2.

39. εἰσιέναι and μέλλοι (Ξενοφῶν), ἔφη (Κλεάνδρος), ἐκέλευεν and αὐτῷ (Ἀναξίβιος).

41. Observe δεῖν = *opus esse*; ἐνδεῖν = *desse*.

καὶ οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἐστασίαζον, Κλεάνωρ μὲν καὶ Φρυνίσκος πρὸς Σεύθην βουλόμενοι ἄγειν· ἔπειθε γὰρ αὐτούς, καὶ ἔδωκε τῷ μὲν ἵππον, τῷ δὲ γυναῖκα· Νέων δὲ εἰς Χερρόνησον, οἴομενος, εἰ ὑπὸ Λακεδαιμονίοις γένοιτο, παντὸς ἂν προεστάναι τοῦ στρατεύματος· Τιμασίων δὲ προὔθυμείτο πέραν εἰς τὴν Ἀσίαν πάλιν διαβῆναι, οἴομενος ἂν οἴκαδε κατελθεῖν. καὶ οἱ στρατιῶται ταῦτα ἐβούλοντο. 3. διατριβομένου δὲ τοῦ χρόνου πολλοὶ τῶν στρατιωτῶν, οἱ μὲν τὰ ὄπλα ἀποδιδόμενοι κατὰ τοὺς χώρους ἀπέπλεον ὡς ἐδύναντο, οἱ δὲ καὶ [διδόντες τὰ ὄπλα κατὰ τοὺς χώρους] εἰς τὰς πόλεις κατεμινύοντο. 4. Ἀναξίβιος δ' ἔχαιρε ταῦτα ἀκούων διαφθειρόμενον τὸ στράτευμα· τούτων γὰρ γυγνομένων ἔτετο μάλιστα χαρίζεσθαι Φαρναβάζῳ.

5. Ἀποπλέοντι δὲ Ἀναξιβίῳ ἐκ Βυζαντίου συναντῶ Ἀρίσταρχος ἐν Κυζίκῳ διάδοχος Κλεάνδρῳ Βυζαντίου ἀρμοστής· ἐλέγετο δὲ ὅτι καὶ ναύαρχος διάδοχος Πῶλος ὅσον οὐ παρέη ἤδη εἰς Ἑλλάσποντον. 6. καὶ Ἀναξίβιος τῷ μὲν Ἀριστάρχῳ ἐπιστέλλει ὁπόσους ἂν εὔροι ἐν Βυζαντίῳ τῶν Κύρου στρατιωτῶν ὑπολελειμμένους ἀποδόσθαι. ὁ δὲ Κλεάνδρος οὐδένα ἐπεπράκει, ἀλλὰ καὶ τοὺς κάμνοντας ἐθεράπευεν οἰκτεῖρων καὶ ἀναγκάζων οἰκία δέχεσθαι· Ἀρίσταρχος δ' ἐπεὶ ἦλθε τάχιστα, οὐκ ἐλάττους τετρακοσίων ἀπέδοτο. 7. Ἀναξίβιος δὲ παραπλεύσας εἰς Πάριον πέμπει παρὰ Φαρνάβαζον κατὰ τὰ συγχείμενα. ὁ δ' ἐπεὶ ἦσθετο Ἀρίσ-

ταρχόν τε ἤκοντα εἰς Βυζάντιον ἄρμοσθην καὶ Ἀναξίβιον οὐκέτι ναυαρχοῦντα, Ἀναξιβίου μὲν ἠμέλησε, πρὸς Ἀρίσταρχον δὲ διεπράττετο τὰ αὐτὰ περὶ τοῦ Κυρείου στρατεύματος ἅπερ καὶ πρὸς Ἀναξίβιον.

8. Ἐκ τούτου ὁ Ἀναξίβιος καλέσας Ξενοφῶντα κελεύει πάσῃ τέχνῃ καὶ μηχανῇ πλεῦσαι ἐπὶ τὸ στράτευμα ὡς τάχιστα, καὶ συνέχειν τε αὐτὸ καὶ συναθορίζει τῶν διεσπαρμένων ὡς ἂν πλείστους δύνηται, καὶ παραγαγόντα εἰς τὴν Πέρινθον διαβιβάζειν εἰς τὴν Ἀσίαν ὅτι τάχιστα· καὶ δίδωσιν αὐτῷ τριακόντορον καὶ ἐπιστολὴν καὶ ἄνδρα συμπέμπει κελεύσοντα τοὺς Περινθίους ὡς τάχιστα Ξενοφῶντα προπέμψαι τοῖς ἵπποις ἐπὶ τὸ στράτευμα. 9. καὶ ὁ μὲν Ξενοφῶν διαπλεύσας ἀφικνεῖται ἐπὶ τὸ στράτευμα· οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται ἐδέξαντο ἠδέως καὶ εὐθύς εὔποντο ἄσμενοι ὡς διαβησόμενοι ἐκ τῆς Θράκης εἰς τὴν Ἀσίαν.

10. Ὁ δὲ Σεύθης ἀκούσας ἤκοντα πάλιν πέμψας πρὸς αὐτὸν [κατὰ θάλατταν] Μηδοσάδην ἐδεῖτο τὴν στρατιὰν ἄγειν πρὸς ἑαυτὸν, ὑπισχνόμενος αὐτῷ ὅ,τι ᾤετο λέγων πείσειν. ὁ δ' ἀπεκρίνατο αὐτῷ ὅτι οὐδὲν οἶόν τε εἶη τούτων γενέσθαι. 11. καὶ ὁ μὲν ταῦτα ἀκούσας ᾤχετο. οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες ἐπεὶ ἀφίκοντο εἰς Πέρινθον, Νέων μὲν ἀποσπάσας ἐστρατοπεδεύσατο χωρὶς ἔχων ὡς ὀκτακοσίους ἀνθρώπους· τὸ δ' ἄλλο στράτευμα πᾶν ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ παρὰ τὸ τεῖχος τὸ Περινθίων ἦν.

12. Μετὰ ταῦτα Ξενοφῶν μὲν ἔπραττε περὶ πλοίων, ὅπως ὅτι τάχιστα διαβαίεν. ἐν δὲ τούτῳ

ἀφικόμενος Ἀρίσταρχος ὁ ἐκ Βυζαντίου ἀρμοστής, ἔχων δύο τριήρεις, πεπεισμένος ὑπὸ Φαρναβάζου τοῖς τε ναυκλήροις ἀπέειπε μὴ διάγειν, ἐλθὼν τε ἐπὶ τὸ στράτευμα τοῖς στρατιώταις εἶπε μὴ περαιοῦσθαι εἰς τὴν Ἀσίαν. 13. ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἔλεγεν ὅτι Ἀναξίβιος ἐκέλευσε, καὶ ἐμὲ πρὸς τοῦτο ἔπεμψεν ἐνθάδε. πάλιν δ' Ἀρίσταρχος ἔλεξεν, Ἀναξίβιος μὲν τοίνυν οὐκέτι ναύαρχος, ἐγὼ δὲ τῆδε ἀρμοστής· εἰ δέ τινα ὑμῶν λήψομαι ἐν τῇ θαλάττῃ, καταδύσω. 14. ταῦτ' εἰπὼν ᾤχετο εἰς τὸ τεῖχος. τῇ δ' ὑστεραία μεταπέμπεται τοὺς στρατηγούς καὶ λοχαγούς τοῦ στρατεύματος. ἤδη δὲ ὄντων πρὸς τῷ τείχει ἐξαγγέλλει τις τῷ Ξενοφῶντι ὅτι εἰ εἴσεισι, συλληφθήσεται καὶ ἡ αὐτοῦ τι πείσεται ἢ καὶ Φαρναβάζω παραδοθήσεται. ὁ δὲ ἀκούσας ταῦτα τοὺς μὲν προπέμπεται, αὐτὸς δὲ εἶπεν ὅτι θῦσαί τι βούλοιο. 15. καὶ ἀπελθὼν ἐθύετο εἰ προεῖεν αὐτῷ οἱ θεοὶ πειρᾶσθαι πρὸς Σεύθην ἄγειν τὸ στράτευμα. ἑώρα γὰρ οὔτε διαβαίνειν ἀσφαλὲς ὄν τριήρεις ἔχοντος τοῦ κωλύσοντος, οὔτ' ἐπὶ Χερρόνησον ἐλθὼν κατακλεισθῆναι ἐβούλετο καὶ τὸ στράτευμα ἐν πολλῇ σπᾶνει πάντων γενέσθαι, ἔνθα πείθεσθαι μὲν ἀνάγκη τῷ ἐκεῖ ἀρμοστῇ, τῶν δὲ ἐπιτηδείων οὐδὲν ἐμελλεν ἔξειν τὸ στράτευμα.

16. Καὶ ὁ μὲν ἀμφὶ ταῦτ' εἶχεν· οἱ δὲ στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοὶ ἤκοντες παρὰ τοῦ Ἀριστάρχου ἀπήγγελλον ὅτι νῦν μὲν ἀπιέναι σφᾶς κελεύει, τῆς δείλης δὲ ἤκειν· ἔνθα καὶ δῆλη μᾶλλον ἐδόκει ἢ ἐπιβουλή. 17. ὁ οὖν Ξενοφῶν, ἐπεὶ ἐδόκει τὰ

ιερά καλὰ εἶναι αὐτῷ καὶ τῷ στρατεύματι ἀσφα-
 λῶς πρὸς Σεύθην ἰέναι, παραλαβὼν Πολυκράτην
 τὸν Ἀθηναῖον λοχαγὸν καὶ παρὰ τῶν στρατηγῶν
 ἐκάστου ἄνδρα, πλὴν παρὰ Νέωνος, ᾧ ἕκαστος
 ἐπίστευεν ᾧχετο τῆς νυκτὸς ἐπὶ τὸ Σεύθου στρα-
 τευμα ἐξήκοντα στάδια. 18. ἐπεὶ δ' ἐγγὺς ἦσαν
 αὐτοῦ, ἐπιτυγχάνει πυροῖς ἐρήμοις. καὶ τὸ μὲν
 πρῶτον ᾗετο μετακεχωρηκένοι ποι τὸν Σεύθην·
 ἐπεὶ δὲ θορύβου τε ᾗσθετο καὶ σημαινόντων ἄλ-
 λήλοις τῶν περὶ Σεύθην, κατέμαθεν ὅτι τούτου
 ἔνεκα τὰ πυρὰ κεκαυμένα εἶη τῷ Σεύθῃ πρὸ τῶν
 νυκτοφυλάκων, ὅπως οἱ μὲν φύλακες μὴ ὀρῶντο ἐν
 τῷ σκότει ὄντες μήτε ὀπόσοι μήτε ὅπου εἶεν, οἱ δὲ
 προσιόντες μὴ λανθάνοιεν ἀλλὰ διὰ τὸ φῶς κατα-
 φανεῖς εἶεν. 19. ἐπεὶ δὲ ᾗσθετο, προπέμπει τὸν
 ἐρμηνεῖαν ὃν ἐτύγχανεν ἔχων, καὶ εἰπεῖν κελεύει
 Σεύθῃ ὅτι Ξενοφῶν πάρεστι βουλόμενος συγγε-
 νέσθαι αὐτῷ. οἱ δὲ ᾗροντο εἰ ὁ Ἀθηναῖος ὁ ἀπὸ
 τοῦ στρατεύματος. 20. ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἔφη οὗτος εἶναι,
 ἀναπηδήσαντες ἐδίωκον καὶ ὀλίγον ὕστερον παρή-
 σαν πέλτασται ὅσον διακόσιοι, καὶ παραλαβόντες
 Ξενοφῶντα καὶ τοὺς σὺν αὐτῷ ἦγον πρὸς Σεύθην.
 21. ὁ δ' ἦν ἐν τύρσει μάλα φυλαττόμενος, καὶ ἵπ-
 ποι περὶ αὐτὴν κύκλῳ ἐγκεχαλιωμένοι· διὰ γὰρ
 τὸν φόβον τὰς μὲν ἡμέρας ἐχίλου τοὺς ἵππους,
 τὰς δὲ νύκτας ἐγκεχαλιωμένων ἐφυλάττετο. 22.
 ἐλέγετο γὰρ καὶ πρόσθεν Τήρης ὁ τούτου πρόγονος
 ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ χώρᾳ πολὺ ἔχων στρατευμα ὑπὸ τού-
 των τῶν ἀνδρῶν πολλοὺς ἀπολέσαι καὶ τὰ σκευο-

20. ἐδίωκον, they galloped off.

φόρα ἀφαιρεθῆναι· ἦσαν δ' οὗτοι Θυνοί, πάντων λεγόμενοι εἶναι μάλιστα νυκτὸς πολεμικώτατοι.

23. Ἐπεὶ δ' ἐγγυὺς ἦσαν, ἐκέλευσεν εἰσελθεῖν Ξενοφῶντα ἔχοντα δύο οὐς βούλοιτο. ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἔνδον ἦσαν, ἡσπάζοντο μὲν πρῶτον ἀλλήλους καὶ κατὰ τὸν Θράκιον νόμον κέρατα οἴνου προὔπινον· παρῆν δὲ καὶ Μηδοσάδης τῷ Σεύθῃ, ὅσπερ ἐπρέσβευεν αὐτῷ πάντοσε.

Xenophon recapitulates the negotiations with Medosades, and inquires in what way Seuthes proposes to employ the army. Seuthes briefly explains that his father Mæssades had been expelled from the country; that on his father's death he had been brought up at the court of Medocus; that, being dissatisfied with his dependent position, he had obtained troops from Medocus, and subsisted by plundering his father's former possessions; and that he hopes, with the assistance of the Greeks, to recover his kingdom. He promises a cyzicene to every soldier, two to the captains, four to the generals, with land, cattle, and a fortified town by the sea. He also engages to shelter them from the resentment of the Lacedæmonians, and to give Xenophon his daughter in marriage, and the town of Bisanthe for a residence.

III. Ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα καὶ δεξιὰς δόντες καὶ λαβόντες ἀπήλαινον· καὶ πρὸ ἡμέρας ἐγένοντο ἐπὶ τῷ στρατοπέδῳ καὶ ἀπήγγειλαν ἕκαστοι τοῖς πέμψασιν. 2. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἡμέρα ἐγένετο, ὃ μὲν Ἀρίσταρχος πάλιν ἐκάλει τοὺς στρατηγούς καὶ λοχαγούς· τοῖς δ' ἔδοξε τὴν μὲν πρὸς Ἀρίσταρχον ὁδὸν εἶσαι, τὸ δὲ στράτευμα συγκαλέσαι. καὶ συνήλθον πάντες πλὴν οἱ Νέωνος· οὗτοι δὲ ἀπεῖχον ὡς δέκα

στάδια. 3. ἐπεὶ δὲ συνήλθον, ἀναστάς Ξενοφῶν εἶπε τάδε. Ἄνδρες, διαπλεῖν μὲν ἔνθα βουλόμεθα Ἀρίσταρχος τριήρεις ἔχων κωλύει, ὥστε εἰς πλοῖα οὐκ ἀσφαλὲς ἐμβαίνειν· οὗτος δὲ αὐτὸς κελεύει εἰς Χερρόνησον βία διὰ τοῦ ἱεροῦ ὄρους πορεύεσθαι· ἦν δὲ κρατήσαντες τούτου ἐκέισε ἔλθωμεν, οὔτε πωλήσειν ἔτι ὑμᾶς φησιν ὥσπερ ἐν Βυζαντίῳ οὔτε ἐξαπατήσεσθαι ἔτι ὑμᾶς, ἀλλὰ λήψεσθαι μισθόν, οὔτε περιόψεσθαι ἔτι ὥσπερ νυκτὶ δεομένους τῶν ἐπιτηδείων. 4. οὗτος μὲν ταῦτα λέγει· Σεύθης δὲ φησιν, ἂν πρὸς ἐκείνον ἴητε, εὖ ποιήσειν ὑμᾶς. νῦν οὖν σκέψασθε πότερον ἐνθάδε μένοντες τοῦτο βουλευσέσθε ἢ εἰς τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἐπανελθόντες. 5. ἐμοὶ μὲν οὖν δοκεῖ, ἐπεὶ ἐνθάδε οὔτε ἀργύριον ἔχομεν ὥστε ἀγοράζειν, οὔτε ἄνευ ἀργυρίου ἐῷσι λαμβάνειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, ἐπανελθόντας εἰς τὰς κόμας ὅθεν οἱ ἡττους ἐῷσι λαμβάνειν, ἐκεῖ ἔχοντας τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἀκούοντας ὅ,τι τις ὑμῶν δεῖται αἰρεῖσθαι ὅ,τι ἂν ὑμῖν δοκῇ κράτιστον εἶναι. 6. καὶ ὅτε, ἔφη, ταῦτα δοκεῖ, ἀράτω τὴν χεῖρα. ἀνέτειναν ἅπαντες. Ἀπιόντες τοίνυν, ἔφη, συσκευάζεσθε, καὶ ἐπειδὴν παραγγέλλη τις, ἔπειθε τῷ ἡγουμένῳ.

7. Μετὰ ταῦτα Ξενοφῶν μὲν ἡγείτο, οἱ δ' εἴποντο. Νέων δὲ καὶ παρ' Ἀριστάρχου ἄλλοι ἔπειθον ἀποτρέπεσθαι· οἱ δ' οὐχ ὑπήκουον. ἐπεὶ δ' ὅσον τριάκοντα σταδίους προεληλύθεσαν, ἀπαντὰ Σεύθης. καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἰδὼν αὐτὸν προσελάσαι ἐκέλευσεν, ὅπως ὅτι πλείστων ἀκουόντων εἴποι αὐτῷ ἃ ἐδόκει συμφέρειν. 8. ἐπεὶ δὲ προσήλθεν, εἶπε Ξενοφῶν, Ἡμεῖς πορευόμεθα ὅπου μέλλει ἕξειν

τὸ στράτευμα τροφήν ἐκεῖ δ' ἀκούοντες καὶ σοῦ καὶ τῶν τοῦ Λακωνικοῦ αἰρησόμεθα ἢ ἂν κράτιστα δοκῆ εἶναι. ἦν οὖν ἡμῖν ἡγήσῃ ὅπου πλεῖστά ἐστιν ἐπιτήδεια, ὑπὸ σοῦ νομιούμεν ξενίζεσθαι. 9. καὶ ὁ Σεύθης ἔφη, Ἄλλὰ οἶδα κώμας πολλὰς ἀθρόας καὶ πάντα ἐχούσας τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἀπεχούσας ἡμῶν ὅσον διελθόντες ἂν ἡδέως ἀριστώγητε. Ἦγοῦ τοίνυν, ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν. 10. ἐπεὶ δ' ἀφίκοντο εἰς αὐτὰς τῆς δειλῆς, συνῆλθον οἱ στρατιῶται, καὶ εἶπε Σεύθης τοιάδε. Ἐγὼ, ὦ ἄνδρες, δέομαι ὑμῶν στρατεῦσθαι σὺν ἐμοί, καὶ ὑπισχνούμαι ὑμῖν δώσειν τοῖς στρατιώταις κυζικηνόν, λοχαγοῖς δὲ καὶ στρατηγοῖς τὰ νομιζόμενα· ἔξω δὲ τούτων τὸν ἄξιον τιμήσω. σῖτα δὲ καὶ ποτὰ ὥσπερ καὶ νῦν ἐκ τῆς χώρας λαμβάνοντες ἔχετε. ὅποσα δ' ἂν ἀλίσκῃται ἀξιώσω αὐτὸς ἔχειν, ἵνα ταῦτα διατιθέμενος ὑμῖν τὸν μισθὸν πορίζω. 11. καὶ τὰ μὲν φεύγοντα καὶ ἀποδιδράσκοντα ἡμεῖς ἱκανοὶ ἐσόμεθα διώκειν καὶ μαστεύειν. ἂν δέ τις ἀνθιστήται, σὺν ὑμῖν πειρασόμεθα χειροῦσθαι. 12. ἐπήρετο ὁ Ξενοφῶν, Πόσον δὲ ἀπὸ θαλάττης ἀξιώσεις συνέπεσθαι σοι τὸ στράτευμα; ὁ δ' ἀπεκρίνατο, Οὐδαμῆ πλεῖον ἑπτὰ ἡμερῶν, μείον δὲ πολλαχῆ.

13. Μετὰ ταῦτα ἐδίδοδο λέγειν τῷ βουλομένῳ· καὶ ἔλεγον πολλοὶ κατὰ ταῦτα, ὅτι παντὸς ἄξια λέγοι Σεύθης· χειμῶν γὰρ εἶη, καὶ οὔτε οἴκαδε

III. 8. τοῦ Λακωνικοῦ= Ἀριστάρχου.

10. τὰ νομιζόμενα, *the usual pay*, i. e. twice as much for a *λοχαγός* and four times as much for a *στρατηγός*. see VII. 6. 1.

13. *ἔδιδοδο*, *leave was given*.

ἀποπλεῖν τῷ τούτῳ βουλομένῳ δυνατὸν εἶη, διαγενέσθαι τε ἐν φιλίᾳ οὐχ οἷόν τ' εἶη, εἰ δέοι ἄνωγμένους ζῆν, ἐν δὲ τῇ πολεμίᾳ διατρίβειν καὶ τρέφεσθαι ἀσφαλέστερον μετὰ Σεύθου ἢ μόνους ὄντων ἀγαθῶν τοσούτων· εἰ δὲ μισθὸν προσλήψοιντο, εὐρημα ἐδόκει εἶναι. 14. ἐπὶ τούτοις εἶπε Ξενοφῶν, Εἴ τις ἀντιλέγει, λεγέτω· εἰ δὲ μή, ἐπιψηφίζέτω ταῦτα. ἐπεὶ δὲ οὐδεὶς ἀντέλεγεν ἐπέψηφισε, καὶ ἔδοξε ταῦτα. εὐθύς δὲ Σεύθη εἶπε ταῦτα, ὅτι συστρατεύσοιντο αὐτῷ.

15. Μετὰ τούτῳ οἱ μὲν ἄλλοι κατὰ τάξεις ἐσκήνησαν, στρατηγοὺς δὲ καὶ λοχαγοὺς ἐπὶ δεῖπνον Σεύθῃς ἐκάλεσε, πλησίον κώμῃν ἔχων. 16. ἐπεὶ δ' ἐπὶ θύραις ἦσαν ὡς ἐπὶ δεῖπνον παριόντες, ἦν τις Ἡρακλείδης Μαρωνεΐτης· οὗτος προσιὼν ἐνὶ ἐκάστω οὐστῖνας ᾤετο ἔχειν τι δοῦναι Σεύθῃ, πρῶτον μὲν πρὸς Παριανούς τινας, οἱ παρήσαν φιλίαν διαπραξόμενοι πρὸς Μήδοκον τὸν Ὀδρουσῶν βασιλέα καὶ δῶρα ἄγοντες αὐτῷ τε καὶ τῇ γυναικί, ἔλεγεν ὅτι Μήδοκος μὲν ἄνω εἶη δώδεκα ἡμερῶν ἀπὸ θαλάττης ὁδόν, Σεύθῃς δ' ἐπεὶ τὸ στράτευμα τοῦτο εἴληφεν, ἄρχων ἔσοιτο ἐπὶ θαλάττῃ. 17. γείτων οὖν ὧν ἰκανώτατος ἔσται ὑμᾶς καὶ εὐ καὶ κακῶς ποιεῖν. ἦν οὖν σωφρονῆτε, τούτῳ δώσετε ὅ,τι ἂν αἰτῆται, καὶ ἄμεινον ὑμῖν διακείσεται ἢ ἐὰν Μηδόκῳ τῷ πρόσω οἰκοῦντι δώτε. 18. τούτους μὲν οὕτως ἐπειθεν. αὐθις δὲ Τιμασιωνί τῷ Δαρδανεῖ προσελθὼν, ἐπεὶ ἤκουσεν αὐτῷ εἶναι καὶ ἐκπώματα καὶ τάπιδας βαρβαρικός, ἔλεγεν ὅτι νομίζοιτο τότε ἐπὶ δεῖπνον καλέσαιτο Σεύθῃς δωρεῖσθαι

αὐτῷ τοὺς κληθέντας. οὗτος δ' ἦν μέγας ἐνθάδε γένηται, ἰκανὸς ἔσται σε καὶ οὔκαδε καταγαγεῖν καὶ ἐνθάδε πλούσιον ποιῆσαι. τοιαῦτα προὔμνᾳτο ἐκάστῳ προσιών. 19. προσελθὼν δὲ καὶ Ξενοφῶντι ἔλεγε, Σὺ καὶ πόλεως μεγίστης εἶ, καὶ παρὰ Σεύθῃ τὸ σὸν ὄνομα μέγιστόν ἐστι, καὶ ἐν τῇδε τῇ χώρᾳ ἴσως ἀξιώσεις καὶ τείχη λαμβάνειν, ὥσπερ καὶ ἄλλοι τῶν ὑμετέρων ἔλαβον, καὶ χώραν ἄξιον οὖν σοι καὶ μεγαλοπρεπέστατα τιμῆσαι Σεύθῃν. 20. εὖνους δέ σοι ὦν παραινῶ· εὐ οἶδα γὰρ ὅτι ὄσφ ἂν μείζω τούτῳ δωρήσῃ, τοσοῦτῳ μείζω ὑπὸ τούτου ἀγαθὰ πείσῃ. ἀκούων ταῦτα Ξενοφῶν ἠπόρει· οὐ γὰρ δὴ διαβεβήκει ἔχων ἐκ Παρίου εἰ μὴ παῖδα καὶ ὅσον ἐφόδιον.

21. Ἐπεὶ δὲ εἰσῆλθον ἐπὶ τὸ δεῖπνον τῶν τε Θρακῶν οἱ κρᾶτιστοι τῶν παρόντων καὶ οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ οἱ λοχαγοὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων καὶ εἴ τις πρεσβεία παρῆν ἀπὸ πόλεως, τὸ δεῖπνον μὲν ἦν καθημένοις κύκλῳ· ἔπειτα δὲ τρίποδες εἰσηνήχθησαν πᾶσιν· οὗτοι δ' ἦσαν κρεῶν μεστοὶ νενεμημένων, καὶ ἄρτοι ζυμίται μεγάλοι προσπεπερονημένοι ἦσαν πρὸς τοῖς κρέασι. 22. μάλιστα δ' αἱ τράπεζαι κατὰ τοὺς ξένους αἰεὶ ἐτίθεντο· νόμος γὰρ ἦν. καὶ πρῶτος τοῦτο ἐποίει Σεύθῃς· ἀνελόμενος τοὺς ἑαυτῷ παρακειμένους ἄρτους διέκλα κατὰ μικρὸν καὶ διέρριπτεν οἷς αὐτῷ ἐδόκει, καὶ τὰ κρέα ὡσαύτως, ὅσον μόνον γεύσασθαι ἑαυτῷ καταλιπών. 23. καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι δὲ κατὰ ταῦτὰ ἐποίουν καθ' οὓς αἱ τράπεζαι ἔκειντο. Ἄρκας δὲ τις Ἄρυστας ὄνομα, φαγεῖν δεινός, τὸ μὲν διαρρίπτειν εἶα

χαίρειν, λαβὼν δὲ εἰς τὴν χεῖρα ὄσον τριχοῖνικον ἄρτον καὶ κρέα θέμενος ἐπὶ τὰ γόνατα ἐδέειπνε. 24. κέρατα δὲ οἴνου περιέφερον, καὶ πάντες ἐδέχοντο. ὁ δ' Ἀρύστας, ἐπεὶ παρ' αὐτὸν φέρων τὸ κέρας ὁ οἰνοχόος ἦκεν, εἶπεν ἰδὼν τὸν Ξενοφῶντα οὐκέτι δειπνοῦντα, Ἐκείνῳ, ἔφη, δός· σχολάζει γὰρ ἤδη, ἐγὼ δὲ οὐδέπω. 25. ἀκούσας Σεύθης τὴν φωνὴν ἠρώτα τὸν οἰνοχόον τί λέγει. ὁ δὲ οἰνοχόος εἶπεν· ἑλληνίζειν γὰρ ἠπίστατο. ἐνταῦθα μὲν δὴ γέλωσ ἐγένετο.

26. Ἐπειδὴ δὲ προὔχῳρει ὁ πότος, εἰσῆλθεν ἀνὴρ Θραξ ἵππον ἔχων λευκόν, καὶ λαβὼν κέρας μεστὸν εἶπε, Προπίνω σοι, ὦ Σεύθη, καὶ τὸν ἵππον τοῦτον δωροῦμαι, ἐφ' οὗ καὶ διώκων ὃν ἂν θέλῃς αἰρήσεις, καὶ ἀποχωρῶν οὐ μὴ δείσης τὸν πολέμιον. 27. ἄλλος παῖδα εἰσαγαγὼν οὕτως ἐδωρήσατο προπίνων, καὶ ἄλλος ἰμάτια τῇ γυναικί καὶ Τιμασίῳ προπίνων ἐδωρήσατο φιάλην τε ἀργυρῶν καὶ τάπιδα ἀξίαν δέκα μνῶν. 28. Γνήσιππος δὲ τις Ἀθηναῖος ἀναστὰς εἶπεν ὅτι ἀρχαῖος εἶη νόμος κάλλιστος τοὺς μὲν ἔχοντας διδόναι τῷ βασιλεῖ τιμῆς ἕνεκα, τοῖς δὲ μὴ ἔχουσι διδόναι τὸν βασιλέα, ἵνα καὶ ἐγὼ, ἔφη, ἔχω σοι δωρεῖσθαι καὶ τιμᾶν. 29. ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἠπορεῖτο ὅ,τι ποιήσοι καὶ γὰρ ἐτύγχανεν ὡς τιμώμενος ἐν τῷ πλησιαιτάτῳ δίφρῳ Σεύθῃ καθήμενος. ὁ δὲ Ἡρακλείδης ἐκέλευεν αὐτῷ τὸ κέρας ὀρέξαι τὸν οἰνοχόον. ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν, ἠδὲ γὰρ ὑποπεπωκῶς ἐτύγχανεν, ἀνέστη θαρβραλέως δεξάμενος τὸ κέρας καὶ εἶπεν· 30. Ἐγὼ δέ σοι, ὦ Σεύθη, δίδωμι ἑμαυτὸν καὶ τοὺς ἐμούς

τούτους ἑταίρους φίλους εἶναι πιστούς, καὶ οὐδένα ἄκοντα, ἀλλὰ πάντας μᾶλλον ἔτι ἐμοῦ σοι βουλομένους φίλους εἶναι. 31. καὶ νῦν πάρεισιν οὐδέν σε προσαιτοῦντες, ἀλλὰ καὶ προιέμενοι καὶ πονεῖν ὑπὲρ σοῦ καὶ προκινδυνεύειν ἐθέλοντες· μεθ' ὧν, ἂν οἱ θεοὶ θέλωσι, πολλὴν χώραν τὴν μὲν ἀπολήψῃ πατρῶν οὖσαν, τὴν δὲ κτήσῃ, πολλοὺς δὲ ἵππους, πολλοὺς δὲ ἄνδρας καὶ γυναῖκας καλὰς κτήσῃ οὓς οὐ ληΐζεσθαι δεήσει, ἀλλ' αὐτοὶ φέροντες παρέσσονται πρὸς σε δῶρα. 32. ἀναστὰς ὁ Σεύθης συνεξέπτε καὶ συγκατεσκεδάσατο μετὰ τοῦτο τὸ κέρασ. μετὰ ταῦτα εἰσήλθον κέρασί τε οἴοις σημαίνουσιν αὐλοῦντες καὶ σάλπιγξιν ὠμοβοῖναις ῥυθμούς τε καὶ οἶον μαγάδι σαλπίζοντες. 33. καὶ αὐτὸς Σεύθης ἀναστὰς ἀνέκραγέ τε πολεμικὸν καὶ ἐξήλατο ὥσπερ βέλος φυλαττόμενος μάλα ἐλαφρῶς. εἰσήεσαν δὲ καὶ γελωτοποιοί.

34. Ὡς δ' ἦν ἥλιος ἐπὶ δυσμαῖς, ἀνέστησαν οἱ Ἕλληνες καὶ εἶπον ὅτι ὥρα νυκτοφύλακας καθιστάναι καὶ σύνθημα παραδιδόναι. καὶ Σεύθην ἐκέλευον παραγγεῖλαι ὅπως εἰς τὰ Ἑλληνικὰ στρατόπεδα μηδεὶς τῶν Θρακῶν εἴσεισι νυκτός· οἱ τε γὰρ πολέμιοι Θρακῆς ἡμῖν καὶ ὑμεῖς οἱ φίλοι. 35. ὡς δ' ἐξήεσαν, συνανέστη ὁ Σεύθης οὐδὲν ἔτι μεθύοντι ἐοικώς. ἐξελθὼν δ' εἶπεν αὐτοὺς τοὺς στρατηγούς ἀποκαλέσας, Ὡ ἄνδρες, οἱ πολέμιοι ἡμῶν οὐκ ἴσασι πῶ τὴν ὑμετέραν συμμαχίαν· ἦν οὖν ἔλθωμεν ἐπ' αὐτοὺς πρὶν φυλάξασθαι ὥστε μὴ ληφθῆναι ἢ παρασκευάσασθαι ὥστε ἀμύνασθαι, μάλιστα ἂν λάβοιμεν καὶ ἀνθρώπους καὶ χρή-

ματα. 36. συνεπήνουν ταῦτα οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ ἡγείσθαι ἐκέλευον. ὁ δ' εἶπε, Παρασκευασάμενοι ἀναμένετε· ἐγὼ δὲ ὁπότεν καιρὸς ἢ ἤξω πρὸς ὑμᾶς, καὶ τοὺς πελταστὰς καὶ ὑμᾶς ἀναλαβὼν ἡγήσομαι σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς. 37. καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν εἶπε, Σκέψαι τοίνυν, εἴπερ νυκτὸς πορευσόμεθα, εἰ ὁ Ἑλληνικὸς νόμος κάλλιον ἔχει· μεθ' ἡμέραν μὲν γὰρ ἐν ταῖς πορείαις ἡγείται τοῦ στρατεύματος ὁποῖον ἂν αἰεὶ πρὸς τὴν χώραν συμφέρη, ἐάν τε ὀπλιτικὸν ἐάν τε πελταστικὸν ἐάν τε ἵππικόν· νύκτωρ δὲ νόμος τοῖς Ἑλλησιν ἡγείσθαι ἐστὶ τὸ βραδύτατον· 38. οὕτω γὰρ ἥκιστα διασπᾶται τὰ στρατεύματα καὶ ἥκιστα λανθάνουσιν ἀποδιδράσκοντες ἀλλήλους· οἱ δὲ διασπασθέντες πολλάκις καὶ περιπίπτουσιν ἀλλήλοις καὶ ἀγνοοῦντες κακῶς ποιοῦσι καὶ πάσχουσιν. 39. εἶπεν οὖν Σεύθης, Ὀρθῶς τε λέγετε καὶ ἐγὼ τῷ νόμῳ τῷ ὑμετέρῳ πείσομαι. καὶ ὑμῖν μὲν ἡγεμόνας δώσω τῶν πρεσβυτάτων τοὺς ἐμπειροτάτους τῆς χώρας, αὐτὸς δ' ἐφέψομαι τελευταῖος καὶ τοὺς ἵππους ἔχων· ταχὺ γὰρ πρῶτος ἂν δέη παρέσομαι. σύνθημα δ' εἶπον Ἀθηναίαν κατὰ τὴν συγγένειαν. ταῦτ' εἰπόντες ἀνεπαύοντο.

40. Ἡνίκα δ' ἦν ἀμφὶ μέσας νύκτας, παρῆν Σεύθης ἔχων τοὺς ἵππείας τεθωρακισμένους καὶ τοὺς πελταστὰς σὺν τοῖς ὄπλοις. καὶ ἐπεὶ παρέδωκε τοὺς ἡγεμόνας, οἱ μὲν ὀπλῖται ἡγούντο, οἱ δὲ

39. Ἀθηναίαν κατὰ τὴν συγγένειαν, *Athene on account of their relationship*. In VII. 2. 31, Σεύθης claims *relationship* with the Athenians.

πελτασταὶ εἶποντο, οἱ δ' ἰππεῖς ὠπισθοφυλάκουν.
 41. ἐπεὶ δ' ἡμέρα ἦν, ὁ Σεύθης παρήλαυεν εἰς τὸ
 πρόσθεν καὶ ἐπήνεσε τὸν Ἑλληνικὸν νόμον· πολ-
 λάκις γὰρ ἔφη νύκτωρ αὐτὸς καὶ σὺν ὀλίγοις πο-
 ρευόμενος ἀποσπασθῆναι σὺν τοῖς ἵπποις ἀπὸ τῶν
 πεζῶν· νῦν δ' ὥσπερ δεῖ ἀθρόοι πάντες ἅμα τῇ
 ἡμέρᾳ φαινόμεθα. ἀλλὰ ὑμεῖς μὲν περιμένετε
 αὐτοῦ καὶ ἀναπαύεσθε, ἐγὼ δὲ σκεψάμενός τι ἦξω.
 42. ταῦτ' εἰπὼν ἤλαυε δι' ὄρους ὁδὸν τινα λαβῶν.
 ἐπεὶ δ' ἀφίκετο εἰς χιόνα πολλήν, ἐσκέψατο εἰ
 εἶη ἴχνη ἀνθρώπων ἢ πρόσω ἡγούμενα ἢ ἐναντία.
 ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀτριβῆ ἑώρα τὴν ὁδόν, ἦκε ταχὺ πάλιν καὶ
 ἔλεγεν· 43. Ἄνδρες, καλῶς ἔσται, ἦν θεὸς θέλη-
 τοὺς γὰρ ἀνθρώπους λήσομεν ἐπιπεσόντες. ἀλλ'
 ἐγὼ μὲν ἡγήσομαι τοῖς ἵπποις, ὅπως, ἂν τινα ἴδω-
 μεν, μὴ διαφυγῶν σημήνη τοῖς πολεμίοις· ὑμεῖς δ'
 ἔπεσθε· κὰν λειφθῆτε, τῷ στίβῳ τῶν ἵππων ἔπεσ-
 θε. ὑπερβάντες δὲ τὰ ὄρη ἦξομεν εἰς κώμας πολ-
 λάς τε καὶ εὐδαίμονας.

44. Ἦνίκα δ' ἦν μέσον ἡμέρας, ἦδη τε ἦν ἐπὶ
 τοῖς ἄκροις καὶ κατιδὼν τὰς κώμας ἦκεν ἐλαύνων
 πρὸς τοὺς ὀπλίτας καὶ ἔλεγεν· Ἀφήσω ἤδη κατα-
 θεῖν τοὺς μὲν ἰππέας εἰς τὸ πεδίον, τοὺς δὲ πελ-
 ταστὰς ἐπὶ τὰς κώμας. ἀλλ' ἔπεσθε ὡς ἂν δύνησ-
 θε τάχιστα, ὅπως, ἐὰν τις ὑφιστῆται, ἀλέξησθε.
 45. ἀκούσας ταῦτα ὁ Ξενοφῶν κατέβη ἀπὸ τοῦ
 ἵππου. καὶ ὃς ἤρετο, Τί καταβαίνεις ἐπεὶ σπεύ-
 δειν δεῖ; Οἶδα, ἔφη, ὅτι οὐκ ἐμοῦ μόνου δέη· οἱ δ'
 ὀπλίται θάπτον δραμοῦνται καὶ ἦδιον, ἐὰν καὶ ἐγὼ

45. δέη is here 2d person sing.

ματα. 36. συνεπήγουν ταῦτα οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ ἡγείσθαι ἐκέλευον. ὁ δ' εἶπε, Παρασκευασάμενοι ἀναμένετε· ἐγὼ δὲ ὅποταν καιρὸς ἦ ἤξω πρὸς ὑμᾶς, καὶ τοὺς πελταστὰς καὶ ὑμᾶς ἀναλαβὼν ἡγήσομαι σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς. 37. καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν εἶπε, Σκέψαι τοίνυν, εἴπερ νυκτὸς πορευσόμεθα, εἰ ὁ Ἑλληνικὸς νόμος κάλλιον ἔχει· μεθ' ἡμέραν μὲν γὰρ ἐν ταῖς πορείαις ἡγείται τοῦ στρατεύματος ὁποῖον ἂν αἰεὶ πρὸς τὴν χώραν συμφέρη, ἐάν τε ὀπλιτικὸν ἐάν τε πελταστικὸν ἐάν τε ἵππικόν· νύκτωρ δὲ νόμος τοῖς Ἑλλήσιν ἡγείσθαι ἐστὶ τὸ βραδύτατον· 38. οὕτω γὰρ ἥκιστα διασπᾶται τὰ στρατεύματα καὶ ἥκιστα λανθάνουσιν ἀποδιδράσκοντες ἀλλήλους· οἱ δὲ διασπασθέντες πολλάκις καὶ περιπίπτουσιν ἀλλήλοις καὶ ἀγνοοῦντες κακῶς ποιοῦσι καὶ πάσχουσιν. 39. εἶπεν οὖν Σεύθης, Ὅρθῶς τε λέγετε καὶ ἐγὼ τῷ νόμῳ τῷ ὑμετέρῳ πείσομαι. καὶ ὑμῖν μὲν ἡγεμόνας δώσω τῶν πρεσβυτάτων τοὺς ἐμπειροτάτους τῆς χώρας, αὐτὸς δ' ἐφέψομαι τελευταῖος καὶ τοὺς ἵππους ἔχων· ταχὺ γὰρ πρῶτος ἂν δέη παρέσομαι. σύνθημα δ' εἶπον Ἀθηναίαν κατὰ τὴν συγγένειαν. ταῦτ' εἰπόντες ἀνεπαύοντο.

40. Ἦνίκα δ' ἦν ἀμφὶ μέσας νύκτας, παρῆν Σεύθης ἔχων τοὺς ἵππείας τεθωρακισμένους καὶ τοὺς πελταστὰς σὺν τοῖς ὄπλοις. καὶ ἐπεὶ παρέδωκε τοὺς ἡγεμόνας, οἱ μὲν ὀπλῖται ἡγούντο, οἱ δὲ

39. Ἀθηναίαν κατὰ τὴν συγγένειαν, *Athene on account of their relationship*. In VII. 2. 31, Σεύθης claims *relationship* with the Athenians.

πελτασταὶ εἶποντο, οἱ δ' ἵππεῖς ὠπισθοφυλάκουν.
 41. ἐπεὶ δ' ἡμέρα ἦν, ὁ Σεύθης παρήλαυεν εἰς τὸ
 πρόσθεν καὶ ἐπήνεσε τὸν Ἑλληνικὸν νόμον· πολ-
 λάκις γὰρ ἔφη νύκτωρ αὐτὸς καὶ σὺν ὀλίγοις πο-
 ρευόμενος ἀποσπασθῆναι σὺν τοῖς ἵπποις ἀπὸ τῶν
 πεζῶν· νῦν δ' ὥσπερ δεῖ ἀθρόοι πάντες ἅμα τῇ
 ἡμέρᾳ φαινόμεθα. ἀλλὰ ὑμεῖς μὲν περιμένετε
 αὐτοῦ καὶ ἀναπαύεσθε, ἐγὼ δὲ σκεψάμενός τι ἦξω.
 42. ταῦτ' εἰπὼν ἤλαυε δι' ὄρους ὁδὸν τινα λαβῶν.
 ἐπεὶ δ' ἀφίκετο εἰς χιόνα πολλήν, ἐσκέψατο εἰ
 εἶη ἴχνη ἀνθρώπων ἢ πρόσω ἡγούμενα ἢ ἐναντία.
 ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀτριβῆ ἑώρα τὴν ὁδόν, ἦκε ταχὺ πάλιν καὶ
 ἔλεγεν· 43. Ἄνδρες, καλῶς ἔσται, ἦν θεὸς θέλη-
 τούς γὰρ ἀνθρώπους λήσομεν ἐπιπεσόντες. ἀλλ'
 ἐγὼ μὲν ἡγήσομαι τοῖς ἵπποις, ὅπως, ἂν τινα ἴδω-
 μεν, μὴ διαφυγῶν σημήνη τοῖς πολεμίοις· ὑμεῖς δ'
 ἔπεσθε· κὰν λειφθῆτε, τῷ στίβῳ τῶν ἵππων ἔπεσ-
 θε. ὑπερβάντες δὲ τὰ ὄρη ἦξομεν εἰς κώμας πολ-
 λάς τε καὶ εὐδαίμονας.

44. Ἦνίκα δ' ἦν μέσον ἡμέρας, ἦδη τε ἦν ἐπὶ
 τοῖς ἄκροις καὶ κατιδῶν τὰς κώμας ἦκεν ἐλαύνων
 πρὸς τοὺς ὀπλίτας καὶ ἔλεγεν· Ἀφήσω ἦδη κατα-
 θεῖν τοὺς μὲν ἵππεάς εἰς τὸ πεδίον, τοὺς δὲ πελ-
 ταστὰς ἐπὶ τὰς κώμας. ἀλλ' ἔπεσθε ὡς ἂν δύνησ-
 θε τάχιστα, ὅπως, εἰάν τις ὑφιστῆται, ἀλέξησθε.
 45. ἀκούσας ταῦτα ὁ Ξενοφὼν κατέβη ἀπὸ τοῦ
 ἵππου. καὶ ὃς ἤρετο, Τί καταβαίνεις ἐπεὶ σπεύ-
 δεῖν δεῖ; Οἶδα, ἔφη, ὅτι οὐκ ἐμοῦ μόνου δέπ' οἱ δ'
 ὀπλίται θάττον δραμοῦνται καὶ ἦδιον, εἰάν καὶ ἐγὼ

45. δέπ' is here 2d person sing.

πεζὸς ἠγῶμαι. 46. μετὰ ταῦτα ὄχητο καὶ Τιμασίων μετ' αὐτοῦ ἔχων ἰππέας ὡς τετταράκοντα τῶν Ἑλλήνων. Ξενοφῶν δὲ παρηγγύησε τοὺς εἰς τριάκοντα ἔτη παριέναι ἀπὸ τῶν λόχων εὐζώνους. καὶ αὐτὸς μὲν ἐτρόχαζε τούτους ἔχων, Κλεάνωρ δ' ἠγεῖτο τῶν ἄλλων Ἑλλήνων. 47. ἐπεὶ δ' ἐν ταῖς κώμαις ἦσαν, Σεύθης ἔχων ὅσον τριάκοντα ἰππέας προσελάσας εἶπε, Τάδε δὴ, ὦ Ξενοφῶν, ἂ σὺ ἐλεγες· ἔχονται οἱ ἄνθρωποι· ἀλλὰ γὰρ ἔρημοι οἱ ἰππεῖς οἴχονται μοι ἄλλος ἄλλη διώκων καὶ δέδοικα μὴ συστάντες ἄθροοι που κακόν τι ἐργάσωνται οἱ πολέμοι, δεῖ δὲ καὶ ἐν ταῖς κώμαις καταμένειν τινὰς ἡμῶν μεσταὶ γὰρ εἰσὶν ἀνθρώπων. 48. Ἄλλ' ἐγὼ μὲν, ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, σὺν οἷς ἔχω τὰ ἄκρα καταλήψομαι· σὺ δὲ Κλεάνωρα κέλευε διὰ τοῦ πεδίου παρατεῖναι τὴν φάλαγγα παρὰ τὰς κώμας. ἐπεὶ δὲ ταῦτα ἐποίησαν, συνηλίσθησαν ἀνδράποδα μὲν ὡς χίλια, βόες δὲ δισχιλιοὶ, καὶ ἄλλα πρόβατα μύρια. τότε μὲν δὴ αὐτοῦ ἠύλισθησαν.

IV. Τῇ δ' ὑστεραίᾳ κατακαύσας ὁ Σεύθης τὰς κώμας παντέλως καὶ οἰκίαν οὐδεμίαν λιπῶν, ὅπως φόβον ἐνθείη καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις οἶα πείσονται, ἂν μὴ πείθωνται, ἀπῆει πάλιν. 2. καὶ τὴν μὲν λείαν ἀπέπεμψε διατίθεσθαι Ἡρακλείδην εἰς Πέρινθον, ὅπως ἂν μισθὸς γένηται τοῖς στρατιώταις· αὐτὸς δὲ καὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐστρατοπεδεύοντο ἀνὰ τὸ Θυνῶν πεδῖον. οἱ δ' ἐκλιπόντες ἔφευγον εἰς τὰ ὄρη. 3. ἦν δὲ χιῶν πολλὴ καὶ ψύχος οὕτως ὥστε τὸ ὕδωρ ὁ ἐφέροντο ἐπὶ δεῖπνον ἐπήγγυτο, καὶ ὁ οἶνος ἐν

τοῖς ἀγγείοις, καὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων πολλῶν καὶ ῥίνες ἀπεκαίοντο καὶ ὤτα. 4. καὶ τότε δῆλον ἐγένετο οὐ ἔνεκα οἱ Θρᾶκες τὰς ἀλωπεκίδας ἐπὶ ταῖς κεφαλαῖς φοροῦσι καὶ τοῖς ὤσι, καὶ χιτῶνας οὐ μόνον περὶ τοῖς στέρνοις ἀλλὰ καὶ περὶ τοῖς μηροῖς, καὶ ζειρὰς μέχρι τῶν ποδῶν ἐπὶ τῶν ἵππων ἔχουσιν, ἀλλ' οὐ χλαμύδας. 5. ἀφίεις δὲ τῶν αἰχμαλώτων ὁ Σεύθης εἰς τὰ ὄρη ἔλεγεν ὅτι εἰ μὴ καταβήσονται καὶ πείσονται, ὅτι κατακαύσει καὶ τούτων τὰς κόμας καὶ τὸν σίτον, καὶ ἀπολοῦνται τῷ λιμῷ. ἐκ τούτου κατέβαινον καὶ γυναῖκες καὶ παῖδες καὶ οἱ πρεσβύτεροι· οἱ δὲ νεώτεροι ἐν ταῖς ὑπὸ τὸ ὄρος κόμαις ἠύλιζοντο. 6. καὶ ὁ Σεύθης καταμαθὼν ἐκέλευσε τὸν Ξενοφῶντα τῶν ὀπλιτῶν τοὺς νεωτάτους λαβόντα συνεπισπέσθαι. καὶ ἀναστάντες τῆς νυκτὸς ἅμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ παρήσαν εἰς τὰς κόμας. καὶ οἱ μὲν πλείστοι ἐξέφυγον· πλησίον γὰρ ἦν τὸ ὄρος· ὅσους δὲ ἔλαβε κατηκόντισεν ἀφειδῶς Σεύθης.

11. ὁ δὲ Σεύθης γελῶν ταῦτα μὲν εἶα· ἔδοξε δὲ αὐτῷ αὐτοῦ αὐλισθῆναι, ἵνα μὴ ἐκ τούτων τῶν κωμῶν οἱ ἐπὶ τοῦ ὄρους τρέφοντο. καὶ αὐτὸς μὲν ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ ὑποκαταβὰς ἐσκήνου, ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἔχων τοὺς ἐπιλέκτους ἐν τῇ ὑπὸ τὸ ὄρος ἀνωτάτῳ κόμῃ, καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι Ἕλληνες ἐν τοῖς ὄρεινοῖς καλουμένοις Θραξὶ πλησίον κατεσκήνησαν.

12. Ἐκ τούτου ἡμέραι οὐ πολλαὶ διέτριβοντο, καὶ οἱ ἐκ τοῦ ὄρους Θρᾶκες καταβαίνοντες πρὸς

IV. 5. τῶν αἰχμαλώτων, the partitive genitive.

6. συνεπισπέσθαι. see συνεφέπομαι.

τὸν Σεύθην περὶ σπονδῶν καὶ ὁμήρων διεπράττοντο. καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἐλθὼν ἔλεγε τῷ Σεύθῃ ὅτι ἐν πονηροῖς τόποις σκηπῶεν καὶ πλησίον εἶεν οἱ πολέμοιοι· ἡδίων τ' ἂν ἕξω αὐλίζεσθαι ἔφη ἐν ἐχυροῖς χωρίοις μᾶλλον ἢ ἐν τοῖς στενοῖς ὥστε ἀπολέσθαι. 13. ὁ δὲ θαρρῆϊν ἐκέλευε καὶ ἔδειξεν ὁμήρους παρόντας αὐτῷ. ἐδέοντο δὲ καὶ τοῦ Ξενοφῶντος καταβαίνοντές τινες τῶν ἐκ τοῦ ὄρους συμπρᾶξαι σφισι τὰς σπονδάς. ὁ δ' ὠμολόγει καὶ θαρρῆϊν ἐκέλευε καὶ ἠγγῆατο μηδὲν αὐτοὺς κακὸν πείσεσθαι πειθομένους Σεύθῃ. οἱ δ' ἄρα ταῦτ' ἔλεγον κατασκοπῆς ἕνεκα.

14. Ταῦτα μὲν τῆς ἡμέρας ἐγένετο· εἰς δὲ τὴν ἐπιούσαν νύκτα ἐπιτίθενται ἐλθόντες ἐκ τοῦ ὄρους οἱ Θυνοί. καὶ ἡγεμῶν μὲν ἦν ὁ δεσπότης ἐκάστης τῆς οἰκίας· χαλεπὸν γὰρ ἦν ἄλλως τὰς οἰκίας σκότους ὄντος ἀνευρίσκειν ἐν ταῖς κώμαις· καὶ γὰρ αἱ οἰκίαι κύκλῳ περιεσταύρωντο μεγάλοις σταυροῖς τῶν προβάτων ἕνεκα. 15. ἐπεὶ δ' ἐγένοντο κατὰ τὰς θύρας ἐκάστου τοῦ οἰκήματος, οἱ μὲν εἰσηκόντιζον, οἱ δὲ τοῖς σκυτάλοις ἔβαλλον, ἃ ἔχειν ἔφασαν ὡς ἀποκόψοντες τῶν δοράτων τὰς λόγχας, οἱ δ' ἐνεπίμπρασαν, καὶ Ξενοφῶντα ὀνομαστί καλοῦντες ἐξίοντα ἐκέλευον ἀποθνήσκειν, ἢ αὐτοῦ ἔφασαν κατακαυθήσεσθαι αὐτόν. 16. καὶ ἤδη τε διὰ τοῦ ὀρόφου ἐφαίνετο πῦρ, καὶ ἐντεθωρακισμένοι οἱ περὶ Ξενοφῶντα ἔνδον ἦσαν ἀσπίδας καὶ μαχαίρας καὶ κράνη ἔχοντες, καὶ Σιλανὸς Μακέστιος ἐτῶν ἤδη ὡς ὀκτωκαίδεκα ὧν σημαίνει τῇ σάλπιγγι· καὶ εὐθύς ἐκπηδῶσιν ἐσπασμένοι τὰ ξίφη καὶ

οἱ ἐκ τῶν ἄλλων σκηνωμάτων. 17. οἱ δὲ Θρᾶκες φεύγουσιν, ὥσπερ δὴ τρόπος ἦν αὐτοῖς, ὅπισθεν περιβαλλόμενοι τὰς πέλλτας· καὶ αὐτῶν ὑπεραλλομένων τοὺς σταυροὺς ἐλήφθησάν τινες κρεμασθέντες ἐνεχομένων τῶν πελτῶν τοῖς σταυροῖς. οἱ δὲ καὶ ἀπέθανον διαμαρτόντες τῶν ἐξόδων· οἱ δὲ Ἑλληγες ἐδίωκον ἔξω τῆς κώμης. 18. τῶν δὲ Θυνῶν ὑποστραφέντες τινὲς ἐν τῷ σκότει τοὺς παρατρέχοντας παρ' οἰκίαν καιομένην ἠκόντιζον εἰς τὸ φῶς ἐκ τοῦ σκότους· καὶ ἔτρωσαν Ἰερώνυμόν τε καὶ Εὐδοέα λοχαγὸν καὶ Θεογένην Λοκρὸν λοχαγόν· ἀπέθανε δὲ οὐδεὶς· κατεκαύθη μέντοι καὶ ἐσθῆς τινων καὶ σκεύη. 19. Σεύθης δὲ ἦκε βοηθήσων σὺν ἑπτὰ ἰππεῦσι τοῖς πρώτοις, καὶ τὸν σαλπυγκτὴν ἔχων τὸν Θράκιον. καὶ ἐπέειπερ ἦσθετο, ὅσον περ χρόνον ἐβοήθει, τισοῦτον καὶ τὸ κέρας ἐφθέγγετο αὐτῷ· ὥστε καὶ τοῦτο φόβον συμπαρέσχε τοῖς πολεμίοις. ἐπεὶ δ' ἦλθεν, ἐδεξιούτό τε καὶ ἔλεγεν ὅτι οἴοιτο τεθνεώτας πολλοὺς εὐρήσειν.

20. Ἐκ τούτου ὁ Ξενοφῶν δεῖται τοὺς ὁμήρους τε αὐτῷ παραδοῦναι καὶ ἐπὶ τὸ ὄρος εἰ βούλεται συστρατεύεσθαι· εἰ δὲ μὴ, αὐτὸν ἐᾶσαι. 21. τῇ οὖν ὑστεραίᾳ παραδίδωσιν ὁ Σεύθης τοὺς ὁμήρους, πρεσβυτέρους ἄνδρας ἤδη, τοὺς κρατίστους, ὡς ἔφασαν, τῶν ὄρεινῶν, καὶ αὐτὸς ἔρχεται σὺν τῇ δυνάμει. ἤδη δὲ εἶχε καὶ τριπλασίαν δύναμιν ὁ Σεύθης· ἐκ γὰρ τῶν Ὀδρυσῶν ἀκούοντες ἂ πράττοι ὁ Σεύθης πολλοὶ κατέβαινον συστρατευσόμενοι. 22. οἱ δὲ Θυνοὶ ἐπεὶ εἶδον ἀπὸ τοῦ ὄρους πολλοὺς μὲν ὀπλίτας, πολλοὺς δὲ πελταστάς,

πολλοὺς δὲ ἰππεῖς, καταβάντες ἰκέτεον σπείσασθαι, καὶ πάντα ὁμολογοῦν ποιήσῃν καὶ τὰ πιστὰ λαμβάνειν ἐκέλευον. 23. ὁ δὲ Σεύθης καλέσας τὸν Ξενοφῶντα ἐπεδείκνυεν ἃ λέγοιεν, καὶ οὐκ ἔφη σπείσασθαι, εἰ Ξενοφῶν βούλοιο τιμωρήσασθαι αὐτοὺς τῆς ἐπιθέσεως. 24. ὁ δ' εἶπεν, Ἄλλ' ἔγωγε ἰκανὴν νομίζω καὶ νῦν δίκην ἔχειν, εἰ οὗτοι δούλοι ἔσονται ἀντ' ἐλευθέρων. συμβουλεύειν μέντοι ἔφη αὐτῷ τὸ λοιπὸν ὁμήρους λαμβάνειν τοὺς δυνατωτάτους κακόν τι ποιεῖν, τοὺς δὲ γέροντας οἴκοι ἔαν. οἱ μὲν οὖν ταύτη πάντες δὴ προσωμολογοῦν.

They then pass over into the country of the Thracians who dwell beyond Byzantium, the territory of Teres the Odrysian, and there meet Heraclides with the proceeds of the sale of the plunder. The generals and captains (with the exception of Xenophon, who declined the offer) receive presents of cattle, and the soldiers obtain pay for twenty days only, although the month had expired. Heraclides stated that he could raise no more money from the plunder, and being reproached by Xenophon for want of zeal in the service of Seuthes, succeeds by misrepresentation in producing a coolness between Seuthes and that general. He endeavours to persuade the other generals to abandon Xenophon, and remain in the service of Seuthes. They unanimously refuse; the malicious intentions of Heraclides are frustrated; and Xenophon, with the rest of the officers, has an interview with Seuthes.

12. Καὶ ἐπεὶ πάντες ἐπέισθησαν, συνεστρατεύοντο καὶ ἀφικνοῦνται ἐν δεξιᾷ ἔχοντες τὸν Πόντον

23. οὐκ ἔφη σπείσασθαι. Verbs signifying *promise, hope, &c.* do not necessarily require the *future infinitive*, provided the idea of *futurity* can be gathered from the context.

διὰ τῶν Μελινοφάγων καλουμένων Θρακῶν εἰς τὸν Σαλμυδησσόν· ἔνθα τῶν εἰς τὸν Πόντον πλεουσῶν νεῶν πολλαὶ ὀκέλλουσι καὶ ἐκπίπτουσι· τέναγος γάρ ἐστιν ἐπὶ πάμπολου τῆς θαλάττης. 13. καὶ οἱ Θραῖκες οἱ κατὰ ταῦτα οἰκοῦντες στήλας ὀρίσάμενοι τὰ καθ' αὐτοὺς ἐκπίπτοντα ἕκαστοι ληίζονται· τέως δὲ ἔλεγον πρὶν ὀρίσασθαι ἀρπάζοντας πολλοὺς ὑπ' ἀλλήλων ἀποθνήσκειν. 14. ἐνταῦθα εὐρίσκονται πολλαὶ μὲν κλίνας, πολλὰ δὲ κιβώτια, πολλαὶ δὲ βίβλοι γεγραμμέναι, καὶ τᾶλλα πολλὰ ὅσα ἐν ξυλίνοις τεύχεσι ναύκληροι ἄγουσιν. ἐντεῦθεν ταῦτα καταστρεψάμενοι ἀπήεσαν πάλιν. 15. ἔνθα δὴ Σεύθης εἶχε στρατεύματα ἤδη πλεόν τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ· ἕκ τε γὰρ Ὀδρυσῶν πολὺ ἔτι πλείους καταβεβήκεσαν καὶ οἱ αἰεὶ πειθόμενοι συνεστρατεύοντο. κατηυλίσθησαν δ' ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ ὑπὲρ Σηλυβρίας ὅσον τριάκοντα σταδίους ἀπέχοντες τῆς θαλάττης. 16. καὶ μισθὸς μὲν οὐδεὶς πω ἐφαίνετο· πρὸς δὲ τὸν Ξενοφῶντα οἷ τε στρατιῶται παγχαλέπως εἶχον, ὃ τε Σεύθης οὐκέτι οἰκείως διέκειτο, ἀλλ' ὅποτε συγγενέσθαι αὐτῷ βουλόμενος ἔλθοι, πολλαὶ ἤδη ἀσχολίαι ἐφαίνοντο.

VI. Ἐν τούτῳ τῷ χρόνῳ σχεδὸν ἤδη δύο μηνῶν ὄντων ἀφικνοῦνται Χαρμῖνός τε ὁ Λάκων καὶ Πολύνικος παρὰ Θίβρωνος, καὶ λέγουσιν ὅτι Λακεδαιμονίοις δοκεῖ στρατεῦσθαι ἐπὶ Τισσαφέρην,

VI. 1. ἐπὶ Τισσαφέρην. In the Hellenics of Xenophon (III. 1.) we find that when Tissaphernes, in return for his great services to the king in the war against his brother, was sent down as satrap both of his former provinces and of those which Cyrus

καὶ Θίβρων ἐκπέπλευκεν ὡς πολεμήσων, καὶ δεῖται ταύτης τῆς στρατιᾶς, καὶ λέγει ὅτι δαρεϊκὸς ἐκάστῳ ἔσται μισθὸς τοῦ μηνός, καὶ τοῖς λοχαγοῖς διμοιρία, τοῖς δὲ στρατηγοῖς τετραμοιρία. 2. ἐπεὶ δ' ἦλθον οἱ Λακεδαιμόνιοι, εὐθύς ὁ Ἡρακλείδης πυθόμενος ὅτι ἐπὶ τὸ στράτευμα ἤκουσι λέγει τῷ Σεύθῃ ὅτι κάλλιστον γεγένηται· οἱ μὲν γὰρ Λακεδαιμόνιοι δέονται τοῦ στρατεύματος, σὺ δὲ οὐκέτι δέῃ ἀποδιδούς δὲ τὸ στράτευμα χαριεῖ αὐτοῖς, σὲ δὲ οὐκέτι ἀπαιτήσουσι τὸν μισθόν, ἀλλ' ἀπαλλάξονται ἐκ τῆς χώρας. 3. ἀκούσας ταῦτα ὁ Σεύθης κελεύει παράγειν· καὶ ἐπεὶ εἶπον ὅτι ἐπὶ τὸ στράτευμα ἤκουσιν, ἔλεγεν ὅτι τὸ στράτευμα ἀποδίδωσι, φίλος τε καὶ σύμμαχος εἶναι βούλεται, καλεῖ τε αὐτοὺς ἐπὶ ξενία· καὶ ἐξένιζε μεγαλοπρεπῶς. Ξενοφῶντα δὲ οὐκ ἐκάλει, οὐδὲ τῶν ἄλλων στρατηγῶν οὐδένα. 4. ἐρωτῶντων δὲ τῶν Λακεδαιμονίων τίς ἀνὴρ εἶη Ξενοφῶν, ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι τὰ μὲν ἄλλα εἶη οὐ κακός, φιλοστρατιώτης δὲ καὶ διὰ τοῦτο χεῖρόν ἐστιν αὐτῷ. καὶ οἱ εἶπον, Ἄλλῃ δημαγωγεῖ ὁ ἀνὴρ τοὺς ἄνδρας; καὶ ὁ Ἡρακλείδης, Πάνυ μὲν οὖν, ἔφη. 5. Ἄρ' οὖν, ἔφασαν, μὴ καὶ ἡμῖν ἐναντιώσεται περὶ τῆς ἀπαγωγῆς; Ἄλλ' ἦν ὑμεῖς, ἔφη ὁ Ἡρακλείδης, συλλέξαντες αὐτοὺς

had held, he straightway claimed authority over the whole of the Ionian cities. They, however, wishing to be free, and at the same time fearing Tissaphernes, because during Cyrus's life they had been opposed to him, refused obedience, and sent to Sparta to claim her protection. Thibron was accordingly sent out to their aid with an army of 5000 men.

2. ἐπὶ τὸ στράτευμα. cf. ἐπὶ in VI. 2. 2.

ὑποσχῆσθε τὸν μισθόν, ὀλίγον ἐκείνῳ προσσχόντες ἀποδραμοῦνται σὺν ὑμῖν. 6. Πῶς οὖν ἂν, ἔφασαν, ἡμῖν συλλεγεῖεν; Αὔριον ὑμᾶς, ἔφη ὁ Ἡρακλείδης, πρῶτ' ἄξομεν πρὸς αὐτούς· καὶ οἶδα, ἔφη, ὅτι ἐπειδὰν ὑμᾶς ἴδωσιν, ἄσμενοι συνδραμοῦνται. αὕτη μὲν ἡ ἡμέρα οὕτως ἔληξε.

7. Τῇ δ' ὑστεραία ἄγουσιν ἐπὶ τὸ στράτευμα τοὺς Λάκωνας Σεύθης τε καὶ Ἡρακλείδης, καὶ συλλέγεται ἡ στρατιά. τῷ δὲ Λάκωνε ἐλεγέτην ὅτι Λακεδαιμονίοις δοκεῖ πολεμεῖν Τισσαφέρνει τῷ ὑμᾶς ἀδικήσαντι· ἦν οὖν ἴητε σὺν ἡμῖν, τόν τε ἐχθρόν τιμωρήσεσθε καὶ δαρεικὸν ἕκαστος οἴσει τοῦ μηνὸς ὑμῶν, λοχαγὸς δὲ τὸ διπλοῦν, στρατηγὸς δὲ τὸ τετραπλοῦν. 8. καὶ οἱ στρατιῶται ἄσμενοὶ τε ἤκουσαν καὶ εὐθύς ἀνίσταται τις τῶν Ἀρκάδων τοῦ Ξενοφῶντος κατηγορήσων. παρῆν δὲ καὶ Σεύθης βουλόμενος εἰδέναι τίπραχθήσεται, καὶ ἐν ἐπηκόῳ εἰστήκει ἔχων ἑρμηνέα· ξυνίει δὲ καὶ αὐτὸς ἑλληνιστὶ τὰ πλείστα.

The Arcadian charges Xenophon with having prevented the Greeks from entering the Lacedæmonian service; with having been personally enriched by Seuthes, and having deprived the soldiers of their pay; and concludes by expressing a wish to see him stoned to death. Others repeat the accusation, and elicit from Xenophon an elaborate refutation of the charges and vindication of his conduct. The Lacedæmonian Charminus speaks in his favour. Eurylochus urges the Lacedæmonians to obtain the soldiers' pay from Seuthes before he leads them away. Polycrates, an Athenian,

5. προσσχόντες. cf. I. 5. 9. and II. 4. 2, where the object τὸν οὖν is expressed.

then rose, and, after defending the conduct of Xenophon, charged Heraclides with having sold the plunder, and defrauded Seuthes and the soldiers of the proceeds; and suggests that he should be at once apprehended.

42. Ταῦτα ἀκούσας ὁ Ἡρακλείδης μᾶλλον ἐξεπλάγη· καὶ προσελθὼν τῷ Σεύθῃ λέγει, Ἡμεῖς ἦν σωφρονῶμεν, ἄπιμεν ἐντεῦθεν ἐκ τῆς τούτων ἐπικρατείας. καὶ ἀναβάντες ἐπὶ τοὺς ἵππους ὄχοντο ἀπελαύνοντες εἰς τὸ ἑαυτῶν στρατόπεδον. 43. καὶ ἐντεῦθεν Σεύθης πέμπει Ἀβροζέλμην τὸν ἑαυτοῦ ἑρμηνέα πρὸς Ξενοφῶντα καὶ κελεύει αὐτὸν καταμῆναι παρ' ἑαυτῷ ἔχοντα χιλίους ὀπλίτας, καὶ ὑπισχνεῖται αὐτῷ ἀποδώσειν τὰ τε χωρία τὰ ἐπὶ θαλάττῃ καὶ τᾶλλα ἃ ὑπέσχετο. καὶ ἐν ἀπορρήτῳ ποιησάμενος λέγει ὅτι ἀκήκοε Πολυνίκου ὡς εἰ ὑποχείριος ἔσται Λακεδαιμονίοις, σαφῶς ἀποθανοῖτο ὑπὸ Θίβρωνος. 44. ἐπέστελλον δὲ ταῦτα καὶ ἄλλοι πολλοὶ τῷ Ξενοφῶντι ὡς διαβεβλημένος εἶη καὶ φυλάττεσθαι δέοι. ὁ δὲ ἀκούων ταῦτα δύο ἱερεῖα λαβὼν ἔθνε τῷ Διὶ τῷ βασιλεῖ πότερά οἱ λῶν καὶ ἄμεινον εἶη μένειν παρὰ Σεύθῃ ἐφ' οἷς Σεύθης λέγει ἢ ἀπιέναι σὺν τῷ στρατεύματι. ἀναιρεῖ δὲ αὐτῷ ἀπιέναι.

VII. Ἐντεῦθεν Σεύθης μὲν ἀπεστρατοπεδεύσατο προσωτέρω· οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες ἐσκήνησαν εἰς κώμας ὅθεν ἔμελλον πλεῖστα ἐπισιτισάμενοι ἐπὶ θάλατταν ἤξειν. αἱ δὲ κώμαι αὗται ἦσαν δεδομέναι ὑπὸ Σεύθου Μηδοσάδῃ. 2. ὁρῶν οὖν ὁ Μηδοσάδης δαπανώμενα τὰ ἑαυτοῦ ἐν ταῖς κώμαις ὑπὸ τῶν Ἑλλήνων χαλεπῶς ἔφερε· καὶ λαβὼν ἄνδρα

Ὀδρύσην δυνατώτατον τῶν ἄνωθεν καταβεβηκότων καὶ ἰππέας ὅσον τριάκοντα ἔρχεται, καὶ προκαλεῖται Ξενοφῶντα ἐκ τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ στρατεύματος. καὶ ὃς λαβὼν τινὰς τῶν λοχαγῶν καὶ ἄλλους τῶν ἐπιτηδείων προσέρχεται. 3. ἔνθα δὴ λέγει Μηδοσάδης, Ἄδικεῖτε, ὦ Ξενοφῶν, τὰς ἡμετέρας κώμας πορθοῦντες. προλέγομεν οὖν ὑμῖν, ἐγὼ τε ὑπὲρ Σεύθου καὶ ὅδε ὁ ἀνὴρ παρὰ Μηδόκου ἦκων τοῦ ἄνω βασιλέως, ἀπιέναι ἐκ τῆς χώρας· εἰ δὲ μή, οὐκ ἐπιτρέψομεν ὑμῖν, ἀλλ' ἐὰν ποιῆτε κακῶς τὴν ἡμετέραν χώραν, ὡς πολεμίους ἀλεξόμεθα.

4. Ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἀκούσας ταῦτα εἶπεν, Ἄλλὰ σοὶ μὲν τοιαῦτα λέγοντι καὶ ἀποκρίνασθαι χαλεπὸν τοῦδε δ' ἔνεκα τοῦ νεανίσκου λέξω, ἵν' εἰδῆ οἱοί τε ὑμεῖς ἐστε καὶ οἱοί ἡμεῖς.

Xenophon exposes his ingratitude in wishing to expel the Greek troops from the very country which he had acquired by their assistance. The Odrysian, on hearing Xenophon's remonstrance, indignantly left Medosades. In a subsequent interview with the Lacedæmonians, Medosades requests them to abstain from injuring his subjects. They reply that they are ready to depart, as soon as the soldiers have received their pay; but add, that they will assist the army in obtaining redress, if justice is denied them. Medosades proposes an interview with Seuthes; and Xenophon, in a long address to that prince, convinces him of the justice and expediency of satisfying the demands of the soldiers.

48. Ἀκούσας ταῦτα ὁ Σεύθης κατηράσατο τῷ αἰτίῳ τοῦ μὴ πάλαι ἀποδεδόσθαι τὸν μισθόν· καὶ πάντες Ἡρακλείδην τοῦτον ὑπόπτευσαν εἶναι· ἐγὼ γάρ, ἔφη, οὔτε διανοήθην πώποτε ἀποστερή-

σαι ἀποδώσω τε. 49. ἐπέειπεν τάλῳ εἶπεν ὁ Ξενοφῶν, Ἐπεὶ τοίνυν διαση ἀποδίδουαι, νῦν ἐγὼ σου δέουμαι δι' ἐμοῦ ἀποδίδουαι, καὶ μὴ περιδεῖν με διὰ σέ ἀνομοίως ἔχοντα ἐν τῇ στρατιᾷ νῦν τε καὶ ὅτε πρὸς σέ ἀφικώμεθα. 50. ὁ δ' εἶπεν, Ἄλλ' οὔτε τοῖς στρατιώταις ἐσύ δι' ἐμέ ἀτιμώτερος, ἂν τε μέγας παρ' ἐμοὶ χιλίους μόνους ὄπλιτας ἔχων, ἐγὼ σοὶ τὰ τε χωρία ἀποδώσω καὶ τὰλλα ἃ ὑπερχοίην. 51. ὁ δὲ τάλῳ εἶπε, Ταῦτα μὲν ἔχειν οὕτως οὐχ οἶόν τε ἀπώτερετε δὲ ἡμᾶς. Καὶ μὴν, εἴη ὁ Σεισίης, καὶ ἀσφαλέστερον γε σοὶ εἶδαι ἐν παρ' ἐμοὶ μένειν ἢ ἀπίσταν. 52. ὁ δὲ τάλῳ εἶπεν, Ἄλλα τῶν μὲν σὺν κρήνην ἐκείνην. ἐμοὶ δὲ μένειν οὐχ οἶόν τε ὅτις ἔῃ ἐγὼ ἐπιμώτερος ἢ, νόμιζε καὶ σοὶ τούτο ἀγαθὸν εἶναι. 53. ἐπέειπε λέγει Σεισίης, Ἀγρίων μὲν οἶκ ἔχω ἀλλ' ἢ μικρὸν τι, καὶ τούτο σοὶ δίδωμαι, τάλαντον βούτ δὲ ἐξαιρούμενος καὶ πρᾶξαι εἰς τετρακισχίλια καὶ ἀνδράσδεκα εἰς εἰσσι καὶ εἰστέν. ταῦτα λαβὼν καὶ τοὺς τῶν ἀλαφρώτατος τε ἡμῶν κροσλαβῶν εἰστέ. 54. γέλως ὁ Ξενοφῶν εἶπεν, Ἦν οὐ μὴ ἐξισώται ταῦτα εἰς τὸν μισθόν, τρεῖς τάλαντων φύσος ἔχειν : ἂν οἶκ, ἐκείδε καὶ ἐκικαδούων μὲν εἶπεν, ἀπώτερε γε ἄλλωθεν ὀφειλάττωσθαι τέτρωσι : ἦσσος δὲ τῶν ἀτάλλας. τῦτε μὲν δι' αἰτῶν ἔπεισε.

55. Ἦν ἔπεισε ἀπώτερε τε αἰτῶν ἢ ἔτιώχετο καὶ τοὺς ταῦτα ἀλαφρώτατος στυφώκερφεν. οἱ δὲ στρατιώταις τρεῖς μὲν εἰσσι εἰς Ξενοφῶν εἰχαστο

ὡς Σεύθην οἰκήσων καὶ ἃ ὑπέσχετο αὐτῷ ἀπολη-
ψόμενος· ἐπεὶ δὲ αὐτὸν ἤκοντα εἶδον ἤσθησάν τε
καὶ προσέθεον. 56. Ξενοφῶν δ' ἐπεὶ εἶδε Χαρμί-
νόν τε καὶ Πολύνικον, Ταῦτα, ἔφη, καὶ σέσωσται
δι' ὑμᾶς τῇ στρατιᾷ καὶ παραδίδωμι αὐτὰ ἐγὼ
ὑμῖν· ὑμεῖς δὲ διαθέμενοι διάδοτε τῇ στρατιᾷ. οἱ
μὲν οὖν παραλαβόντες καὶ λαφυροπώλας κατα-
στήσαντες ἐπώλουν, καὶ πολλὴν εἶχον αἰτίαν. 57.
Ξενοφῶν δὲ οὐ προσήει, ἀλλὰ φανερὸς ἦν οἴκαδε
παρασκευαζόμενος· οὐ γάρ πω ψῆφος αὐτῷ ἐπήκτο
Ἀθήνησι περὶ φυγῆς. προσελθόντες δὲ αὐτῷ οἱ
ἐπιτήδευοι ἐν τῷ στρατοπέδῳ ἐδέοντο μὴ ἀπελθεῖν
πρὶν [ἂν] ἀπαγάγοι τὸ στράτευμα καὶ Θίβρωνι
παραδοίῃ.

VIII. Ἐντεῦθεν διέπλευσαν εἰς Λάμψακον,
καὶ ἀπαντᾷ τῷ Ξενοφῶντι Εὐκλείδης μάντις Φλιά-
σιος ὁ Κλεαγόρου υἱὸς τοῦ τὰ ἐνύπνια ἐν Λυκείῳ
γεγραφότος. οὗτος συνήδετο τῷ Ξενοφῶντι ὅτι
ἐσέσωστο, καὶ ἡρώτα αὐτὸν πόσον χρυσίον ἔχει.
2. ὁ δ' αὐτῷ ἐπομόσας εἶπεν ἢ μὴν ἔσεσθαι μηδὲ
ἐφόδιον ἱκανὸν οἴκαδε ἀπιόντι, εἰ μὴ ἀπόδοιτο
τὸν ἵππον καὶ ἃ ἀμφ' αὐτὸν εἶχεν. ὁ δ' αὐτῷ οὐκ
ἐπίστευεν. 3. ἐπεὶ δ' ἔπεμψαν Λαμψακηνοὶ ξένια
τῷ Ξενοφῶντι καὶ ἔθνε τῷ Ἀπόλλωνι, παρεστή-
σατο τὸν Εὐκλείδην ἰδὼν δὲ τὰ ἱερεῖα ὁ Εὐκλεί-
δης εἶπεν ὅτι πείθοιτο αὐτῷ μὴ εἶναι χρήματα.
Ἄλλ' οἶδα, ἔφη, ὅτι κἂν μέλλῃ ποτὲ ἔσεσθαι,
φαίνεται τι ἐμπόδιον, εἰ μὴ μὴδὲν ἄλλο, σὺ σαυτῷ.
συνωμολόγει ταῦτα ὁ Ξενοφῶν. 4. ὁ δὲ εἶπεν,

57. ψῆφον ἐπάγειν τι, το pass a vote on any one.

Ἐμπόδιον γάρ σοι ὁ Ζεὺς ὁ Μειλίχιός ἐστι, καὶ ἐπήρετο εἰ ἤδη ποτὲ θύσειεν, ὥσπερ οἴκοι, ἔφη, εἰώθειν ἐγὼ ὑμῖν θύεσθαι καὶ ὀλοκαυτεῖν. ὁ δ' οὐκ ἔφη ἐξ ὄτου ἀπεδήμησε τεθυκέναι τούτῃ τῷ θεῷ. συνεβούλευσεν οὖν αὐτῷ θύεσθαι καθὰ εἰώθει, καὶ ἔφη συνοίσειν ἐπὶ τὸ βέλτιον. 5. τῇ δὲ ὑστεραία ὁ Ξενοφῶν προελθὼν εἰς Ὀφρύνιον ἐθύετο καὶ ὀλοκαύτει χοίρους τῷ πατρίῳ νόμῳ, καὶ ἐκαλλιέρι. 6. καὶ ταύτῃ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ ἀφικνεῖται Βίτων καὶ ἅμα Εὐκλείδης χρήματα δώσοντες τῷ στρατεύματι, καὶ ξενοῦνταί τε τῷ Ξενοφῶντι, καὶ ἵππον ὃν ἐν Δαμψάκῳ ἀπέδοτο πεντήκοντα δαρεϊκῶν, ὑποπτεύοντες αὐτὸν δι' ἔνδειαν πεπρακέναι, ὅτι ἤκουον αὐτὸν ἠδεσθαι τῷ ἵππῳ, λυσάμενοι ἀπέδοσαν καὶ τὴν τιμὴν οὐκ ἤθελον ἀπολαβεῖν.

7. Ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύοντο διὰ τῆς Τρωάδος, καὶ ὑπερβάντες τὴν Ἰδὴν εἰς Ἄντανδρον ἀφικνοῦνται πρῶτον, εἶτα παρὰ θάλατταν πορευόμενοι τῆς Ἀσίας εἰς Θήβης πεδίον. 8. ἐντεῦθεν δι' Ἀτραμυττίου καὶ Κερτωνοῦ ὁδεύσαντες παρ' Ἀταρνείας εἰς Καῖκου πεδίον ἐλθόντες Πέργαμον καταλαμβάνουσι τῆς Μυσίας.

Xenophon, having received information from a friend with whom he was staying, that Asidates, a wealthy Persian, was in the immediate neighbourhood with his wife and family, organises an expedition to capture him and obtain possession of his wealth. The attack on the Persian's castle failed, assistance arrived from the neighbouring towns,

and the Greeks were compelled to retreat with half their number wounded by slings and arrows. They carried off two hundred slaves and a few cattle. The Persian abandoned his castle the next day, and fell into the hands of Xenophon's soldiers. Xenophon received an ample proportion of the spoil.

23. Ἐπειτα πάλιν ἀφικνοῦνται εἰς Πέργαμον. ἐνταῦθα τὸν θεὸν οὐκ ἠτιάσατο ὁ Ξενοφῶν· συνέπραπτον γὰρ καὶ οἱ Λάκωνες καὶ οἱ λοχαγοὶ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι στρατηγοὶ καὶ οἱ στρατιῶται ὥστ' ἐξαιρετα λαμβάνειν καὶ ἵππους καὶ ζεύγη καὶ τᾶλλα ὥστε ἰκανὸν εἶναι καὶ ἄλλον ἤδη εὖ ποιεῖν.

24. Ἐν τούτῳ Θίβρων παραγενόμενος παρέλαβε τὸ στράτευμα καὶ συμμίξας τῷ ἄλλῳ Ἑλληνικῷ ἐπολέμει πρὸς Τισσαφέρην καὶ Φαρνάβαζον.

25. [Ἄρχοντες δὲ οἶδε τῆς βασιλέως χώρας ὅσων ἐπήλθομεν. Λυδίας Ἀρτίμας, Φρυγίας Ἀρτακάμας, Λυκαονίας καὶ Καππαδοκίας Μιθριδάτης, Κιλικίας Συέννεσις, Φοινίκης καὶ Ἀραβίας Δέρνης, Συρίας καὶ Ἀσσυρίας Βέλεσος, Βαβυλῶνος Ῥωπάρας, Μηδίας Ἀρβάκας, Φασιανῶν καὶ Ἑσπεριτῶν Τηρίβαζος· Καρδοῦχοι δὲ καὶ Χάλυβες καὶ Χαλδαῖοι καὶ Μάκρωνες καὶ Κόλχοι καὶ Μοσσύνοικοι [καὶ Κοῖται] καὶ Τιβαρηνοὶ αὐτόνομοι· Παφλαγονίας Κορύλας, Βιθυνῶν Φαρνάβαζος, τῶν ἐν Εὐρώπῃ Θρακῶν Σεύθης. 26. ἀριθμὸς δὲ συμπάσης τῆς ὁδοῦ τῆς ἀναβάσεως καὶ καταβάσεως σταθμοὶ διακόσιοι δεκαπέντε, παρασύγγαι χίλιοι

ἑκατὸν πενήκοντα πέντε, στάδια τρισμύρια τετρακισχίλια ἑξακόσια πενήκοντα. χρόνου πλῆθος τῆς ἀναβάσεως καὶ καταβάσεως ἑνιαυτὸς καὶ τρεῖς μῆνες.]

I N D E X.

N.B. For a fuller account of the names consult the Biographical and Geographical Dictionaries edited by Dr. W. ΣΜΙΤΗ, and published by Walton and Maberly, Upper Gower Street.

A.

- 'Αβροζέλιμης, an interpreter of Ξεύθης, VII. 6. 43.
- 'Αβροκόμας, I. 4. 5, one of the four ἡγεμόνες of Ἀρταξέρξης Μνήμων, commanding 300,000 men, I. 7. 12; is stated by Κύρος to be encamped on the Εὐφράτης, I. 3. 2^o; is deserted by 400 Greek mercenaries, I. 4. 3; leaves the Συρίαι πύλαι undefended, I. 4. 5; on his retreat to join Ἀρταξέρξης he burns some boats to prevent Κύρος from crossing the Εὐφράτης, I. 4. 18; he arrives five days after the battle, I. 7. 12.
- 'Αβυδος, I. 1. 9, an ancient Greek town on the Asiatic shore of the Ἑλλάσποντος. It was here, or a little higher up, that Ξέρξης (B.C. 480) began the construction of his bridge of boats.
- 'Αγασίας, a Stymphalian of Ἀρκαδία, IV. 1. 27; often mentioned as a brave and active officer in the Greek army, IV. 7. 11, and elsewhere.
- 'Αγησίλαος (Agesilaus II.), a celebrated king of Sparta, incidentally mentioned as being recalled from Ἀσία, V. 3. 6.
- 'Αγίας, an Arcadian; one of the Greek generals seized by Tissaphernes, II. 5. 31, and put to death, II. 6. 1. Ξενοφῶν characterises him as a brave warrior and a good friend. At the time of his death he was about thirty-five years old.
- 'Αθηναῖοι possess a treasury at Δελφοί, V. 3. 5.
- Αἰγύπτιοι, some of them serve in the army of Ἀρταξέρξης, I. 8. 9.
- Αἰήτης, grandfather of the king of the Φασιανοί, V. 6. 37.
- Αἰνείας, a Stymphalian captain, IV. 7. 13.

- Αἰνίανες*, a Greek tribe in southern *Θετταλία*, on the banks of the *Σπερχειός*, led by *Μένων*, I. 2. 6; their mode of dancing described, VI. 1. 8.
- Αἰσχίνης*, an Acarnanian, commander of Arcadian *πελτασταί*, IV. 3. 22, IV. 8. 18.
- Ἀκαρνάν*, IV. 8. 18, an Acarnanian. *Ἀκαρνανία* is the most westerly province of continental Greece.
- Ἄλυσ*, VI. 2. 1. (*Kizil-Irmak*, *i.e.* the Red River), rises in the Anti-Taurus range in *Καππαδοκία*, and after a winding course through *Γαλατία* and *Παφλαγονία*, flows into the *Εἰξείνος Πόντος*.
- Ἀμβρακιώτης*, I. 7. 18, an inhabitant of *Ἀμβρακία* (*Arta*), a town on the left bank of the river *Ἄραχθος* (*Arta*) in *Ἡπειρος* (*Albania*).
- Ἀμφικράτης*, a captain in the Greek army, IV. 2. 13; is killed by the *Καρδοῦχοι*, IV. 2. 17.
- Ἀμφιπολίτης*, I. 10. 7, an inhabitant of *Ἀμφίπολις* (*Neokhorio*, in Turkish *Jeni-Keui*), a town in *Μακεδονία*, on the left bank of the *Στρώμων* (*Struma*, in Turkish *Karasu*). The river flowed almost round the town, whence its name *Amphi-polis*.
- Ἀναξίβιος*, a Spartan admiral; promises the *Ἕλληνες* employment if they will come over to him to *Βυζάντιον*, VI. 1. 16, VII. 1. 3. They go over, but are deceived by him, VII. 1. 7. The name occurs several times in VII. 1. and VII. 2.
- Ἄντανδρος*, VII. 8. 7, a town in *Μυσία*, on the *Adramyttian Gulf* (*cf.* *Virg. Æn.* III. 5. 6). "Most maps have still a site on the spot on the shore west of *Adramytti*, called *Antandro*; but Mr. W. J. Hamilton's map, which is founded upon the latest surveys, does not notice it; perhaps only the site exists, and not a village or town of that name." *Ainsworth*, p. 230.
- Ἀπόλλων*, one of the great divinities of the *Ἕλληνες*; flays *Μαρσύας*, I. 2. 8; *Ξενοφῶν* consults his oracle at *Δελφοί*, III. 1. 6; makes an offering to him from the spoils, V. 3. 5; and sacrifices to him, VII. 8. 3.
- Ἀραβία*, a country at the S.W. extremity of Asia, bounded on the W. by the *Arabicus Sinus* (*Red Sea*), S. and S.E. by the *Erythræum Mare* (*Gulf of Babel-Mandeb* and *Arabian Sea*), E. and N.E. by the *Persicus Sinus* (*Persian Gulf*), and N. by *Συρία* and the *Εὐφράτης*. The northern part is traversed by *Κῦρος* and his army, I. 5. 1; a description of the country and

- animals found there, I. 5. 1-3; governed by *Δέρνης*, VII. 8. 25.
- Ἀρδέξης*, I. 4. 19 (Khabur), a river of *Συρία*, a branch of the *Εὐφράτης*, flowing into it on the left side.
- Ἀρβάκας* or *Ἀρβάκης*, one of the four *ἡγεμόνες* of *Ἀρταξέρξης*, I. 7. 12; governor of *Μηδία*, VII. 8. 25.
- Ἀργεῖος*, IV. 2. 13, and elsewhere, an inhabitant of *Ἀργολίς* or *Ἄργο*.
- Ἀργώ*, VI. 2. 1, the ship in which *Ἰδῶν* and his companions sailed to *Κολχίς* for the purpose of getting the golden fleece.
- Ἀρηξίων*, an Arcadian soothsayer, VI. 4. 13, VI. 5. 2, 8.
- Ἀριαῖος*, lieutenant-general of *Κῦρος*, I. 8. 5. He commanded the Persian cavalry at the battle of *Κούναξα*, and fled with all his troops when he heard of the death of *Κῦρος*; he is offered the throne by *Κλέαρχος*, II. 1. 4; refuses it, II. 2. 1; but enters into an alliance with the *Ἕλληνες*, II. 2. 8; is pardoned by *Ἀρταξέρξης*, II. 4. 1; is suspected by the *Ἕλληνες* to be a traitor to them, II. 4. 2.
- Ἀρίσταρχος*, successor of *Κλέανδρος* as harmost of *Βυζάντιον*, VII. 2. 5; sells not less than four hundred of the *Ἕλληνες*, VII. 2. 6; orders the *Ἕλληνες* not to cross into *Ἀσία*, VII. 2. 12, 13; is mentioned again in VII. 3.
- Ἀριστέας*, a Chian, captain of light-armed troops, IV. 1. 28, IV. 6. 20.
- Ἀριστιππος*, a Thessalian, obtains troops and money from *Κῦρος*, I. 1. 10; is ordered by *Κῦρος* to send him all the troops he has, I. 2. 1.
- Ἀρίστων*, an Athenian, sent on an embassy to *Σινώπη*, V. 6. 14.
- Ἀριστάνυμος*, a Methydrian of *Ἀρκαδία*, captain of hoplites, IV. 1. 27, IV. 6. 20, IV. 7. 11.
- Ἀρκάς*, an inhabitant of *Ἀρκαδία*, the central division of *Πελοπόννησος*; it is surrounded on all sides by mountains, and may be called the Switzerland of Greece. The Arcadians frequently served as mercenaries. Our author states in VI. 2. 10, that they and the *Ἀχαιοί* form more than half the whole army. They are defeated by the *Θρᾷκες*, VI. 3. 2-9; some of them sing and dance in armour, VI. 1. 11.
- Ἀρμενία*, a country lying between Asia Minor and the Caspian Sea; it contains the sources of the *Τίγρης* and *Εὐφράτης*, IV. 1. 3, the latter of which divides it into two unequal parts,

- called Major and Minor. It is governed by Ὀρόντας, III. 5. 17; the western part by Τηρίβαζος, IV. 4. 4.
- Ἀρμήνη, a town near Σινώπη; here the Ἕλληνες anchored and stayed five days, VI. 1. 15-17.
- Ἄρπασος, IV. 7. 18, a branch of the Armenian Ἀράξης or Φῶσις, between the Χάλυβες and the Σκυθivol. *Ainsworth*, p. 185, calls it the Arpá-chai. *Grote*, vol. ix. p. 161, says, "The river which Xenophon calls the Harpasus seems to be probably the Tchoruk-su."
- Ἄρταγέρσης, a commander of 6000 cavalry in the army of Ἄρταξέρξης, I. 7. 11; is killed by Κύρος in the battle, I. 8. 24.
- Ἄρτακάμας, VII. 8. 25, governor of Φρυγία.
- Ἄρταξέρξης II. (surnamed Μνήμων, *i.e.* mindful, from his good memory), son of Δαρείος II. and Παρύσατις, I. 1. 1; succeeds his father, arrests Κύρος for the purpose of putting him to death, but releases him at the entreaty of his mother, I. 1. 3; hears from Τισσαφέρνης of the preparations for war of Κύρος, I. 2. 5; his army, I. 7. 11, 12; he is wounded by Κύρος, I. 8. 26; plunders the camp of Κύρος, I. 10. 1; his army flees from the Ἕλληνες, I. 10. 11; he demands their arms, II. 1. 8; makes a treaty with them, II. 3. 25-28; puts their generals to death, II. 6. 1. Ἄρταξέρξης reigned *v.c.* 405-359.
- Ἄρτάδος, a Persian attached to Κύρος, II. 4. 16, II. 5. 35.
- Ἄρταπάτης, the most trusty σκηπτουῦχος of Κύρος, to whom Ὀρόντης was delivered after his condemnation; perishes on the body of Κύρος, I. 8. 29.
- Ἄρτεμις, one of the great divinities of the Ἕλληνες. According to the most ancient account she was the daughter of Ζεύς and Λητώ, and twin-sister of Ἀπόλλων. She is styled the Ephesian, ἡ Ἐφεσία, and part of the spoil is dedicated to her, V. 3. 4; Ξενοφῶν builds a temple to her at Σκιλλοῦς, V. 3. 7-12; her temple at Ἐφεσος mentioned, V. 3. 8.
- Ἄρτιμας, governor of Λυδία, VII. 8. 25.
- Ἄρτούχας(ης), IV. 3. 4; he and Ὀρόντας, at the head of a large army, oppose the Ἕλληνες at the river Κεντρίτης.
- Ἀρίστας, an Arcadian; a great eater, VII. 3. 23-25.
- Ἀρχαγόρας, an Argive exile; a captain in the Greek force, IV. 2. 13, 17.
- Ἄσια. This word is used once in Book V. and twelve times in Book VII.; and each time Ξενοφῶν alludes to that part of

Asia Minor which consists of Βιθυνία and the provinces on the coast of the Ægean.

- Ἄσυναῖος, V. 3. 4, and elsewhere, an inhabitant of Ἄσινη. There are three towns of this name in Πελοπόννησος: 1. in Λακωνική, on the western coast, between Ταίναρον and Γόθειον; 2. in Ἀργολίς, on the eastern coast of the Argolic Gulf; 3. in Μεσσηνία, on the western coast of the Messenian Gulf, a little above the promontory Ἀκρείτας: which is meant by Ξενοφῶν is not clear.
- Ἀσπένδιοι, I. 2. 12, inhabitants of Ἀσπενδος, a city of Παμφυλία, about six miles from the coast.
- Ἀσσυρία, VII. 8. 25, a country in Asia governed by Βέλεσος. "Its boundaries are variously given in the Greek and Roman writers; in the strictest sense it comprehended only a long narrow territory, divided on the north from Armenia by M. Niphates, on the west and south-west from Mesopotamia and Babylonia by the Tigris. In a wider sense Assyria comprehended the whole country which was included in Mesopotamia and Babylonia."—*Dict. of Greek and Roman Geography*.
- Ἀταρνεύς, VII. 8. 8, a town in Μυσία, on the coast, opposite Μυτιλήνη.
- Ἀτραμύτιον, VII. 8. 7 (Adramytti), a town in Μυσία, near the head of the Adramyttian Gulf.
- Ἀχαιός, I. 2. 3, an inhabitant of Ἀχαΐα, the northern division of the Πελοπόννησος. The Ἀχαιοὶ and Ἀρκάδες form more than half the whole army, VI. 2. 10.
- Ἀχερουσίας Χερβόνησος, VI. 2. 2, a promontory near Ἡράκλεια, in Βιθυνία.

B.

- Βαβυλών, I. 4. 11, I. 5. 5 (ruins at and round Hillah), one of the oldest and greatest cities of the ancient world, built on both banks of the Εὐφράτης; its distance from the field of battle, II. 2. 6; from Κοτύωρα, V. 5. 4; governed by Ῥωπάρας, VII. 8. 25.
- Βαβυλωνία, the district around Βαβυλών; the northern part traversed by Κῦρος and his army, I. 7. 1; by the Ἑλληνες, II. 2. 13.
- Βασίλας, an Arcadian, killed by the Καρδοῦχοι, IV. 1. 18.

- Βέλεις**, governor of *Συρία* and *Ἀσσυρία*, I. 4. 10, VII. 8. 25.
- Βιθυνοί**, VI. 2. 17, inhabitants of *Βιθυνία*, a province of Asia Minor, bounded N. by the *Εξέεινος Πόντος*, and N.W. by the *Προποντις*; called *Θρᾶκες Βιθυνοί*, VI. 4. 2; governed by *Φαρνάβαζος*, VII. 8. 25.
- Βίτων** brings money to the army, entertains *Ξενοφῶν*, and assists in redeeming his horse for him, VII. 8. 6.
- Βοιωτίας**, I. 2. 11, and elsewhere, an inhabitant of *Βοιωτία*, a province of continental Greece. The form *Βοιωτοῦς* occurs in V. 3. 6.
- Βυζάντιον** (Constantinople), VII. 1. 7, and elsewhere, a town on the Thracian *Βόσπορος* (Straits of Constantinople), the acropolis of which stood on the site of the present Seraglio. Its position soon rendered it a place of great commercial importance. During the Peloponnesian war it was alternately in the possession of the Athenians and Lacedæmonians. It was taken by Severus (A.D. 196), after a siege of three years, and a considerable part of it was destroyed. A new city was built by its side (A.D. 330) by Constantine, who made it the capital of the empire, and changed its name to Constantinopolis.

Γ.

- Γαυλίτης**, a Samian exile, I. 7. 5.
- Γλοῦς**, I. 4. 16, I. 5. 7, the son of *Ταμῶς*; announces the death of *Κῦρος* to the Greeks, II. 1. 3; is seen watching them, II. 4. 24.
- Γνήσιππος**, an Athenian, VII. 3. 28.
- Γυμνίας**, a large, wealthy, inhabited city of the *Σαυθινοί*, IV. 7. 19.
 "It appears to be the same as the modern *Erz-Rûm*. This is, however, one of the least satisfactorily determined positions throughout the whole expedition." *Ainsworth*, p. 186.
 "I cannot but think it probable that the city which *Xenophon* calls *Gymnias* was the same as that which is now called *Gumisch-Khana*." *Grote*, vol. ix. p. 161.
- Γωβρύας**, one of the four *ἡγεμόνες* of *Ἀγραξέρεθης*, I. 7. 12.

Δ.

- Δαμάρατος** or **Δημόρατος**, a Laconian, II. 1. 3.
- Δάνα**, I. 2. 20, a large and wealthy city of *Καππαδοκία*, probably

- the same as *Τύανα* (Κίζ Hisā, Girls' Castle. *Ainsworth*, p. 42).
- Δαρδανεύς*, VI. 1. 32, and elsewhere, descriptive of *Τιμασίων*, an inhabitant of *Δάρδαρος*, a Greek town in the Troad on the Ἑλλησποντος. Hence the modern name, "Dardanelles."
- Δάρδης*, I. 4. 10 (in some editions *Δαράδαξ*), a branch of the *Εὐφράτης*, or more probably a canal from it.
- Δαρειός* II., named Ὀχος before his accession, and then surnamed *Νόθος*, from being one of the bastard sons of Ἀρταξέρξης I., put to death his brother Sogdianus (who had murdered Xerxes II.), and seized the throne of Persia; he reigned B.C. 424-405; father of Ἀρταξέρξης and Κῦρος, I. 1. 1; just before his death he sends for Κῦρος, I. 1. 2; dies, I. 1. 3.
- Δέλτα τῆς Θράκης*, VII. 1. 33. "The space included between the N.W. corner of the Propontis and the S.W. corner of the Euxine." *Grote*, vol. ix. p. 220.
- Δελφοί* (*Kastri*), a small town in *Φωκίς*, but one of the most celebrated in Greece on account of its oracle of Ἀπόλλων; *Ξενοφῶν* consults the oracle there, III. 1. 6; he mentions his carrying thither an offering, V. 3. 5.
- Δέξιππος*, a Laconian pericæus, who behaves traitorously to the Ἑλληγες; his fate, V. 1. 15; he falsely accuses *Ξενοφῶν*, VI. 1. 32.
- Δέρνης*, governor of *Φοινίκη* and Ἀραβία, VII. 8. 25.
- Δόλοπες*, I. 2. 6, inhabitants of the S.W. of *Θετταλία*, who formed part of the army of *Μένων*.
- Δρίλαι*, V. 2. 1, 2, a people in the N.E. of *Πόντος*, called by *Ξενοφῶν* "the most warlike men in *Πόντος*."

E.

- Ἐκατόνυμος*, an ambassador from *Σινώπη* to the Ἑλληγες, V. 5. 7.
- Ἐκβάτανα*, II. 4. 25, written also Ἀγβάτανα (*Hamadan*), the ancient capital of *Μηδία*, situate in a plain at the foot of Mount *Orontes*. It was a favourite summer residence of the Persian kings, III. 5. 15.
- Ἑλλάς*, I. 2. 9, and elsewhere, a small district of *Φθιώτις*, in *Θετταλία*, containing a town of the same name. The inhabitants

gradually spread over the surrounding parts, and at length **EAAK** became the name of the whole of Greece, including **Helas**, and **EAAKES** the name of the inhabitants.

EAAKES, I. 2. 2, and elsewhere: see **EAAK**.

KAIAKOS, I. 2. 4, and elsewhere (Straits of the Dardanelles), a narrow strait connecting the **HELLESPONT** with the **AEGEAN** sea. The name is said to be derived from **EAAK**, who was drowned in it.

KAIAKOS, I. 2. 24, written an epithet of **AAG**, the war-god of the **HELLES**. It evidently contains the root of **EAAK**, the war-god.

KAIAKOS, in **Amphipolis**, contains the priestess, I. 10. 7; see a word inserted in its case, IV. 4. 1.

KAIAKOS, the wife of **HELLES**, visits **KIAK**, witnesses a scene of her army is committed to **KAIAK** by **HELLES**, I. 2. 1-30, and returns **KAIAK** five days before **KIAK**, I. 2. 25.

KAIAKOS, VII. 2. 25, the country occupied by them is uncertain.

KAIAKOS stands in the gates of **HELLES**, and shuts them against the **HELLES**, VII. 2. 25; then, VII. 1. 20.

KAIAKOS, a **Thracian** messenger, sends **HELLES**, questions him about his business, gives money to the army, and assists in returning a **HELLES** has been forced to sell, VII. 5. 1-6.

KAIAKOS, I. 2. 25, see **KAIAK**.

KAIAKOS, a **Thracian** in the **KAIAK** army; wounded by the **KAIAK**, VII. 2. 25.

KAIAKOS, a **Thracian** of **KAIAK**, protects **HELLES** with his shield, VII. 2. 25, the name occurs again in IV. 7. 11, 12, VII. 2. 25.

KAIAKOS, I. 2. 24, I. 2. 25, and elsewhere (**El Pasa**), consists of two branches, **KAIAKOS** and **KAIAKOS**, both of which rise in the mountains of **KAIAKOS**. They join in lat. 39°; the river then flows in a S. direction to lat. 36°; then S.E. to 31°,

where it joins the **KAIAK**, about 60 or 70 miles above the mouth of the **KAIAK**. **KAIAK** and his army cross it at **KAIAKOS**, where it is a four miles, I. 4. 17. The Greeks crossed it at **KAIAKOS**, IV. 4. 2.

KAIAKOS, I. 2. 25, the chief of the twelve cities of **KAIAKOS**, the chief of the twelve cities of **KAIAKOS**, the chief of the twelve cities of **KAIAKOS**, by which flows the river

Z.

Zαπάντας (or *Zάβατος*), the *greater Zab*, a river rising in the mountains S. of Ἄρμενία. It flows into the Τίγγης, near a town now called Senn. The Ἕλληνες reach it, II. 5. 1; and cross it, III. 3. 6. The *Zαπάντας* is sometimes called Λύκος. "It is a perplexing circumstance in the geography of Xenophon's work, that he makes no mention of the *lesser Zab*, which yet he must have crossed. Perhaps in drawing up his narrative after the expedition, Xenophon may have so far forgotten, as to fancy that two synonymous rivers, mentioned as distinct in his memoranda, were only one." *Grote*, vol. ix. p. 93.

Ζεός, I. 7. 9, and elsewhere, the greatest of the Olympian gods; the supreme ruler; the founder of kingly power, law, order, &c. Hence he is called *σωτήρ*, preserver; *ξένιος*, hospitable, *i. e.* watching over the laws of hospitality; *βασιλεύς*, king; *μειλίχιος*, mild, gracious, *i. e.* the protector of all who invoke him with propitiatory offerings.

H.

Ἡγήσανδρος, an Arcadian captain; attacked by the Θρήκες, VI. 3. 5.
Ἡλείος, II. 2. 20, and elsewhere; an inhabitant of Ἥλις, the N. W. province of Πελοπόννησος.

Ἡράκλεια (ἢ Ποντική, to distinguish it from the many towns of the same name), VI. 2. 1, and elsewhere; Harakli or Herekli, a Greek city in Βιθυνία, on the coast of the Εὐξεινος Πόντος, a colony from Μέγαρα in the country of the Μαριανδύνοι.

Ἡρακλείδης, a Maronite; advises the Ἕλληνες to make presents to Ζεύθης, VII. 3. 16-29; he is sent to Πέρμηθος to dispose of booty, VII. 4. 2.

Ἡρακλεῶται, VI. 2. 3, and elsewhere; inhabitants of Ἡράκλεια, which see.

Ἡρακλεῶτις, VI. 2. 19, the country around Ἡράκλεια in Βιθυνία.

Ἡρακλῆς, the most celebrated of all the heroes of antiquity. The place where he descended to fetch Κέρβερος, VI. 2. 2. Ξενοφῶν sacrifices to him, VI. 2. 15. The Ἕλληνες are exhorted to rely on him as their ἡγεμόν, VI. 5. 24. His name is used as part of the watchword, VI. 5. 25.

Θ.

- Θάψακος** (this word is mentioned in 1 Kings iv. 24, under the form Tiphseh = a pass over a ford), a large and wealthy city on the right bank of the *Εὐφράτης*, I. 4. 11. "Thapsacus appears to have become Sura in the time of the Roman Cæsars, for it is so called by Pliny and also by Ptolemy. The site is still designated as Surîyeh." *Ainsworth*, p. 72.
- Θεογένης**, a Locrian captain, VII. 4. 18.
- Θερμῶδων**, VI. 2. 1. (Thermeh); a river of *Πόντος*, flowing into the *Εὐξεινος Πόντος*.
- Θετταλός**, I. 1. 10, an inhabitant of *Θετταλία*, the N. province of continental Greece.
- Θήβη**, VII. 8. 7, a city of *Μυσία*, between *Ἄντανδρος* and *Ἄτραμύντιον*, said by Homer (Il. I. 366) to have been sacked by *Ἀχιλλεύς*. The country around its site was named from it *Θήβης Πεδίον*, Thebanus Campus.
- Θήκης**, IV. 7. 21, a mountain summit, from which the *Ἕλληνες* first saw the sea on their retreat. "Unfortunately it seems impossible to verify the particular summit on which the interesting scene described by Xenophon took place. Mr. Ainsworth presumes it to be the mountain called Kop-Tagh; from whence, however, according to Koch, the sea cannot be discerned." *Grote*, vol. ix. p. 162.
- Θίβρων**, a Lacedæmonian sent out to *Ἀσία* with an army to aid the Ionians against *Τισσαφέρνης*. He invites the *Ἕλληνες* to join him, VII. 6. 1; and incorporates them with his army, VII. 8. 24.
- Θράκες**, inhabitants of *Θράκη* and its colonies in Asia Minor, on the coasts of the *Προποντίς* and *Εὐξεινος Πόντος*. They are attacked by *Κλέαρχος*, I. 1. 9; 300 desert to the king, II. 2. 7; their dancing described, VI. 1. 5, 6; they are attacked by the Arcadian troops, VI. 3. 2-9; a Thracian banquet described, VII. 3. 21-33; their dress described, VII. 4. 2-4.
- Θράκη**, VI. 2. 17, and elsewhere; 1. *ἐν τῇ Εὐρώπῃ*, a country bounded N. by the mountain-range *Αἴμος* (Balkan), W. by the river *Στρώμων* (Struma), afterwards by the river *Νέστος* (Mesto, or Kara-su), S. by the *Αἰγαῖον Πέλαγος* and the *Προποντίς*, and E. by the *Εὐξεινος Πόντος*; 2. *ἐν τῇ Ἀσίᾳ*, extending along the

- coast from the mouth of the Εβξεινος Πόντος to Ἡράκλεια, VI. 4. 1.
- Θεράκιον, VII. 1. 24, an open and level space within the gates of Βυζάντιον.
- Θύμβριον, I. 2. 13, a town in Φρυγία; its site is doubtful: *Ainsworth*, pp. 29, 30, identifies it with Isháklí.
- Θυνοί, a tribe in the S.E. of Θεράκη ἐν τῇ Εὐρώπῃ, VII. 2. 22; they attack the Greeks, but are repulsed, and make a truce with them, VII. 4. 14-24.

I.

- Ἰασονία ἀκτή, VI. 2. 1 (Yásún Búrnú), the beach of Ἰάσων, Jasonium promontorium, on the coast of Πόντος.
- Ἴδη, VII. 8. 7 (Ida, or, according to Ainsworth, Kárájah Tâgh), a mountain-range in Μυσία, forming the S. boundary of the Troad.
- Ἰερόν ὄρος, VII. 1. 14, VII. 3. 3, a mountain forming perhaps the N. boundary of Χερβόρησος, and skirting part of the N. coast of the Προποντίς.
- Ἰερώνημος, an Elian, VI. 4. 10; is sent with others to Ἀναξίβιος, VII. 1. 32; is wounded by the Θυνοί, VII. 4. 18.
- Ἰκόνιον (Koniye or Koniyah), the last city of Φρυγία passed by Κύρος, I. 2. 19; Pliny places it in Λυκαονία. When visited by St. Paul, it contained "a great multitude" of Jews and Greeks. The Crusaders, under Godefroy de Bouillon, were well received and hospitably entertained here. At the present day it is perhaps the most fallen of all the great cities of Asia Minor. "Its remains are straggling and irregular, and consist, with the exception of its public buildings falling into decay and its crumbling walls, of low mud houses with flat roofs." *Ainsworth*, p. 39.
- Ἰρις, VI. 2. 1 (Yeshil Irmak), a river rising in the south of Πόντος, flowing first west, then north, into the Εβξεινος Πόντος.
- Ἰσθμός, II. 6. 3 (Ἰσθμὸς Κορίνθου), the neck of land between the Corinthian and Saronic Gulfs (Κορινθιακὸς, Σαρωνικὸς Κόλπος) connecting Πελοπόννησος with the mainland.
- Ἴσσοί, I. 2. 24, I. 4. 1 (also Ἴσσοί), a large, wealthy, and inhabited city in the S.E. extremity of Κιλικία, at the head of the Ἴσσι-

κὸς Κόλπος (Gulf of Iskenderoon). Here Alexander defeated Darius Codomannus, B.C. 333. "About seven miles S.E. from the borders of Syria are the remains of a considerable city, probably those of Issus or Nicopolis, with the ruins of a temple, a part of the Acropolis, an extensive aqueduct, generally with a double row of arches, running E.S.E. and W.N.W. These, in addition to the walls of the city itself, are built entirely of lava, and still exist in considerable perfection." *Chesney*, vol. i. p. 408.

Ἴωνία, I. 2. 21, and elsewhere; a district on the west coast of Asia Minor in Ἀυδία and Καρία, so called from the Ionian Greeks, who originally colonised it.

K.

Καῖκου πεδῖον, VII. 8. 8, a plain north of the Κάϊκος, between Ἄταρνεύς and Πέργαμος. The Κάϊκος rises in the S.E. of Μυσία, and flows into the Κυμαῖος Κόλπος (Gulf of Sandakli).

Καιναί, II. 4. 28, a large city of Μηδία on the right bank of the Τίγγης. "Mannert, Rennell, Ainsworth, and most modern commentators, identify this town with the modern town Senn, which latter place Mannert and Rennell represent to be nearer the lesser Zab instead of the greater Zab. To me it appears that the locality assigned by Xenophon to Καιναί does not at all suit the modern town of Senn. Nor is there much real similarity of name between the two; although an erroneous way of pronouncing the Latin name Cœnæ creates a delusive appearance of similarity." *Grote*, vol. ix. p. 93.

Καλλίμαχος, a Parrhasian of Ἀρκαδία, a captain of hoplites, offers himself as a volunteer, IV. 1. 7; his stratagem in taking a stronghold of the Ταόχοι, IV. 7. 8-14; he is sent as an ambassador to Σιώνη, V. 6. 14, to Ἡράκλεια, VI. 2. 7; he takes the command of the Ἀρκάδες, VI. 2. 9.

Κάλπησ λιμὴν, VI. 2. 13, 17, VI. 3. 2 (Kirpé Limán), a harbour on the coast of Βιθωνία; for a full description of it see VI. 4. 1-6. "In the present day the Turks distinguish two bays and two promontories; the first bay is called Kirpé Limán, and between it and the second is a promontory, which being sometimes mistaken by sailors for the real Kirpé or Kéfsen

- 'Adasí, is called J'alandjí Kéfkén, or the lying or deceitful Kéfkén." *Ainsworth*, p. 218.
- Καληθονία**, sometimes written *Χαλκηθονία*, VI. 6. 38, the country round about
- Καληθών**, VII. 1. 20 (Kadi-Kioi or Keuy), a Greek city of *Βιθυνία*, on the *Προποντις*, at the entrance of the *Βόσπορος*.
- Καππαδοκία**, a province in the east of Asia Minor. *Κῦρος* passes through the S.W. part of it, I. 2. 20; it is governed by *Μιθριδάτης*, VII. 8. 25.
- Καρδοῦχοι**, III. 5. 15 (Kurds), a warlike people dwelling on the mountains between *Ἀσσυρία* and *Ἀρμενία* (mountains of Kurdistan). The Greeks resolve to pass through their country, III. 5. 17; enter it, IV. 1. 5; their march through the country and conflicts with the inhabitants, IV. 1. 10 to the end of IV. 3. The *Καρδοῦχοι* are not subject to the Persian king, III. 5. 16, VII. 8. 25.
- Κάρσος** or *Κέρσος*, I. 4. 4 (Merkez-Sú), a river flowing between the *Πυλαί* Syro-Ciliciæ into the *Ἰσσηκὸς Κόλπος* (Gulf of Isken-deroon).
- Καστωλοῦ πεδίων**, I. 1. 2, "the plain of Castolus" (so called from a town in *Λυδία*), in which the Persian king or his deputy held a yearly muster of the forces of the sea-coast. ♣
- Καθστρου πεδίων**, I. 2. 11, in *Φρυγία*; but the exact site is doubtful. *Ainsworth* (p. 27) supposes it to be the plain of *Sármench*.
- Κελαιναί**, a large, wealthy, and inhabited city of *Φρυγία*, at the sources of the *Μαλανδρος* and the *Μαρσώας*, where *Κῦρος* and *Ἀρταξέρξης* had each a palace, I. 2. 7. *Ἡέρξης* built a palace and citadel there, I. 2. 9.
- Κεντρίτης** (*Buhtán-Chaï*), a branch of the *Τίγρης*, which separates *Ἀρμενία* from the country of the *Καρδοῦχοι*, IV. 3. 1. It is crossed by the Greeks, IV. 3. 20-25.
- Κεραμῶν ἀγορά**, *lit.* potters' market, a city on the borders of *Μυσία*, I. 2. 10; but its exact site is unknown.
- Κερασούς**, V. 3. 2, V. 4. 1, a Greek city on the coast of the *Ἐθξείνος Πόντος*, a colony of *Σιδώπη*. "Mr. Kinneir and many other authors have naturally presumed, from the analogy of the name, that the modern town Kerasoun (about long. 38° 40') corresponds to the Kerasus of Xenophon." "But it is remarked both by Dr. Cramer and by Mr. Hamilton, that Kera-

soun is too far from Trebizond to admit of Xenophon having marched with the army from the one place to the other in three days; or even in less than ten days, in the judgment of Mr. Hamilton. Accordingly Mr. Hamilton places the site of the Kerasus of Xenophon much nearer to Trebizond (about long. 39° 20', as it stands in Keipert's map of Asia Minor), near a river now called the Kerasoun Dere Sú." *Grote*, vol. ix. p. 173. It is said that the cherry was introduced into Europe from Κερασούς.

- Κέρβερος**, VI. 2. 2, the dog which guarded the entrance to "Αιδης.
Κερτωνός (or **Κερτόνιον**), VII. 8. 8, a town in *Μυσία* between 'Ατ-
 ραμύτιον and Καίκου πεδίων; its exact site is doubtful.
Κηφισόδωρος, an Athenian captain, son of Κηφισοφῶν, IV. 2. 13;
 is killed by the Καρδοῦχοι, IV. 2. 17.
Κίλικες, I. 2. 12, and elsewhere; the inhabitants of Κιλικία.
Κιλικία, I. 2, 21, and elsewhere; a province in the S.E. of Asia
 Minor, bounded N. by the Taurus chain and S. by the Medi-
 terranean. The W. part was called Κιλικία τραχεία, i. e. as-
 pera; the E. Κιλικία πεδία, i. e. campestris; it is described,
 I. 2. 22; it is governed by Σύννεσις, VII. 8. 25.
Κίλισσα, I. 2. 12, and elsewhere; fem. of Κίλιξ=Cilician; epithet
 of 'Επιτάξα.
Κλεαγόρας, VII. 8. 1, "the painter of the dreams in the *Δυκεῶν*."
Κλεάνθεος, a captain in the Grecian army, is killed, V. 1. 17.
Κλέανδρος, harmost of Βυζάντιον, VI. 4. 18; comes to the Greeks
 at Κάλπη, VI. 6. 5; the name frequently occurs in VI. 6; he
 advises Ξενοφῶν not to sail home, VII. 1. 8.
Κλέωνορ, an Arcadian of 'Ορχόμενος, elected general in place of
 'Αγίας, III. 1. 47. The name occurs in many parts of the
 'Ανάβασις, but not deserving special reference.
Κλέαρχος, a Lacedæmonian who was employed in several impor-
 tant commands during the latter part of the Peloponnesian war.
 At its close he persuaded his countrymen to send him to Θράκη
 to protect the 'Ελληνες there against the Thracians. Being re-
 called by the Ephori, he refused to obey their order, and was
 consequently condemned by them to death, II. 6. 4. Being
 now a fugitive, he went to Κύρος, who supplied him with 10,000
 darics; with this sum he levied mercenaries, I. 1. 9; and
 when Κύρος had set out on his expedition he joined him at
 Κελαυαί with 2000 men, I. 2. 9; being the only Greek who

was aware of the real object in view, III. 1. 10. At the battle of Κούναξα he commanded the right wing, I. 8. 4; and Plutarch attributes the loss of the battle to his excess of caution. When the Έλληνες began their retreat, he was tacitly recognised as their commander-in-chief, II. 2. 5; not long after, at an interview treacherously arranged by Τισσαφέρνης, he and four of his colleagues were arrested, II. 5. 31, sent to Ἀρταξέρξης, and beheaded (except Μένων, who perished by a more lingering death). "Queen Parysatis, indeed, from affection to Cyrus, not only furnished many comforts to Clearchus in the prison (by the hands of her surgeon Ktesias), but used all her influence with her son Artaxerxes to save his life; though her efforts were counteracted on this occasion by the superior influence of Queen Statira his wife." *Grote*, vol. ix. p. 97. Ξενοφών describes him as a man who took exceeding delight in war, at all times preferring it to peace; of stern look, harsh voice, and passionate temper; a rigid disciplinarian; feared but not beloved by his soldiers. At the time of his death he was about 50 years old.

- Κλεώνυμος, a brave Laconian, killed by the Καρδοῦχοι, IV. 1. 18.
- Κοιρατάδης, a Theban ("a sort of professional condottiero, or general, looking out for an army to command wherever he could find one, and offering his services to any city which would engage him." *Grote*, vol. ix. p. 220), offers to lead the Έλληνες to Δέλτα τῆς Θράκης, VII. 1. 33. He is elected general, VII. 1. 35; but gives up the post, VII. 1. 41.
- Κοῖται, a tribe independent of the Persian king, VII. 8. 25. The reading is doubtful, and their position still more so.
- Κολοσσαι, a large and wealthy city of Φρυγία, on the river Λύκος (Tchorúk-sú, *Ainsworth*), a branch of the Μαλανδρος. It was afterwards called Χῶναι, from which is derived the modern name (Khonas or Chonos) of the village on or near its site. It is passed by Ἐῦρος, I. 2. 6. It was to the inhabitants of this city that the Apostle Paul addressed his Epistle to the Colossians.
- Κολχίς, a country in Asia, bounded N.W. by the Ἐξείνος Πόντος, and N. by the Caucasian mountains. The boundaries on the other sides are less accurately defined. The Έλληνες here eat honey, which causes vomiting, purging, and delirium, IV. 8. 20; they lay waste the country, IV. 8. 23.

- Κόλχοι**, the inhabitants of Κολχίς, oppose the "Ἕλληνες, IV. 8. 8; but are put to flight, IV. 8. 19; their villages are occupied by the "Ἕλληνες, IV. 8. 22; the name occurs again in IV. 8. 24, V. 2. 1. They are independent of the Persian king, VII. 8. 25.
- Κορσωτή** (Irzah or Ersey), a deserted city (of Ἄραβία, according to *Ξενοφῶν*, I. 5. 4) of *Μεσσοποταμία*, surrounded by the river *Μάσκας*. "The ruins of Corsote are now level with the ground. Upon the plain, channel intersected, not a trace remains, but on the gypsum cliffs above many fragments of ancient buildings occur, and which with existing traditions point out this as the former site of an extensive and well-situated city." *Ainsworth*, p. 79.
- Κορύλας** makes a treaty with the "Ἕλληνες, VI. 1. 2-4. He is governor of *Παφλαγονία*, VII. 8. 25.
- Κοτύωρα**, V. 5. 3, 4, a Greek city on the coast of *Πόντος*, in the country of the *Τιβερηνοί*, where the "Ἕλληνες stayed forty-five days, V. 5. 5. Its modern name is doubtful.
- Κοτυωρίται**, inhabitants of *Κοτύωρα*, refuse to admit the "Ἕλληνες, V. 5. 6; they are more hospitably disposed, V. 5. 25.
- Κρήτες**, I. 2. 9, Cretans, serve as archers in the Greek army, III. 3. 7; they are of great service, IV. 2. 28. The Cretans were celebrated as archers, and frequently served as mercenaries in the armies of other nations.
- Κτησίας**, I. 8. 26, 27, was a native of *Κνίδος* in *Καρία*, a city famed from early times as a seat of medical knowledge. He lived many years (some say seventeen) in Persia, as physician to Ἄρταξέρξης. He wrote in the Ionic dialect a work in twenty-three books on the history of Persia, and another in one book on India, of which only fragments remain.
- Κύδνος** (Persoos-Chai), I. 2. 23, a river of *Κιλικία*, rising in the Taurus chain, and flowing S. through the city *Ταρσός* into the Mediterranean.
- Κύζικος** (ruins of Bäl Kiz), VII. 2. 5, an ancient and powerful city situated on an island of the same name in the *Προποντις*.
- Κυνίσκος**, VII. 1. 13. "Who Kyniskus was we do not know, nor was he probably known to the Cyreians." *Grote*, vol. ix. p. 214.
- Κύριος**, I. 10. 1, of or belonging to *Κύρος*.
- Κύρος** (the younger), the second of the four sons of *Δαρείος Νόθος* and *Παρόσατις*, was appointed by his father satrap of *Λυδία*, *Φρυγία*, and *Καππαδοκία*, I. 1. 2 (about B.C. 407). He aided

the Lacedæmonians with large sums of money in the Peloponnesian war, compare III. 1. 5. His father's illness and death (B.C. 405), his recall from his province, imprisonment, pardon, restoration to his satrapy, plot against his brother, and mode of collecting troops, are detailed in I. 1. He set out from Σάρδεϊς in the spring of B.C. 401, and after marching through Φρυγία, Καππαδοκία, Κιλικία, and Συρία, crossed the Εὐφράτης at Θάψακος, and advanced along the river to Κούναξα. (The position of this place is uncertain. Ξενοφῶν does not mention the name, but states "from the battle-field to Βαβυλῶν is said to be 360 stadia," II. 2. 6. The name is obtained from Plutarch, who places it 500 stadia above Βαβυλῶν.) The details of the Ἀνάβασις are given in I. chaps. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. Here he was met by Ἀρταξέρξης with a large army; a battle was fought, and Κύρος killed, I. 8 (about September B.C. 401). His head and right hand are cut off, I. 10. 1. Mr. Grote, in vol. ix. pp. 65-68, has some excellent remarks on the character of Κύρος, and the probable results to Ἑλλάς if Κύρος had been successful.

A.

- Λακεδαιμόνιοι or Λάκωνες, inhabitants of Λακωνική, reward Ξενοφῶν, VII. 8. 23. Both names, especially the former, occur elsewhere.
- Λαμψακηνοί, VII. 8. 3, inhabitants of
- Λάμψακος (Lamsakí or Lapsakí), VII. 8. 1-6, a city of Μυσία on the coast of the Ἑλλησποντος, celebrated for its wine.
- Λάρισσα, III. 4. 7-12; the name of two cities in Θετταλία, and of five in Asia. The one mentioned by Ξενοφῶν was in Ἀσσυρία, on the east bank of the Τίγρης. Its site has been identified with that of the ruins near Nimroud or Nimrud.
- Λοκρός, VII. 4. 18, an inhabitant of Λοκρίς, the name of two divisions of continental Greece: 1. East Locris, on the Gulf of Opuntius, between Θετταλία and Βοιωτία; 2. West Locris, on the Corinthian Gulf, between Αἰτωλία and Φωκίς.
- Λουσιεύς, IV. 2. 21, an inhabitant of Λουσία, in Ἀρκαδία, a small town.
- Λυδία, I. 2. 5, and elsewhere; a province of Asia Minor, bounded N. by Μυσία, E. by Φρυγία, S. by Καρία, W. by the Αἰγαίων πέλαγος. It is governed by Ἀρτίμας, VII. 8. 25.

- Λυκαονία**, a province of Asia Minor; usually considered by geographers as the S.E. part of *Φρυγία*. *Κύρος* passes through it, and permits the Greeks to plunder it, I. 2. 9. It is governed by *Μιθριδάτης*, VII. 8. 25.
- Λυκείον**, VII. 8. 1, the name of one of the Gymnasia at 'Αθήναι, named after the neighbouring temple of 'Απόλλων *Λύκειος*.
- Λύκιος**, a Syracusan, sent by *Κλέαρχος* to reconnoitre, I. 10. 14, 15.
- Λύκιος**, III. 3. 20, and elsewhere; an Athenian, a commander of cavalry in the Grecian army.
- Λύκος**, the name of four or five rivers in Asia (said to be so called from the swiftness of their currents). The one mentioned in VI. 2. 3 (*Kilij-su*, or *Sword River*) is a small river of *Βιθυνία*, flowing into the *Εβξεινος Πόντος* near 'Ηράκλεια.
- Λύκων**, an Achaean, persuades the Έλληνες to demand supplies, VI. 2. 4. He is sent with others for that purpose to 'Ηράκλεια, VI. 2. 7; he raises a sedition, VI. 2. 9.

M.

- Μάγνητες**, inhabitants of *Μαγνησία*, the most easterly district of *Θετταλία*. They dance at an entertainment, VI. 1. 7-9.
- Μαίανδρος**, I. 2. 5 (*Meinder* or *Mendereh*), a river of Asia Minor, so noted for its windings that from it is derived the verb "to meander." It rises in *Φρυγία*, in the palace of *Κελαιναί*, I. 2. 7, and flows west between *Λυδία* and *Καρία* into the 'Ικάριον *Πέλαγος*.
- Μαισάδης**, VII. 2. 3, the father of *Ξεύθης*.
- Μακέστιος**, VII. 4. 16, an inhabitant of *Μάκεστος*, a town in *Τριφυλία*, the south portion of 'Ηλεις.
- Μάκρωνες**, a tribe between the *Σκυθινοί* and *Κόλχοι*. They are prepared to oppose the Έλληνες, but afterwards make a treaty with them, IV. 8. 1-8. They are not subject to the Persian king, VII. 8. 25.
- Μαντινεῖς**, inhabitants of *Μαντινεία* (*Palaeopoli*), a city in the east of 'Αρκαδία, celebrated for the battle fought under its walls between the Spartans and Thebans, in which 'Επαμεινώνδας fell, v.c. 362; they dance at an entertainment, VI. 1. 11.
- Μαρδόνιοι**, IV. 3. 4, a tribe whose locality is uncertain.
- Μαριανδυνοί**, VI. 2. 1, a people in the N.E. of *Βιθυνία*, on the coast of the *Εβξεινος Πόντος*.

- Μαρσίας**, the name of two rivers in Asia Minor and of one in *Συρία*. The one mentioned in I. 2. 8. is in *Φρυγία*, and flows into the *Μαλανθρος*. *Ξενοφών* says it received its name from the satyr *Μαρσίας*.
- Μαρωνείτης**, VII. 3. 16, an inhabitant of *Μαρόνεια*, a town on the south coast of *Θράκη*.
- Μάσκας**, a river of *Ἀραβία*, I. 5. 4. Ainsworth (p. 78) describes it as a mere channel of the *Εὐφράτης*.
- Μεγάβυζος**, V. 8. 6, 7, the keeper or superintendent of the temple of *Ἄρτεμις* at *Ἔφεσος*.
- Μεγαρείς**, VI. 2. 1, inhabitants of *Μεγαρίς*, a small province of Greece between the Corinthian and Saronic Gulfs (*Κορινθιακὸς, Σαρωνικὸς Κόλπος*).
- Μεγαφέρνης**, a Persian put to death by *Κῦρος*, I. 2. 20.
- Μεθυδριεύς**, IV. 1. 27, IV. 6. 20; an inhabitant of *Μεθύδριον*, a town of *Ἀρκαδία*, N.W. of *Μαντίνεια*.
- Μελινόφαγοι**, VII. 5. 12, a tribe on the east coast of *Θράκη*.
- Μένων**, a Thessalian, brings troops to *Κῦρος*, I. 2. 6; escorts *Ἐπίταξα*, I. 2. 20; loses some of his soldiers in the Cilician mountains, I. 2. 25; addresses his troops and persuades them to cross the *Εὐφράτης* before the others, I. 4. 13; and is rewarded by *Κῦρος* for so doing, I. 4. 17. He commands the left wing at a review, I. 7. 1; and also in the battle, I. 8. 4; is sent with *Χειρίστροφος* to *Ἀριάωτος*, II. 1. 5; remains with him, II. 2. 1; is seized with the other generals by *Τισσαφέρνης*, II. 5. 31. The character given of him by *Ξενοφών* is a very unfavourable one. He was immoderately fond of riches, and to gain them was guilty of perjury, falsehood, and cheating. He had no real affection for any one, and professed friendship only that he might deceive the more easily. *Ξενοφών* tells us that he was not beheaded (as his colleagues were), but suffered a death of lingering torture which lasted a whole year; hence Thirlwall (vol. iv. p. 325) conjectures that probably he was given up to the vengeance of *Παρύσατις*, as a compensation for the rejection of her entreaties on behalf of *Κλέαρχος*.
- Μέσπιλα**, III. 4. 10, 11, a city of *Ἀσσυρία* on the E. bank of the *Τίγρης*, nearly opposite Mosul. It is supposed by Ainsworth to be the Nineveh of Scripture.
- Μήδεια**, III. 4. 11, wife of the king of the *Μῆδοι*.
- Μηδία**, II. 4. 27, III. 5. 15, a large and fertile country of Asia. It

- extended N. to Ἀρμενία, S. to Πέρσις; it is governed by Ἀρβάκας, VII. 8. 25.
- Μῆδοι. Two of their cities, Λάρισσα and Μέσπιλα, were taken, and their empire wrested from them by the Πέρσαι, III. 4. 7-12.
- Μήδοκος, king of the Ὀδρῦσαι, VII. 3. 16, 17, VII. 7. 3.
- Μηδοσάδης, the ambassador of Σεύθης to the Ἕλληνες, VII. 1. 5, and many times in the following chapters.
- Μίδας, a king of Φρυγία, I. 2. 13.
- Μιθριδάτης, mentioned by Ξενοφῶν as most attached to Κῦρος, II. 5. 35. After the death of Κῦρος he went over to Ἀρταξέρξης. He comes to the Ἕλληνες and advises them to surrender, III. 3. 1-4; he attacks them, III. 3. 6, 7, and again, III. 4. 2-5; he is governor of Λυκαονία and Καππαδοκία, VII. 8. 25.
- Μίλῆσιος, I. 10. 3, of or belonging to Μίλητος.
- Μίλητος, I. 1. 7, I. 2. 3, I. 4. 2, a large and powerful city in the N.W. of Κάρια, at the mouth of the Μαίανδρος. Its ruins are difficult to discover on account of the great change made in the coast by the river. "This city is now represented by the ruins of Palatia." *Ainsworth*, p. 6.
- Μιλοκόυθης, a Thracian, deserts to Ἀρταξέρξης, II. 2. 7.
- Μοσσύνοικοι, a tribe in Πόντος, on the coast of the Εὐξείνιος Πόντος; said to be named from the wooden houses (μόσσυνες or μόσσυνοι) in which they dwelt. Their dealings with the Greeks, their habits and customs, are described, V. 4. 2-34. They are not subject to the Persian king, VII. 8. 25.
- Μυριάνδρος, I. 4. 6, a town of Συρία, on the shore of the Gulf of Issus (called by Herodotus ὁ Μυριανδικὸς Κόλπος). "The site of Myriandrus has not yet been positively determined." *Ainsworth*, p. 59.
- Μυσία, I. 2. 11, VII. 8. 8, a province in the N.W. of Asia Minor, forming the N.W. of the district of Anatolia or Anadoli.
- Μυσός, a Mysian, dances at an entertainment, VI. 1. 9-12.

N.

- Νέων, an Asinæan, receives the share of booty assigned to Χειρίσοφος, V. 3. 4. The name is mentioned several times in V. VI. VII. He is elected general in place of Χειρίσοφος, VI. 4. 11. He designs to get the command of the whole army, VII. 2. 2.

- Νίκανδρος*, a Laconian, kills *Δέξιππος*, V. 1. 15.
Νίκαρχος, an Arcadian captain, brings word to the Ἕλληνες of the seizure of the generals, II. 5. 33. He deserts to the Persians, III. 3. 5.
Νικόμαχος, an Ceteæan, commander of light-armed troops, IV. 6. 20.

Ξ.

- Ξανθικλῆς*, an Achæan, is elected general in place of *Σωκράτης*, III. 1. 47.
Ξένιας, a Parrhasian of Ἄρκαδία, accompanies *Κῦρος* to *Δαρεῖος*, I. 1. 2. He is commander of the mercenary force of *Κῦρος*, I. 2. 1, which he brings to *Σάρδεις*, I. 2. 3; he performs the *Λύκαια*, I. 2. 10; some of his soldiers leave him, I. 3. 7; he deserts *Κῦρος*, I. 4. 7.
Ξενοφῶν, an Athenian, son of *Γρύλλος*. The time of his birth is not well ascertained, and the generally received account by no means coincides with the statement he makes of himself in several parts of the Ἄνάβασις. Of his early life but little is known, except that he was an attached friend and diligent hearer of *Σωκράτης*. The circumstances under which he joined the army of *Κῦρος* are mentioned in III. 1. 4-9. He is elected general in the room of *Πρόξενος*, III. 1. 47. He aids in conducting the retreat along the *Τίγρης*, III.; through the territory of the *Καρδοῦχοι*, through Ἄρμενία to *Τραπεζοῦς*, IV.; along the coast of *Πόντος* to *Κοτύωρα*, V.; through *Παφλαγονία* and *Βιθυνία* to *Χρυσόπολις*, VI. He then leads the troops over to *Βυζάντιον*, and shortly after persuades them to enter the service of *Σεύθης*. The Lacedæmonians being at this time at war with *Τισσαφέρνης*, *Ξενοφῶν* is invited to lead his troops back to Asia, and join *Θίβρων* against him. He leads them back and joins *Θίβρων* at *Πέργαμος*, VII. (B.C. 399). In V. 3. 6. we read that he returned from Asia with Ἄγησίλαος (B.C. 394). In V. 3. 7. he mentions his banishment, and his abode at *Ξικιλλοῦς*, and in § 10 his sons, though not by name. The time of his death is not mentioned by any ancient writer. *Ξενοφῶν* himself (Ἑλληνικά, VI. 4. 35) mentions the assassination of Alexander of Phœæ, which is said to have happened B.C. 357. Lucian says that he lived to above

the age of 90. For some interesting particulars of *Ξενοφών*, after he took his leave of the army, see *Grote*, vol. ix. pp. 240-246.

Ξέρξης I., king of Persia, b.c. 485-465, was defeated by the Greeks at the battle of *Σαλαμίς*, b.c. 480. He built the palace at *Κελαίνας*, I. 2. 9.

O.

Ὀδρυσαι, a powerful nation in *Θράκη*, who dwelt in the basin of the Hebrus (*Ἐβρος*). They are mentioned several times in book VII. as giving assistance to *Ξεύθης*.

Οίταιος, IV. 6. 20, an inhabitant of *Οίταια*, a district in the S. of *Θερραλία*, so named from Mt. *Οίτη*.

Ὀλυμπία, V. 3. 7-11, a plain in *Ἥλις*, where the Olympic games were celebrated.

Ὀλύνθιος, an inhabitant of *Ὀλυνθος*, a town of *Μακεδονία* in *Χαλκιδική*, at the head of the Toronaic Gulf. The *Ὀλύνθιοι* are mentioned, I. 2. 6, as forming part of the army of *Μένων*.

Ὀρόντας, son-in-law of *Ἀρταξέρξης*, accompanies *Τισσαφέρνης* and *Ἀρσιᾶος*, II. 4. 8, 9. He is governor of *Ἀρμενία*, III. 5. 17, IV. 3, 4.

Ὀρόντης, a Persian related by blood to the royal family, and distinguished for his military skill. His revolt from *Κῦρος*, his conspiracy, detection, trial, and condemnation, are related in I. 6.

Ὀρχομένιος, II. 5. 39, and elsewhere; an inhabitant of *Ὀρχόμενος*, a town of *Ἀρκαδία*.

Ὀφρύνιον, VII. 8. 5, a small town of the Troad (*Τρωάς*).

Π.

Παρθένιος, VI. 2. 1 (*Sú-Chatí*, *Ainsworth*), a river of *Παφλαγονία*, flowing N.W. into the *Ἐξείνος Πόντος*, and forming in the lower part of its course the boundary between *Παφλαγονία* and *Βιθυνία*.

Παριανοί, VII. 3. 16, inhabitants of

Πάριον, VII. 2. 7, a city on the north coast of *Τρωάς* on the *Προποντίς*.

- Παρθάσιος*, I. 1. 2, and elsewhere; an inhabitant of *Παρθασία*, a district in the S. or S.W. of *Ἀρκαδία*.
- Παρόσαις*, I. 1. 1, daughter of *Ἀρταξέρξης* I., was given by her father in marriage to her brother *Δαρείος Ὀχος*. The feeble character of her husband threw the chief power into her hands, and her administration was little else than a series of murders. She is said to have had thirteen children, of whom four only grew up to manhood. Her partiality for *Κῦρος* is mentioned, I. 1. 4. She intercedes for him, saves his life, gets him restored to his government, and aids him in his plot against *Ἀρταξέρξης*, I. 1. 3-5. We are told that she inflicted the most cruel tortures upon all the real authors of the death of *Κῦρος*, every one of whom successively fell into her power; the last of them was *Τισσαφέρνης*, B.C. 396 or 395. The period of her own death is unknown. Some villages belonging to her are mentioned, I. 4. 9, II. 4. 27.
- Πασίαν*, a Megarian, joins *Κῦρος* at *Σάρδεις* with 700 men, I. 2. 3. Some of his soldiers leave him, I. 3. 7. He deserts *Κῦρος*, I. 4. 7.
- Παταγύας*, a Persian, brings word that the king's army is approaching, I. 8. 1.
- Παφλαγόνες*, VI. 1. 1, and elsewhere; inhabitants of
- Παφλαγονία*, VI. 1. 1, 2, and elsewhere; a province of Asia Minor, bounded N. by the *Εβξεινος Πόντος*, W. by *Βιθυνία*, and E. by *Πόντος*. It is governed by *Κορύλλας*, VI. 1. 2, VII. 8. 25.
- Πελοποννήσιοι*, I. 1. 5, and elsewhere; inhabitants of
- Πελοπόννησος*, I. 4. 2 (Morea), the south part of *Ἑλλάς*, or the peninsula joined to the mainland by the Isthmus of Corinth (*Ἴσθμὸς Κορίνθου*).
- Πέλαται*, I. 2. 10, a city in the W. or N.W. of *Φρυγία*; its exact site is uncertain. Ainsworth (p. 25) identifies it with Baklan Ovah, a plain "remarkable for its level extent and capabilities for manœuvring cavalry. On this plain Mr. Hamilton found numerous remains of antiquity: burial-grounds, with large blocks of stone and broken columns, mutilated inscriptions, and other fragments, scattered over such an extent of surface that, this traveller says, a whole month dedicated to the examination of the numerous villages and burial-grounds which fill this extensive plain would not be too much."
- Πέργαμος*, VII. 8. 7, 23 (Bergama, Bergama, or Pergamo), a cele-

brated city in the south of *Μυσία*, in the district of *Τευθρανία*, on the north bank of the *Κάδικος*, about eighteen miles east of the *Κυμαῖος Κόλπος* (Gulf of Sandakli). It was the capital of the kingdom of Pergamus, and afterwards of the Roman province of Asia. Here was the library (said to contain 200,000 volumes) which for a long time rivalled that of *Ἀλεξάνδρεια*, and the formation of which occasioned the invention of parchment (*charta pergamena*). Pergamus was an early seat of Christianity, and one of the seven churches of Asia. Ainsworth (pp. 230, 231) informs us that "Bergma still presents the remains of its former grandeur. Its present population is estimated at 15,000 souls. The streets are wider and cleaner than is usual in Asiatic towns. An immensely large building, formerly a Christian church, now a mosque, is said to be the church in which the disciples met, to whom St. John directed his letter."

Περίνθιοι, VII. 2. 8, 11, inhabitants of

Περίνθος, VII. 2. 8, 11 (*Haraklí* or *Ereglí*), a town in *Θράκη*, on the *Προποντις* (Sea of Marmara). It is celebrated for the obstinate resistance which it offered to Philip of Macedon. Under the Romans it continued to be a flourishing town, and its commercial importance is attested by its numerous coins, which are still extant. At a later time, but not earlier than the fourth century of the Christian era, it was called *Heraclea*.

Πίγρης, I. 2. 17, and elsewhere; an interpreter to *Κῦρος*.

Πισιδαι, inhabitants of *Πισιδική*, a province of Asia Minor, between *Παμφυλία* and *Φρυγία*. *Κῦρος* pretends that he is about to make an expedition against them, I. 2. 1. They were a warlike race, and maintained their independence, under petty chieftains, against all the rulers of Asia Minor. The Romans never subdued them in their mountain-fortresses, although they took some of the towns on the outskirts of their country.

Πολυβώτης, IV. 5. 24, an Athenian captain, seizes all the inhabitants of a village.

Πολυκράτης, an Athenian, collects all the ships he can at *Τραπεζοῦς*, V. 1. 16. He accompanies *Ξενοφῶν* to *Σεῖθης*, VII. 2. 17.

Πολύνικος, a messenger from *Θίβρων* to the *Ἕλληνες*, VII. 6. 1. He tells *Σεῖθης* that *Ξενοφῶν* will be put to death if he falls into the hands of the *Λακεδαιμόνιοι*, VII. 6. 43.

Πολύστρατος, III. 3. 20, the father of *Λύκιος*.

- Πόντος**, IV. 8. 22, and elsewhere; 1. The name of the sea which washes the north coast of Asia Minor. The epithet *εὖξεινος* (Ionic for *εὐξεινος*), *hospitable*, is said to be derived from the favourite principle of euphemism (*i. e.* abstaining from words of ill omen) among the Ἕλληνες. The original epithet was *ἄξεινος*, *inhospitable*, owing to the savage character of the tribes on its coast, and the supposed terrors of its navigation. 2. The name of a district in the N.E. of Asia Minor, bounded N. by the *Εὖξεινος Πόντος*, S. by *Καππαδοκία*, and W. by *Παφλαγονία* and *Γαλατία*.
- Προκλῆς**, governor of *Τευθρανία*, informs the Ἕλληνες of the death of *Κῦρος*, II. 1. 3; comes to them again, II. 2. 1.
- Πρόξενος**, a native of *Θῆβαι* in *Βοιωτία*, is directed by *Κῦρος* to bring him all the soldiers he can, I. 1. 11. He arrives at *Ξάρδεις* with 2000 men, I. 2. 3. He is stationed in the battle next to *Κλέαρχος*, I. 8. 4. He is addressed by a messenger of *Ἀριαῖος*, II. 4. 15, 16; is seized with the other generals by *Τισσαφέρνης*, II. 5. 31; and beheaded, II. 6. 1. *Ξενοφῶν* speaks of him as a man desirous of gaining reputation, power, and wealth by honourable conduct alone; especially anxious to secure the affections of his soldiers; able to command an orderly and well-disciplined army, but incapable of inspiring respect or fear; standing in greater awe of his men than they of him, and more afraid of disobliging them than they of disobeying him. He was thirty years old at the time of his death. *Ξενοφῶν* states that he was invited by *Πρόξενος* to join the expedition, III. 1. 4, 8, 9.
- Πυθαγόρας**, I. 4. 2, a Lacedæmonian admiral.
- Πύλαι**, I. 5. 5, a town on the *Εὐφράτης*; its position is uncertain. Mr. Grote places it three miles below Hit; Colonel Chesney lower down, twenty-five miles from Hit; and Mr. Ainsworth as much as seventy geographical miles lower than Hit.
- Πύλαι τῆς Κιλικίας καὶ τῆς Συρίας** (pass of Beilan?), an important pass between *Κιλικία* and *Συρία*, lying between the *Ἴσσοικὸς Κόλπος* (Gulf of Issus or Iskenderoon) on the W., and Mount *Ἀμανός* (*Jáwur Tágh*, *Ainsworth*) on the E., through which *Κῦρος* and his army passed, I. 4. 4-6. "It was a narrow road for the length of nearly half a mile, between the sea on one side and the steep cliffs terminating Mount Amanus on the other." *Grote*, vol. ix. p. 36.

Πύραμος (Jihan or Jeihún), a river crossed by Κῦρος and his army, I. 4. 1. It rises in the Taurus chain, and flows in a southerly direction through the east of Κιλικία into the Ἴσσυκὸς Κόλπος. Πυρρῆβίαις, VI. 5. 11, an Arcadian captain. Πῶλος succeeds Ἀναξίβιος in the naval command, VII. 2. 5.

P.

Ῥαθίνης, sent by Φαρνάβαζος with troops against the Ἑλληνες, VI. 5. 7.
Ῥωπάραις, VII. 8. 25, governor of Βαβυλῶν.

Σ.

Σαλμυδησσός, VII. 5. 12 (Midiah or Midiyah), a town on the east coast of Θράκη.
Σαμόλας, an Achæan, is sent on an embassy, V. 6. 14; he has the command of a company, VI. 5. 11.
Σάρδεις, I. 2. 2, and elsewhere (Sart); the capital of the great Lydian monarchy, and during the Persian empire the residence of the satraps of Λυδία, stood at the north foot of Mount Τρωῶλος, on the river Πακτωλός, about thirty stadia above its junction with the Ἐρμος. "With the exception of a few black tents of Yurúka, or wandering Turkomans, the only habitation described by travellers as existing at Sardis, now called Sárt, is that of a Greek miller, who has taken advantage of one of the streams which flow past the Acropolis to turn the wheel of his mill." *Ainsworth*, pp. 8, 9.
Σελινοῦς, V. 3. 8, a river flowing by the temple of Ἄρτεμις at Ἐφεσος; and another near the temple built by **Ἡεροφῶν**.
Σεύθης, king (τῶν ἐν Εὐρώπῃ Θρακῶν, VII. 8. 25), proposes to the Ἑλληνες to enter his service, that by their aid he may recover his kingdom. At length, induced principally by **Ἡεροφῶν**, they accept his offers; and with their assistance he obtains an easy victory over the mountain-tribes, and regains the whole of his father's dominions. Disputes arise about paying the Ἑλληνες for their services, and **Σεύθης**, at the instigation of Ἡρακλείδης, endeavours to elude his obligations. He is, however, at length persuaded by **Ἡεροφῶν** to pay the

- stipulated sum; upon the receipt of which, the Ἕλληνες go back again into Asia. The above circumstances are related in book VII.
- Σηλυβρία, VII. 5. 15 (Selivria or Silivri), a town in Θράκη, on the Προποντίς.
- Σικάνιος, III. 4. 46, an inhabitant of Σικωνία, or of Σικυών; the former is the name of a district in the north-east of Πελοπόννησος, the latter its chief town.
- Σιλανός, an Ambracian soothsayer, rewarded by Κύρος for a successful prophecy, I. 7. 18. He reveals to the soldiers a project of Ξενοφών, V. 6. 17; his reason for so doing, V. 6. 18. The soldiers threaten to punish him if he attempts to leave them, V. 6. 34. He hires a ship at Ἡράκλεια, and escapes, VI. 4. 13.
- Σιλανός, of Μάκεστος, mentioned in VII. 4. 16, as giving the signal with a trumpet.
- Σινοαῖς, IV. 8. 22, and elsewhere; inhabitants of Σινώπη. They send the Ἕλληνες provisions, VI. 1. 15.
- Σινώπη, VI. 1. 15 (Sinoub), a celebrated city of Παφλαγονία, on the coast of the Εὐξεινος Πόντος. It was the birth-place and residence of Mithridates the Great, who enlarged and beautified it. It was taken, after an obstinate resistance, by the Romans under Lucullus, and made a Roman colony. "The few traces of its former magnificence consist of Roman arches, the remains of an aqueduct, numerous fragments of ancient architecture, such as columns, architraves, &c." *Ainsworth*, p. 212.
- Σιτάκας, a king of the Thracian tribe of the Ὀδρυσαι. A song called the Sitalce, in honour of him, is sung by a Thracian, VI. 1. 6.
- Σιττάκη, a large and populous city of Βαβυλωνία, "fifteen stadia from the river Τίγρης," passed by the Ἕλληνες, II. 4. 13.
- Σικιλοῦς, V. 3. 7, 8, a town in Τριφυλία (the south part of Ἠλίας), on the river Σελινοῦς, where Ξενοφών resided after his banishment.
- Σκύθαι, Scythians, mentioned as archers in the Hellenic army, III. 4. 15.
- Σκυθῖνοι, IV. 7. 18, IV. 8. 1; a tribe on the west of Ἀρμενία, between the rivers Ἄρπασος (Arpá-chai) and Ἄψαρος (Tchórák-sá, *Ainsworth*).

- Σμίκτης**, an Arcadian general; he and his division are attacked and killed by the **Θρηῆκες**, VI. 3. 4, 5.
- Σόλοι**, I. 2. 24, a city on the coast of **Κιλικία**. It was destroyed by Tigranes, but restored by Pompey after his war with the pirates, and peopled with the survivors of the defeated bands. From that time it was called Pompeiopolis. From the corruption of the Attic dialect among the Athenian colonists of **Σόλοι** is said to be derived the grammatical word *solecism*. "The ruins of this place exist near the site now called *Mézetli*." *Ainsworth*, p. 48.
- Σούσα**, II. 4. 25, III. 5. 15 (ruins of Sus or Shus), situated on the **Χοάσπη**, an affluent of the **Τίγρης**. It is said to have been the winter residence of the Persian kings.
- Σοφαίνετος**, a Stymphalian, joins **Κύρος** with 1000 hoplites, I. 2. 3; he goes to meet **Ἀριαῖος**, II. 5. 37; he is called one of the oldest of the generals, V. 3. 1, VI. 5. 13.
- Σπιθριδάτης**, a Persian commander, sent by **Φαρνάβαζος** to oppose the **Ἕλληνες**, VI. 5. 7.
- Στρατοκλῆς**, IV. 2. 28, commander of the **Κρήτες**.
- Στυμφάλιος**, I. 2. 3, and elsewhere; an inhabitant of **Στύμφαλος**, a town in the north-east of **Ἀρκαδία**.
- Σύννεσις**, I. 2. 12, and elsewhere in chaps. 2. and 4, VII. 8. 25; king of **Κιλικία**. When **Κύρος** reached **Ταρσός**, the Cilician capital, he found that Menon's soldiers had plundered the city, and that **Σύννεσις** had fled to a stronghold among the mountains. His wife **Ἐπίαξα** persuaded him to have an interview with **Κύρος**, to whom he gave a large sum of money, receiving in return gifts of honour. "It seems evident, though Xenophon does not directly tell us so, that the resistance of Syennesis (this was a standing name or title of the hereditary princes of **Κιλικία** under the Persian crown) was a mere feint; that the visit of Epyaxa with a supply of money to Cyrus, and the admission of Menon and his division over Mount Taurus, were manœuvres in collusion with him; and that, thinking Cyrus would be successful, he was disposed to support his cause, yet careful at the same time to give himself the air of having been overpowered, in case Artaxerxes should prove victorious." *Grote*, vol. ix. p. 28.
- Συρακόσιος**, I. 2. 9, and elsewhere; an inhabitant of **Συράκουσαι** or **Συράκοσαι** (Syracuse), the wealthiest and most populous city

- in Sicily. It is said to derive its name from the lake (or marsh) *Συρακά*, near which it was situated.
- Συρία*, I. 4. 4, 6, a country of western Asia, the boundaries of which may be said to be N. *Κιλικία* and *Καππαδοκία*, E. the *Εὐφράτης*, S. *Παλαιστίνη* (Palestine), S.W. *Φοινίκη*, W. the Mediterranean. It was governed by *Βέλεσος*, I. 4. 10, VII. 8. 25.
- Σύροι*, I. 4. 9, inhabitants of *Συρία*.
- Σωκράτης*, an Achæan, arrives at *Σάρδεις* with 500 hoplites, I. 2. 3; he is seized with the other generals by *Τισσαφέρνης*, II. 5. 31; and put to death, II. 6. 1. *Ξενοφών* describes him as a brave warrior and a good friend. At the time of his death he was about thirty-five years of age.
- Σωκράτης*, a Syracusan, joins *Κῦρος* at *Κελαίαι* with 300 hoplites, I. 2. 9.
- Σωκράτης*, the celebrated Athenian philosopher, is consulted by *Ξενοφών* with regard to his expedition, and advises him how to act, III. 1. 5-7.
- Σωτηρίδης*, a Sicyonian, reproaches *Ξενοφών*, and is punished by his comrades, III. 4. 46-49.

T.

- Ταμώς*, an Egyptian, was lieutenant-governor of *Ἰωνία* under *Τισσαφέρνης*. He attached himself to the service of *Κῦρος*, and aided him in the siege of *Μίλητος*. He joined *Κῦρος* at *Ἴσσοί* with twenty-five ships, I. 4. 2. After the death of *Κῦρος*, *Ταμώς* fled to Egypt, where *Psammethicus* (the king of the country) put him to death, in order to possess himself of his money and ships. He is mentioned in II. 1. 3 as being the father of *Γλοῦς*.
- Ταόχοι*, a warlike people, not subject to the Persian king, on the northern borders of *Ἀρμενία*. They oppose the *Ἕλληνες*, IV. 6. 5. The *Ἕλληνες* march into their country, and take one of their strongholds, IV. 7. 1-14. "The name is still preserved, according to Delisle, by that of *Taochir*, a district of Georgia." *Ainsworth*, p. 181.
- Ταρσοί*, I. 2. 26; *Ταρσός*, I. 2. 23, 25 (*Tersous* or *Tersus*), a celebrated city of *Κιλικία*, on the river *Κύδνος*, about twelve miles from its mouth, in a very large and fertile plain at the foot of

- Mount Taurus. It was the birth-place of the Apostle Paul. It was plundered by Menon's soldiers, I. 2. 26. "This city contains a castle and upwards of 6000 good houses, situated among beautiful gardens." *Chesney*, vol. i. p. 356.
- Τευθρανία*, II. 1. 3, a district forming the south-west angle of *Μυσία*; it was also called Pergamene, from the city of *Πέργαμος*, which was in it.
- Τηλεβόας*, IV. 4. 3, a small river of western *Ἀρμενία*, flowing into the *Εὐφράτης*. "The *Κάρά-σύ* (Blackwater), recognised by many as the Teleboas of our author." *Ainsworth*, p. 172.
- Τήρης*, VII. 2. 22, an ancestor of *Ξεύθης*.
- Τηρίβαζος*, IV. 4. 7, IV. 5. 1, and VII. 8. 25; lieutenant-governor of western *Ἀρμενία*, and governor of the *Φασιανοί* and *Ἐσπερίται*. When the *Ἕλληνες* reached his territory he proposed a truce to them. The terms were accepted; but as he kept following them, and as it was reported that he intended to fall on them in a certain mountain-pass, they attacked his camp, put his troops to flight, and captured his tent.
- Τιβαρηνοί*, a people in the north of *Πόντος*. The *Ἕλληνες*, after some hesitation, receive presents from them and treat them as friends, V. 5. 1-3. They are independent of the Persian king, VII. 8. 25.
- Τίγρης*, I. 7. 15, and elsewhere; a river of western Asia, flowing from several sources on the south side of that part of the Taurus chain called Niphates (*Νιφάτης* = snow-mountain), in *Ἀρμενία*. It falls into the Persian Gulf. Its tributaries mentioned in the Anabasis are, on the E. the *Κεντρίτης*, *Ζαπδρας*, and *Φύσκος*, on the W. the *Εὐφράτης*. Its course is S.E.
- Τιμασίων*, III. 1. 47, and elsewhere; a Dardanian who had served in Asia under *Κλέαρχος* and *Δερκυλλίδας* before he entered the service of *Κύρος*. He was elected general in the place of *Κλέαρχος*, and he and *Ξενοφών*, being the youngest of the new leaders, were appointed to command the rear-guard. His name occurs many times in the following books, showing that he took an active part in the retreat, &c., but not deserving any special mention.
- Τιμησίθεος*, an inhabitant of *Τραπεζοῦς*, acts as interpreter between the *Ἕλληνες* and *Μοσσύνοικοι*, V. 4. 2-4.
- Τισαφέρνης*, a Persian who was appointed by *Δαρείος* satrap of part of Asia Minor. After the death of *Δαρείος*, he accused

Kṓros of plotting against Ἀραξέρξης, I. 1. 3. *Kṓros* and *Τισσαφέρνης* had many disputes about the cities in the satrapy of the latter, and all the Ionian cities except *Μίλητος* revolted to *Kṓros*, I. 1. 6. He informed Ἀραξέρξης of the forces which *Kṓros* was raising, and of his intended expedition, I. 2. 4, 5. At the battle of *Κόιναξα* he commanded one division of the king's army, I. 7. 12, consisting of cavalry, and stationed on the left, I. 8. 9. His division was not put to flight, I. 10. 7. When the Ἕλληνες had begun their retreat he professed friendship for them, and anxiety to serve them, and promised to conduct them home in safety. He made a treaty with them, II. 3. 28. His conduct soon proved suspicious; and when *Κλέαρχος* sought an explanation, *Τισσαφέρνης* proposed an interview, at which *Κλέαρχος* and four other generals who accompanied him were treacherously arrested, II. 5. 32. After this he continued to harass the Ἕλληνες on their march until they reached the Karduchian mountains, at which point he gave up the pursuit. As a reward for his services, Ἀραξέρξης invested him with all the authority which *Kṓros* had enjoyed in western Asia. About 395 he was accused of neglect and treachery. *Παρόσατις* lent all her influence to crush the enemy of her favourite son; and *Tithraustes* was commissioned by Ἀραξέρξης to put him to death, and succeed him in his government. He was surprised and slain in his bath, and his head sent to the king.

Τολμίδης, an Eleian, mentioned as the "best crier," II. 2. 20.

Τράλλεις, a city of *Λυδία*, near the *Μαίανδρος*, in which the families of *Ξεσίας* and *Πασίων* lived, I. 4. 8.

Τραπεζοῦς (*Trebizond*), a Greek city in the north-east of *Πόντος*, on the coast; reached by the Ἕλληνες, IV. 8. 22.

Τρφάς, a district in the north-west of *Μυσία*, traversed by the Ἕλληνες, VII. 8. 7.

Τυραῖον, a city in the north-west of *Λυκαονία*, where *Kṓros* reviews his army, I. 2. 14. Its exact site cannot be identified. "Arkút Khán, a small town of about 200 houses, and where there is a large khan, in part constructed out of ancient hewn stones and other fragments of antiquity. . . . This site corresponds by distances, both from *Thymbrium* on the one side, and from *Iconium* on the other, with *Tyriæum*." *Ainsworth*, p. 33.

Φ.

- Φαίλος**, a Greek in the service of *Τισσαφέρης*, and sent by him to order the *Ἕλληνες* to lay down their arms and submit to the king, II. 1. 7, 8.
- Φαρνάβαζος**, governor of the *Βιθυνοί*, VII. 8. 25. His cavalry attack the *Ἕλληνες*, VI. 4. 24. He promises *Ἀναξίβιος* great rewards if he will get the *Ἕλληνες* out of *Ἀσία*, VII. 1. 2; but afterwards neglects him, and treats with *Ἀρίσταρχος*, VII. 2. 7.
- Φασιανοί**. In IV. 6. 5 *Ξενοφῶν* means, apparently, a tribe dwelling near the Armenian *Φᾶσις* or *Ἀράξης*; but in V. 6. 36, the inhabitants of the Colchian town *Φᾶσις*; which are meant in VII. 8. 25 is uncertain.
- Φᾶσις** (*Aras*), IV. 6. 4, a river of *Ἀρμενία*, flowing east into the Caspian Sea. It is generally supposed that this river is the same as the Armenian *Ἀράξης*.
- Φᾶσις** (*Pati*), V. 6. 36, V. 7. 1; a town of *Κολχίς*, near the mouth of a river of the same name.
- Φιλήσιος**, an Achaean, chosen in the place of *Μένων*, III. 1. 47; he is appointed (being one of the oldest of the general) to proceed on shipboard, V. 3. 1; he is sent with others to *Ἀναξίβιος*, VII. 1. 32.
- Φλιάσιος**, VII. 8. 1, an inhabitant of *Φλιώις*, a town in the north-east of *Πελοπόννησος*.
- Φουρική**, I. 4. 5, a country of Asia (consisting of a mountainous strip of coastland, not more than ten or twelve miles broad), bounded W. by the Mediterranean, and E. by *Cœlesyria* and Palestine. It was under the government of *Δέρης*, VII. 8. 25.
- Φολίη**, V. 5. 10, a mountain forming part of the boundary between *Ἀρκαδία* and *Ἥλις*.
- Φρυγία**, I. 2. 19, an inland province of Asia Minor, situate nearly in the centre of it. It was governed by *Ἀρτακάμας*, VII. 8. 25.
- Φρόνισκος**, an Achaean, one of the generals who invited the *Ἕλληνες* to enter the service of *Ξείθης*, VII. 2. 1, 2.
- Φύσκος** (*Adhem*), an eastern tributary of the *Τίγρης*, crossed by the *Ἕλληνες*, II. 4. 25.
- Φωκαίς**, I. 10. 2, a female inhabitant of *Φώκαια*, the northernmost of the Ionian cities on the west coast of Asia Minor.

X.

- Χαλδαῖοι**, a people described by *Ξενοφῶν* as free and valiant, and forming part of the mercenary force of *Ὀρόντας* and *Ἄρτουχας*, IV. 3. 4; as independent of the Persian king, VII. 8. 25. The part of Asia in which they lived is uncertain. Strabo (XII. 3) says, "those who are now called *Χαλδαῖοι* were formerly called *Χάλυβες*."
- Χάλος** (Chalib or Koweik), I. 4. 9, a river rising in the north of *Συρία*, and terminating after a southern course in a marshy lake.
- Χάλυβες**, a people inhabiting the country above *Ἀρμενία*, north of Mount Ararat and the river *Φῶσις*. They oppose the *Ἕλληνες*, IV. 6. 5. "The most valiant people through whose territories the *Ἕλληνες* had passed," IV. 7. 15. Their arms, tactics, dwellings, and mode of harassing the *Ἕλληνες*, described, IV. 7. 15-17. They are independent of the Persian king, VII. 8. 25.
- Χάλυβες**, V. 5. 1, a people on the coast of *Πόντος*, few in number, and subject to the *Μοσσύνιοι*; most of them gained a living by working iron.
- Χαρμάνδη**, I. 5. 10, a large city on the *Εὐφράτης*. "I am inclined to think that Charmandi must have been nearly opposite Pylæ, lower down than Hit. But Major Rennell (p. 107) and Mr. Ainsworth (p. 84) suppose Charmandi to be the same place as the modern Hit (the Is of Herodotus). There is no other known town with which we can identify it." *Grote*, vol. ix. p. 46.
- Χαρμῖνος**, a Laconian, sent by *Θίβρων* to the *Ἕλληνες*, VII. 6. 1. He is addressed by *Ξενοφῶν*, VII. 7. 56.
- Χειρίσοφος**, a Lacedæmonian, joined *Κύρος* at *Ἴσσοί* with 700 hoplites, I. 4. 3. After the battle he was sent by *Κλέαρχος* to *Ἀρταῖος*, to offer him the throne, II. 1. 5. He returned to the army, II. 2. 1. After the arrest of the generals he took an active part in encouraging the soldiers, and on the motion of *Ξενοφῶν* was appointed, as being a Lacedæmonian, to lead the van of the retreating army. He and *Ξενοφῶν* co-operated cordially together, and only once did any difference arise between them, IV. 6. 3. When the *Ἕλληνες* had arrived at *Τραπεζοῦς*, he went to *Ἀναξίβιος* to try to obtain ships to transport them to Europe, but without success. On his return to the army,

- Mount Taurus. It was the birth-place of the Apostle Paul. It was plundered by Menon's soldiers, I. 2. 26. "This city contains a castle and upwards of 6000 good houses, situated among beautiful gardens." *Chesney*, vol. i. p. 356.
- Τευθρανία*, II. 1. 3, a district forming the south-west angle of *Μυσία*; it was also called Pergamene, from the city of *Πέργαμος*, which was in it.
- Τηλεβόας*, IV. 4. 3, a small river of western *Ἀρμενία*, flowing into the *Εὐφράτης*. "The *Kára-sú* (Blackwater), recognised by many as the Teleboas of our author." *Ainsworth*, p. 172.
- Τήρης*, VII. 2. 22, an ancestor of *Ξεύθης*.
- Τηρίβαζος*, IV. 4. 7, IV. 5. 1, and VII. 8. 25; lieutenant-governor of western *Ἀρμενία*, and governor of the *Φασιανοί* and *Ἐσπερίται*. When the *Ἕλληνες* reached his territory he proposed a truce to them. The terms were accepted; but as he kept following them, and as it was reported that he intended to fall on them in a certain mountain-pass, they attacked his camp, put his troops to flight, and captured his tent.
- Τιβαρηνοί*, a people in the north of *Πόντος*. The *Ἕλληνες*, after some hesitation, receive presents from them and treat them as friends, V. 5. 1-3. They are independent of the Persian king, VII. 8. 25.
- Τίγρης*, I. 7. 15, and elsewhere; a river of western Asia, flowing from several sources on the south side of that part of the Taurus chain called Niphates (*Νιφάτης*=snow-mountain), in *Ἀρμενία*. It falls into the Persian Gulf. Its tributaries mentioned in the Anabasis are, on the E. the *Κεντρίτης*, *Ζαπάτας*, and *Φύσκος*, on the W. the *Εὐφράτης*. Its course is S.E.
- Τιμασίων*, III. 1. 47, and elsewhere; a Dardanian who had served in Asia under *Κλέαρχος* and *Δερκυλλίδας* before he entered the service of *Κύρος*. He was elected general in the place of *Κλέαρχος*, and he and *Ξενοφών*, being the youngest of the new leaders, were appointed to command the rear-guard. His name occurs many times in the following books, showing that he took an active part in the retreat, &c., but not deserving any special mention.
- Τιμησίθεος*, an inhabitant of *Τραπεζοῦς*, acts as interpreter between the *Ἕλληνες* and *Μοσσύνοικοι*, V. 4. 2-4.
- Τισσαφέρνης*, a Persian who was appointed by *Δαρείος* satrap of part of Asia Minor. After the death of *Δαρείος*, he accused

Kūros of plotting against *Ἀρταξέρξης*, I. 1. 3. *Kūros* and *Τισσαφέρνης* had many disputes about the cities in the satrapy of the latter, and all the Ionian cities except *Μίλητος* revolted to *Kūros*, I. 1. 6. He informed *Ἀρταξέρξης* of the forces which *Kūros* was raising, and of his intended expedition, I. 2. 4, 5. At the battle of *Κούναξα* he commanded one division of the king's army, I. 7. 12, consisting of cavalry, and stationed on the left, I. 8. 9. His division was not put to flight, I. 10. 7. When the *Ἕλληνες* had begun their retreat he professed friendship for them, and anxiety to serve them, and promised to conduct them home in safety. He made a treaty with them, II. 3. 28. His conduct soon proved suspicious; and when *Κλέαρχος* sought an explanation, *Τισσαφέρνης* proposed an interview, at which *Κλέαρχος* and four other generals who accompanied him were treacherously arrested, II. 5. 32. After this he continued to harass the *Ἕλληνες* on their march until they reached the Karduchian mountains, at which point he gave up the pursuit. As a reward for his services, *Ἀρταξέρξης* invested him with all the authority which *Kūros* had enjoyed in western Asia. About 395 he was accused of neglect and treachery. *Παρόσατις* lent all her influence to crush the enemy of her favourite son; and *Tithraustes* was commissioned by *Ἀρταξέρξης* to put him to death, and succeeded him in his government. He was surprised and slain in his bath, and his head sent to the king.

Τολμίδης, an Eleian, mentioned as the "best crier," II. 2. 20.

Τράλλεις, a city of *Λυδία*, near the *Μαίανδρος*, in which the families of *Ξεσίας* and *Πασίων* lived, I. 4. 8.

Τραπεζοῦς (*Trebizond*), a Greek city in the north-east of *Πόντος*, on the coast; reached by the *Ἕλληνες*, IV. 8. 22.

Τρφάς, a district in the north-west of *Μυσία*, traversed by the *Ἕλληνες*, VII. 8. 7.

Τυραίων, a city in the north-west of *Λυκαονία*, where *Kūros* reviews his army, I. 2. 14. Its exact site cannot be identified. "'Arkút Khán, a small town of about 200 houses, and where there is a large khan, in part constructed out of ancient hewn stones and other fragments of antiquity. . . . This site corresponds by distances, both from *Thymbrium* on the one side, and from *Iconium* on the other, with *Tyriæum*." *Ainsworth*, p. 33.

Φ.

- Φαλίνοσ**, a Greek in the service of *Τισσαφέρνης*, and sent by him to order the *Ἕλληνες* to lay down their arms and submit to the king, II. 1. 7, 8.
- Φαρνάβαζοσ**, governor of the *Βιθυνοί*, VII. 8. 25. His cavalry attack the *Ἕλληνες*, VI. 4. 24. He promises *Ἀναξίβιοσ* great rewards if he will get the *Ἕλληνες* out of *Ἀσία*, VII. 1. 2; but afterwards neglects him, and treats with *Ἀρίσταρχοσ*, VII. 2. 7.
- Φασιανοί**. In IV. 6. 5 *Ξενοφῶν* means, apparently, a tribe dwelling near the Armenian *Φᾶσισ* or *Ἀράξης*; but in V. 6. 36, the inhabitants of the Colchian town *Φᾶσισ*; which are meant in VII. 8. 25 is uncertain.
- Φᾶσισ** (Aras), IV. 6. 4, a river of *Ἀρμενία*, flowing east into the Caspian Sea. It is generally supposed that this river is the same as the Armenian *Ἀράξης*.
- Φᾶσισ** (Pati), V. 6. 36, V. 7. 1; a town of *Κολχίσι*, near the mouth of a river of the same name.
- Φιλήσιοσ**, an Achæan, chosen in the place of *Μένων*, III. 1. 47; he is appointed (being one of the oldest of the general-) to proceed on shipboard, V. 3. 1; he is sent with others to *Ἀναξίβιοσ*, VII. 1. 32.
- Φλιάσιοσ**, VII. 8. 1, an inhabitant of *Φλιοῦσ*, a town in the north-east of *Πελοπόννησοσ*.
- Φοινίκη**, I. 4. 5, a country of Asia (consisting of a mountainous strip of coastland, not more than ten or twelve miles broad), bounded W. by the Mediterranean, and E. by *Coelesyria* and Palestine. It was under the government of *Δέρμησ*, VII. 8. 25.
- Φολόη**, V. 5. 10, a mountain forming part of the boundary between *Ἀρκαδία* and *Ἥλισ*.
- Φρυγία**, I. 2. 19, an inland province of Asia Minor, situate nearly in the centre of it. It was governed by *Ἀρτακάμοσ*, VII. 8. 25.
- Φρόνισκοσ**, an Achæan, one of the generals who invited the *Ἕλληνες* to enter the service of *Ξεῦθησ*, VII. 2. 1, 2.
- Φύσκοσ** (Adhem), an eastern tributary of the *Τίγρησ*, crossed by the *Ἕλληνες*, II. 4. 25.
- Φωκαίσι**, I. 10. 2, a female inhabitant of *Φώκαια*, the northernmost of the Ionian cities on the west coast of Asia Minor.

X.

- Χαλδαῖοι**, a people described by *Ξενοφῶν* as free and valiant, and forming part of the mercenary force of *Ὀρόντας* and *Ἀρτούχας*, IV. 3. 4; as independent of the Persian king, VII. 8. 25. The part of Asia in which they lived is uncertain. *Strabo* (XII. 3) says, "those who are now called *Χαλδαῖοι* were formerly called *Χάλυβες*."
- Χάλος** (Chalib or Koweik), I. 4. 9, a river rising in the north of *Συρία*, and terminating after a southern course in a marshy lake.
- Χάλυβες**, a people inhabiting the country above *Ἀρμενία*, north of Mount Ararat and the river *Φάσις*. They oppose the *Ἕλληνες*, IV. 6. 5. "The most valiant people through whose territories the *Ἕλληνες* had passed," IV. 7. 15. Their arms, tactics, dwellings, and mode of harassing the *Ἕλληνες*, described, IV. 7. 15-17. They are independent of the Persian king, VII. 8. 25.
- Χάλυβες**, V. 5. 1, a people on the coast of *Πόντος*, few in number, and subject to the *Μοσσάνοικοι*; most of them gained a living by working iron.
- Χαρμάνδη**, I. 5. 10, a large city on the *Εὐφράτης*. "I am inclined to think that Charmandi must have been nearly opposite Pylæ, lower down than Hit. But Major Rennell (p. 107) and Mr. Ainsworth (p. 84) suppose Charmandi to be the same place as the modern Hit (the Is of Herodotus). There is no other known town with which we can identify it." *Grote*, vol. ix. p. 46.
- Χαρμίνος**, a Laconian, sent by *Θίβρων* to the *Ἕλληνες*, VII. 6. 1. He is addressed by *Ξενοφῶν*, VII. 7. 56.
- Χεῖρισσοφος**, a Lacedæmonian, joined *Κύρος* at *Ἴσσοί* with 700 hoplites, I. 4. 3. After the battle he was sent by *Κλέαρχος* to *Ἀρτιάδος*, to offer him the throne, II. 1. 5. He returned to the army, II. 2. 1. After the arrest of the generals he took an active part in encouraging the soldiers, and on the motion of *Ξενοφῶν* was appointed, as being a Lacedæmonian, to lead the van of the retreating army. He and *Ξενοφῶν* co-operated cordially together, and only once did any difference arise between them, IV. 6. 3. When the *Ἕλληνες* had arrived at *Τραπεζοῦς*, he went to *Ἀναξίβιος* to try to obtain ships to transport them to Europe, but without success. On his return to the army,

which he found at *Ξινώπη*, VI. 1. 15, he was elected commander-in-chief, VI. 1. 32. The Arcadians and Achæans, who formed more than half of the army, were dissatisfied, and on the sixth or seventh day after his election separated themselves from the rest, and departed by sea, under ten generals of their own appointing, VI. 2. 12-17. With the small division still under his command he proceeded to *Κάλπη*, where he died from the effects of a medicine which he had taken for a fever, VI. 2. 18, VI. 4. 11.

Χερσονήσος, peninsula of the Dardanelles or of Gallipoli (for *Ξενοφών*, except once—for which see *Ἀχερουσίας*—alludes to the Thracian Chersonesus), the narrow strip of land between the *Ἐλλησποντος* and the *Μέλας Κόλπος* (Gulf of Xeros or Saros). An army was collected there for *Κύρος*, I. 1. 9.

Χίος, IV. 1. 28, an inhabitant of *Χίος* (*Khio*), one of the largest and most famous islands of the *Ægean*.

Χρυσόπολις, VI. 6. 38, and elsewhere (*Scutari*); a town of *Καλχηδονία*, in the north-west of *Βιθυνία*, on the coast of the *Βόσπορος*. Of "Uskúdar or Scutari, with a population of from 30,000 to 35,000 souls, it has been truly remarked, that it would be considered a large town but for the presence of Constantinople on the other side." *Ainsworth*, p. 222.

Ψ.

Ψάρος, I. 4. 1 (*Seihan*), a river rising in the Anti-Taurus, in *Καπαδοκία*, and flowing south through *Κιλικία* into the Mediterranean.

Ω.

᾽Ωπλις, II. 4. 25, a large city of *Ἀσσυρία*, near the confluence of the *Φάσκος* with the *Τίγρης*. "The situation of *Opis* cannot be verified. The ruins of a large city were seen by Captain Lynch near the confluence of the *Adhem* with the *Tigris*, which he supposed to be *Opis*, in lat. 34°." *Grote*, vol. ix. p. 91.

LONDON :

PRINTED BY ROBSON, LEVEY, AND FRANKLYN,
Great New Street and Fetter Lane.

which he found at Σινώπη, VI. 1. 15, he was elected commander-in-chief, VI. 1. 32. The Arcadians and Achæans, who formed more than half of the army, were dissatisfied, and on the sixth or seventh day after his election separated themselves from the rest, and departed by sea, under ten generals of their own appointing, VI. 2. 12-17. With the small division still under his command he proceeded to Κάλπη, where he died from the effects of a medicine which he had taken for a fever, VI. 2. 18, VI. 4. 11.

Χερρόνησος, peninsula of the Dardanelles or of Gallipoli (for *Χερόφωγ*, except once—for which see *Ἀχερουσίαις*—alludes to the Thracian Chersonesus), the narrow strip of land between the Ἐλλησποντος and the Μέλας Κόλπος (Gulf of Xeros or Saros). An army was collected there for Κῦρος, I. 1. 9.

Χίος, IV. 1. 28, an inhabitant of Χίος (Khio), one of the largest and most famous islands of the Ægean.

Χρυσόπολις, VI. 6. 38, and elsewhere (Scutari); a town of Καλχηδονία, in the north-west of Βιθυνία, on the coast of the Βόσπορος. Of "Uskúdar or Scutari, with a population of from 30,000 to 35,000 souls, it has been truly remarked, that it would be considered a large town but for the presence of Constantinople on the other side." *Ainsworth*, p. 222.

Ψ.

Ψάρος, I. 4. 1 (Seihan), a river rising in the Anti-Taurus, in Καπαδοκία, and flowing south through Κιλικία into the Mediterranean.

Ω.

Ὀπίς, II. 4. 25, a large city of Ἀσσυρία, near the confluence of the Φόσκος with the Τίγρης. "The situation of Opis cannot be verified. The ruins of a large city were seen by Captain Lynch near the confluence of the Adhem with the Tigris, which he supposed to be Opis, in lat. 34°." *Grote*, vol. ix. p. 91.

LONDON :

PRINTED BY ROBSON, LEVY, AND FRANKLIN,
Great New Street and Fetter Lane.

Niebuhr's Works.

NIEBUHR'S LECTURES ON ANCIENT ETHNOGRAPHY AND GEOGRAPHY. Comprising Greece and her Colonies, Italy, the islands of the Mediterranean, Spain, Gaul, Britain, Northern Africa, and Phœnicia. By Dr. L. SCHMITZ, 2 vols. 8vo. 1l. 1s.
Just published.

NIEBUHR'S LECTURES ON ANCIENT HISTORY : the Asiatic Nations, the Egyptians, Greeks, Carthaginians, and Macedonians. By Dr. L. SCHMITZ. 3 vols. 8vo. 1l. 11s. 6d.

NIEBUHR'S LECTURES ON ROMAN HISTORY.
By Dr. L. SCHMITZ. New and Cheaper Edition. 3 vols. 8vo. 24s.

NIEBUHR'S HISTORY OF ROME. By Bishop THIRLWALL, Archdeacon HARE, Dr. W. SMITH, and Dr. L. SCHMITZ. Fourth and Cheaper Edition. 3 vols. 8vo. 36s.

Dr. Smith's Classical Dictionaries.

SMITH'S DICTIONARY OF GREEK AND ROMAN ANTIQUITIES. By various Writers. Second Edition. 500 Woodcuts. Medium 8vo. 42s.

SMITH'S DICTIONARY OF GREEK AND ROMAN BIOGRAPHY AND MYTHOLOGY. By various Writers. 500 Woodcuts. 3 vols. Medium 8vo. 5l. 16s. 6d.

SMITH'S DICTIONARY OF GREEK AND ROMAN GEOGRAPHY. By various Writers. Illustrated with Coins, Plans of Cities, Districts, Battles, &c. Quarterly Parts. Medium 8vo. I to VIII, 4s. each, are ready.

. Volume I. (half the Work) will be ready in January, 1854.

SMITH'S NEW CLASSICAL DICTIONARY OF MYTHOLOGY, BIOGRAPHY, AND GEOGRAPHY. Compiled and abridged from the larger Works. New and Cheaper Edition. 8vo. 15s.

SMITH'S SMALLER CLASSICAL DICTIONARY. Abridged from the larger Work. Cheaper Edition, with 200 Woodcuts. Crown 8vo. 7s. 6d.

SMITH'S SMALLER DICTIONARY OF GREEK AND ROMAN ANTIQUITIES. New and Cheaper Edition, with 200 Woodcuts. Crown 8vo. 7s. 6d.

